

2011

LS 460 / LS 460 L

OWNER'S MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	**Before driving**	Adjusting and operating features such as door locks, mirrors, and steering column.
2	**When driving**	Driving, stopping and safe-driving information.
3	**Interior features**	Air conditioning and audio systems, as well as other interior features for a comfortable driving experience.
4	**Maintenance and care**	Cleaning and protecting your vehicle, performing do-it-yourself maintenance, and maintenance information.
5	**When trouble arises**	What to do if the vehicle needs to be towed, gets a flat tire, or is involved in an accident.
6	**Vehicle specifications**	Detailed vehicle information.
7	**For owners**	Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners, and seat belt and SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners.
	Index	Alphabetical listing of information contained in this manual.

1 Before driving

1-1. Key information

Keys 32

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Smart access system with push-button start 36
Wireless remote control 50
Doors 53
Trunk 58

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Front seats 65
Power rear seat 71
Driving position memory 81
Rear seat position memory 87
Head restraints 89
Seat belts 92
Steering wheel 99
Anti-glare inside rear view mirror 100
Outside rear view mirrors 102

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 104
Moon roof 107

1-5. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 111

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system 114
Alarm 116

1-7. Safety information

Correct driving posture 119
SRS airbags 121
Front passenger occupant classification system 134
Child restraint systems 139
Installing child restraints 144

2 When driving

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle 154
Engine (ignition) switch 163
Automatic Transmission (without paddle shift switches) 167
Automatic Transmission (with paddle shift switches) 172
Turn signal lever 179
Parking brake 180
Brake Hold 183
Horn 185

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters 186
Indicators and warning lights 189
Multi-information display 193

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch 198
Automatic High Beam 201
Fog light switch 206
Windshield wipers and washer 207
Headlight cleaner switch 210

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control 211
Dynamic radar cruise control 215
Intuitive parking assist 228
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 237
Electronically modulated air suspension 244
Rear view monitor system 246
Advanced parking guidance system 250
Driving assist systems 291
Pre-Collision System 297

2-5. Driving information

Cargo and luggage 308
Vehicle load limits 311
Winter driving tips 313
Trailer towing 317
Dinghy towing 318

3 Interior features

3-1. Using the touch screen

Touch screen 322
Set up screen 329
Information screen 334

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front air conditioning system (without touch screen) 336
Front air conditioning system (with touch screen) 346
Rear air conditioning system 361
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers 369
Windshield wiper de-icer 371

3-3. Using the audio system

Audio system 373
Using the radio 375
Using the CD player 379
Playing back MP3 and WMA discs 385
Optimal use of the audio system 391
Using the AUX port 393
Using the steering wheel audio switches 394
Audio system type 396
Using the radio 400
Using the CD/DVD player 409
Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs 412
Playing DVD video/audio 417
Playing a video CD 430
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information 434
Listening to Bluetooth® audio 444
Listening to a USB memory/iPod 456
Optimal use of the audio/video system 466
Using the AUX port 468
Using the rear seat audio controls 469
Using the steering wheel audio switches 474

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system

Rear seat entertainment system features 478
Using the radio 487
Using the front DVD player 488

Using the rear DVD player 489
Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs 492
Playing a DVD video/audio 493
Playing a video CD 503
DVD player and DVD video disc information 507
Using the video mode 509
Changing other setting 511

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)

Hands-free system (for cellular phone) 513
Using the Bluetooth® phone 519
Setting the hands-free system 533

3-6. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 562
• Interior lights 563
• Personal lights 564

3-7. Using the storage features

List of storage features 566
• Glove box 568
• Coin holder 569
• Door pockets 569
• Cup holders 570
• Console box 572
• Non smokers boxes 573
• Cool box/auxiliary box 574
• Auxiliary boxes 578

3-8. Other interior features

Sun visors 580
Vanity mirrors 581
Clock 582
Outside temperature display 584
Ashtrays 585
Cigarette lighters 586
Power outlets 588
Heated steering wheel 591
Climate control seats/seat heaters 593
Armrest 597
Retractable table 598
Rear sunshade 600
Rear door sunshades 603
Trunk storage extension 606
Coat hooks 608
Floor mat 609
Trunk features 610
Garage door opener 612
Compass 618
Safety Connect 622

4 Maintenance and care

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 630
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 633

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 636
General maintenance 638
Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs 641

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 642
Hood 645
Positioning a floor jack 646
Engine compartment 648
Tires 664
Tire inflation pressure 672
Wheels 676
Air conditioning filter 678
Electronic key battery 681
Checking and replacing fuses 683
Headlight aim 688
Light bulbs 690

5 When trouble arises

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 702
If your vehicle needs to be towed 703
If you think something is wrong 709
Fuel pump shut off system 710
Event data recorder 711

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... 713
If a warning message is displayed 723
If you have a flat tire 726
If the engine will not start 734
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" 736
If the parking brake cannot be released 737
If the electronic key does not operate properly 739
If the vehicle battery is discharged 742
If your vehicle overheats 745
If the vehicle becomes stuck 748
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 749

6 Vehicle specifications

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 752
Fuel information 764
Tire information 767

6-2. Customization

Customizable features 778

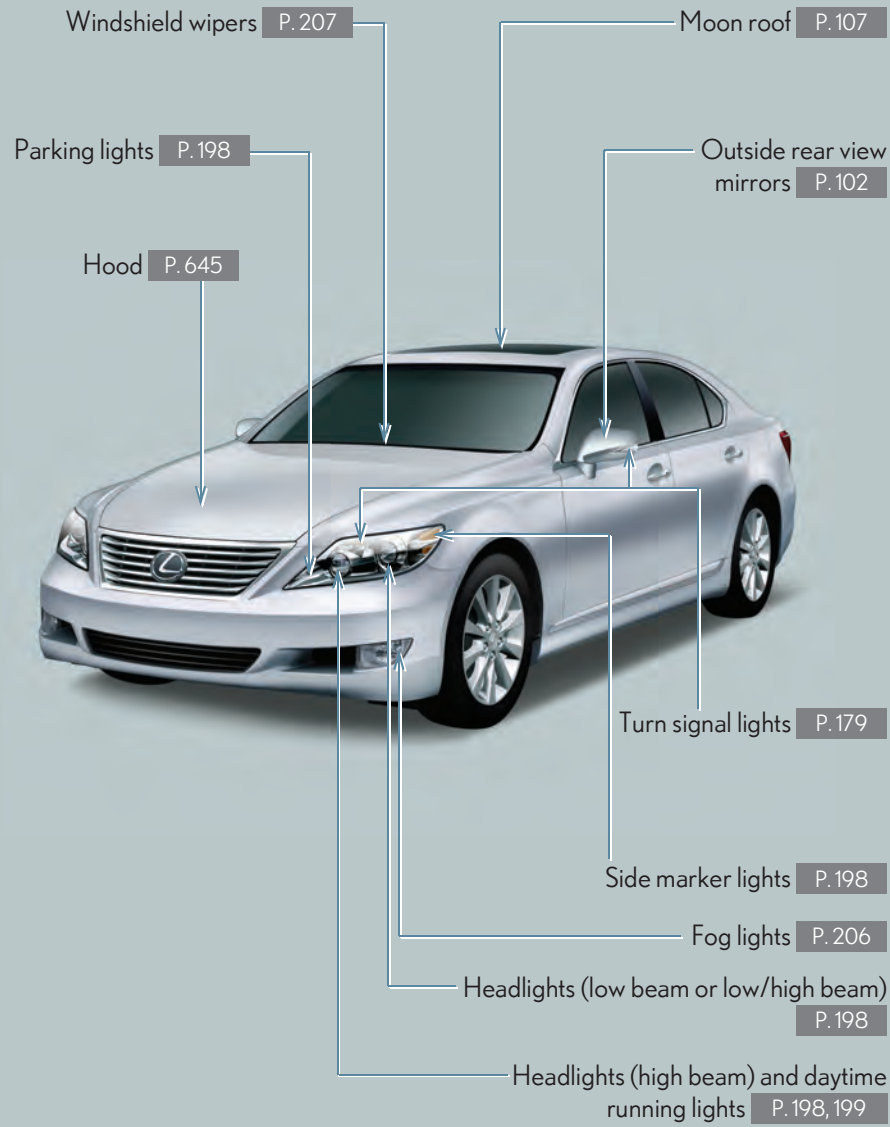
7 For owners

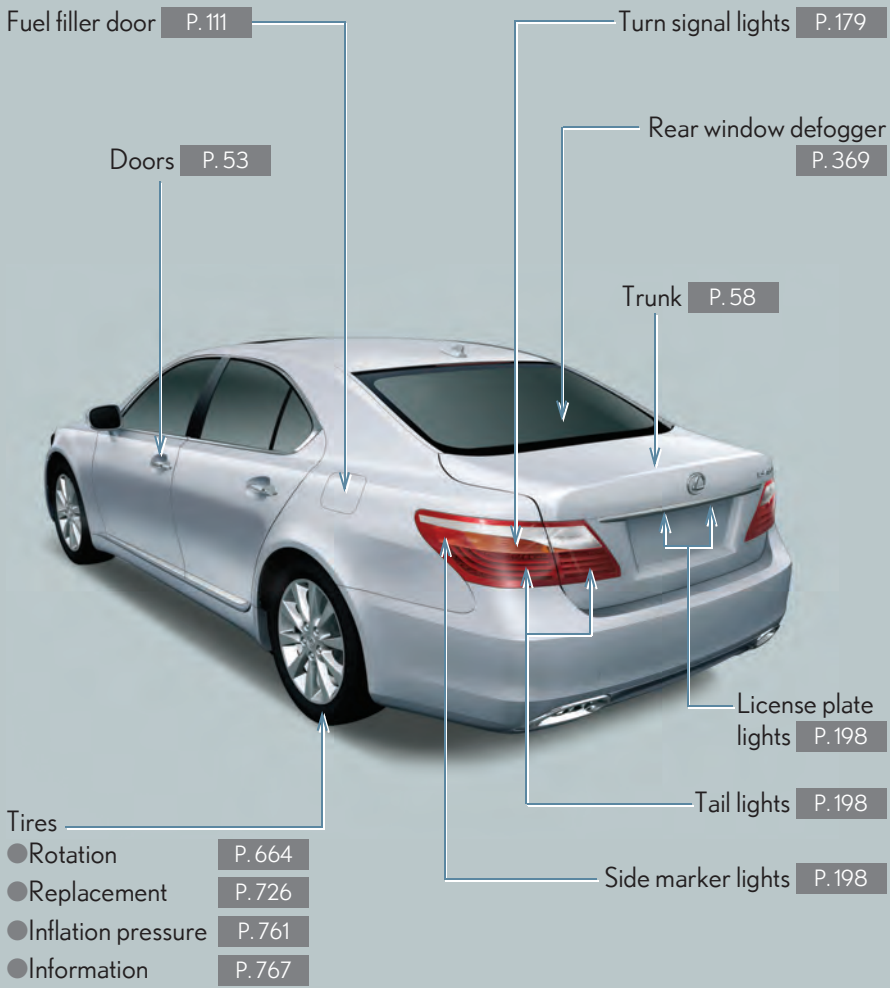
Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners 790
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 791
SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French) 793

Index

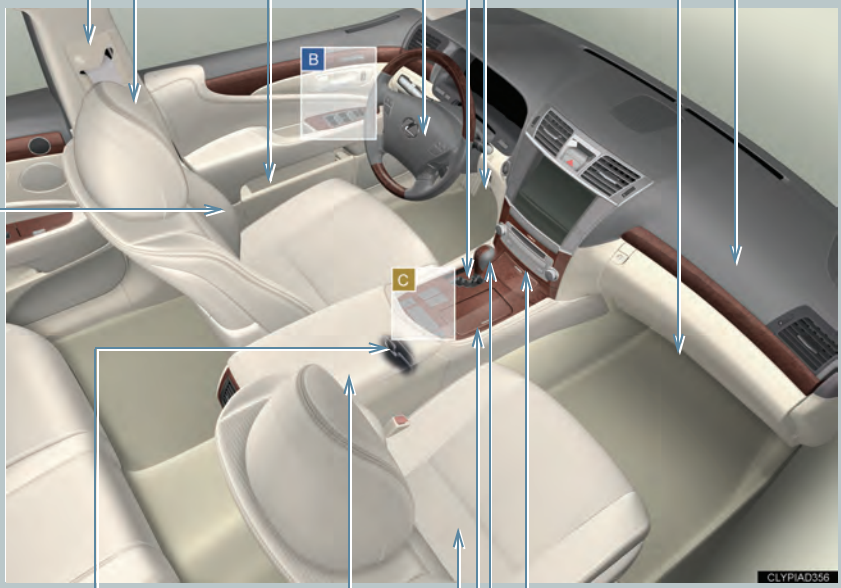
Abbreviation list 804
Alphabetical index 806
What to do if... 817

Exterior


Windshield wipers P. 207
Moon roof P. 107
Parking lights P. 198
Outside rear view mirrors P. 102
Hood P. 645
Turn signal lights P. 179
Side marker lights P. 198
Fog lights P. 206
Headlights (low beam or low/high beam) P. 198
Headlights (high beam) and daytime running lights P. 198, 199


Fuel filler door P. 111
Doors P. 53
Turn signal lights P. 179
Rear window defogger P. 369
Trunk P. 58
License plate lights P. 198
Tail lights P. 198
Side marker lights P. 198
Tires
●Rotation P. 664
●Replacement P. 726
●Inflation pressure P. 761
●Information P. 767

Front interior



Seat belts P. 92

Head restraints P. 89

Door pockets P. 569

SRS driver airbag P. 121

Shift lock override button P. 736

SRS knee airbags P. 121

SRS front passenger airbag P. 121

Power outlets P. 588

AUX port P. 393 *1

USB port P. 456 *1

SRS side airbags P. 121

Ashtray * P. 585

Cigarette lighter * P. 586

Non smokers box * P. 573

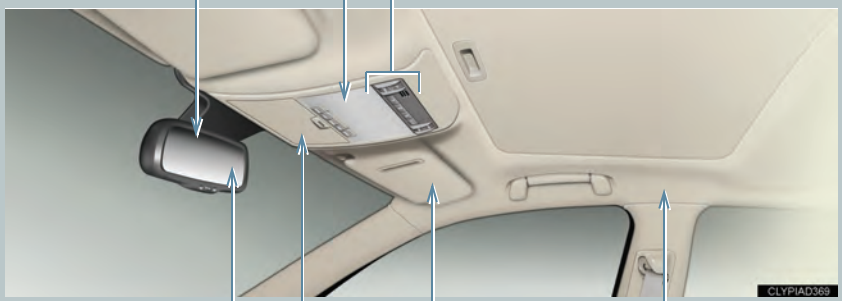
Automatic transmission shift lever P. 167, 172

Cup holders P. 570

Front seats P. 65

Console box P. 572

A



Anti-glare inside rear view mirror P. 100

Interior lights P. 563
Personal lights P. 564

Moon roof switches P. 107
Garage door opener switches P. 612
"SOS" button * P. 622

Compass * P. 618

SRS curtain shield airbags P. 121

Sun visors P. 580
Vanity mirrors P. 581

Auxiliary boxes P. 578

*: If equipped
*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

B



Inside lock buttons P. 53

Driving position memory switches P. 81

Shoulder anchor control switches P. 92

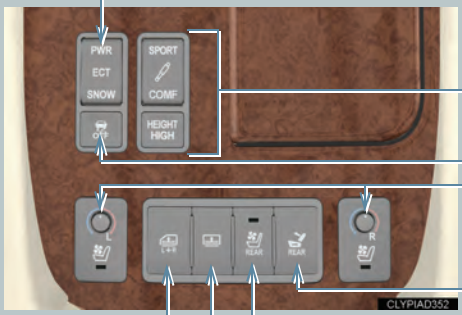
Window lock switch P. 104

Door lock switch P. 53

Power window switches P. 104

C

▶ Without rear console display



Driving pattern selector switch P. 168, 174

Electronically modulated air suspension switches * P. 244

VSC off switch P. 293

Front climate control seat switches * P. 593

Rear seat return switch * P. 74

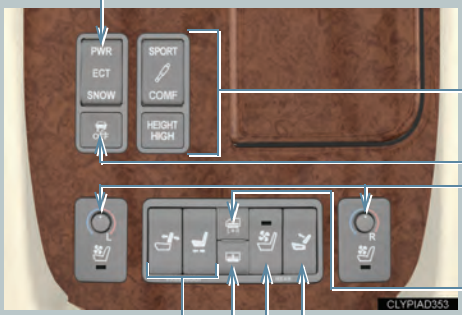
Rear door sunshade switch * P. 603

Rear seat heater switch * P. 593

Rear climate control seat switch * P. 593

Rear sunshade switch * P. 600

▶ With rear console display



Driving pattern selector switch P. 168

Electronically modulated air suspension switches * P. 244

VSC off switch P. 293

Front climate control seat switches P. 593

Rear door sunshade switch P. 603

Rear seat return switch P. 74

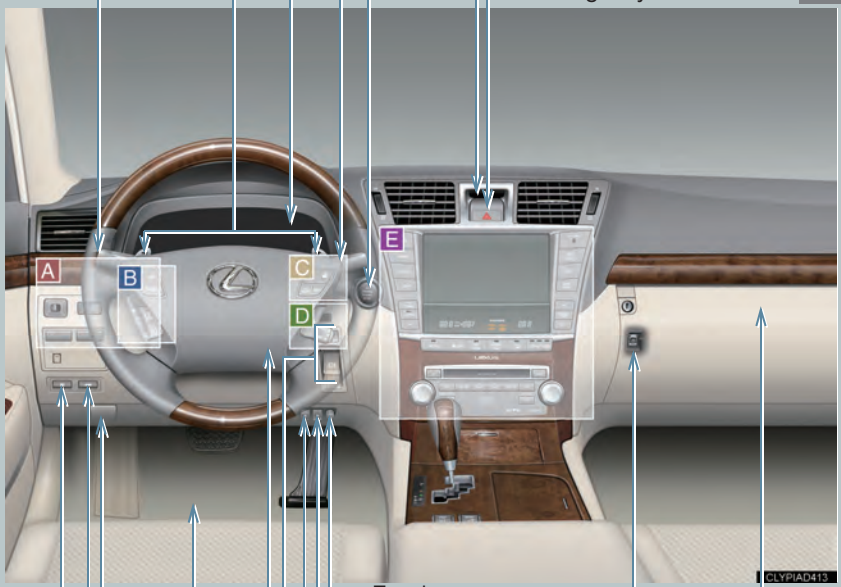
Front passenger's power seat switches P. 65

Rear climate control seat switch P. 593

Rear sunshade switch P. 600

*: If equipped

Instrument panel



Headlight switch P. 198
Turn signal lever P. 179
Fog light switch P. 206

Paddle shift switches * P. 175, 176

Gauges and meters P. 186
Multi-information display P. 193

Windshield wiper and washer switch P. 207

Engine (ignition) switch P. 163

Clock
- Without Navigation system P. 582
- With Navigation system *1

Emergency flasher switch P. 702

Trunk opener main switch P. 59

Glove box P. 568

Floor mat P. 609

Volume adjust knob P. 40

Tire pressure warning reset switch P. 665

Hood release lever P. 645

Pre-collision braking off switch * P. 298

Parking brake switches P. 180

Horn P. 185

Trunk opener P. 58

Fuel filler door opener P. 111

A

▶ Without heated steering wheel



Outside rear view mirror switches P. 102

Instrument panel light control buttons P. 187

Headlight cleaner switch * P. 210

Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P. 99

"AFS OFF" switch P. 199

Intuitive parking assist switch * P. 228

"ECO MODE" switch P. 168, 174

▶ With heated steering wheel



Outside rear view mirror switches P. 102

Instrument panel light control buttons P. 187

Headlight cleaner switch * P. 210

Tilt and telescopic steering control switch P. 99

"AFS OFF" switch P. 199

Intuitive parking assist switch * P. 228

Heated steering wheel switch P. 591

"ECO MODE" switch P. 168, 174

*: If equipped

*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

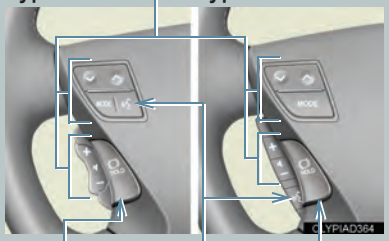
B

▶ Without advanced parking guidance system

▶ With advanced parking guidance system

Audio remote control switches P. 474 *1

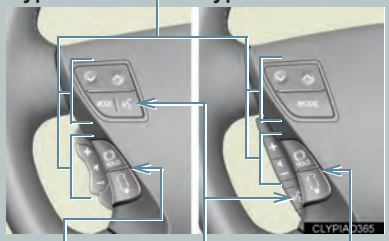
Type A Type B



Talk switch * P. 348, 527 *1

Brake hold switch P. 183

Type A Type B



Talk switch * P. 348, 527 *1

Brake hold switch P. 183

APGS pre-support switch P. 252

C

▶ Without touch screen

▶ With touch screen

"DISP" switch P. 193



Telephone switch P. 513 *1



"RESET" switch P. 193

D

▶ Without LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)

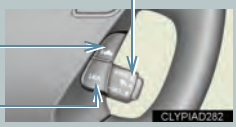
▶ With LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)

Cruise control switch P. 211, 215



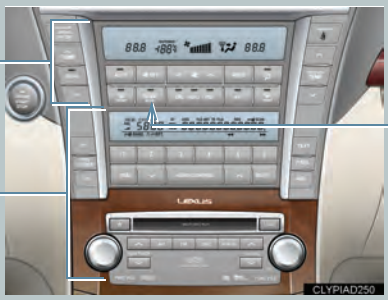
Distance switch * P. 215

"LKA" switch P. 237

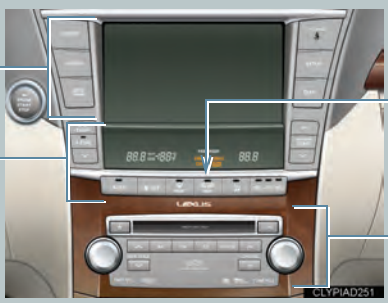


E

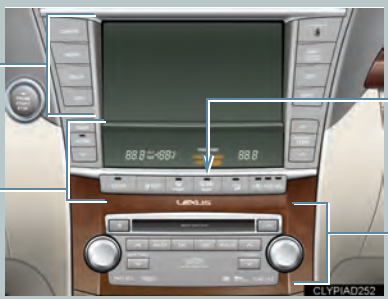
▶ Without touch screen



▶ With touch screen (without navigation system)



▶ With touch screen (with navigation system)



*: If equipped
*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".
*2: Refer to "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Rear interior (5-seat models without relaxation seat)

Auxiliary boxes P. 578

Cool box/ auxiliary box * P. 574

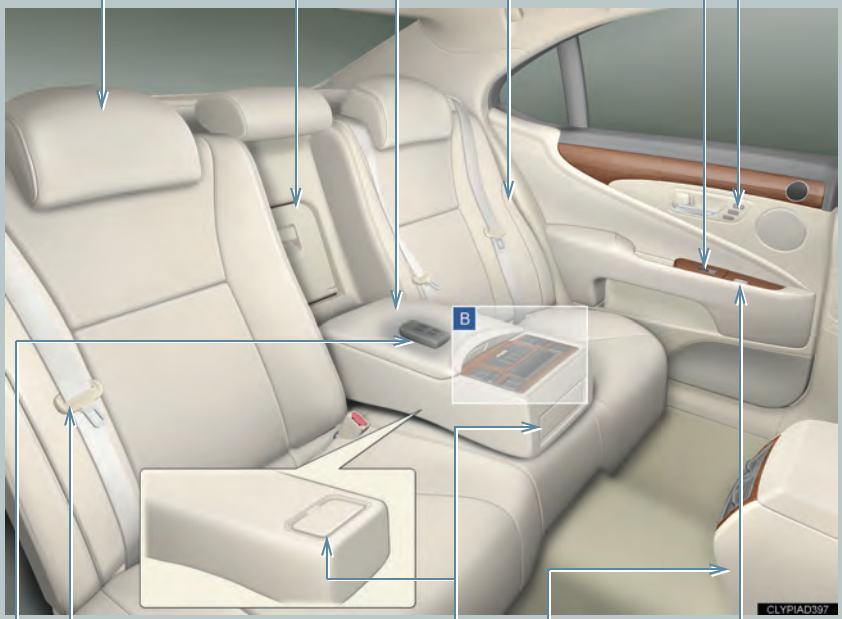
Trunk storage extension * P. 606

Head restraints P. 89

Seat position memory switches * P. 87

Power window switches P. 104

SRS side airbags * P. 121



Seat belts P. 92

Cup holders P. 570

Ashtray * P. 585

Non smokers box * P. 573

Cigarette lighter * P. 586

Power outlets * P. 588

Pelvic support seat controller * P. 71

A

Interior lights P. 563
Personal lights P. 564



SRS curtain shield airbags P. 121

Vanity mirrors P. 581

Coat hooks P. 608

B

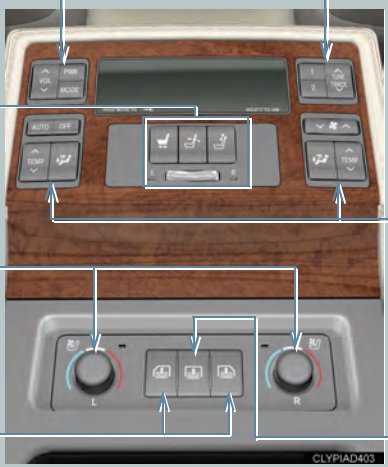
Rear audio switches * P. 469 *1

Power seat switches * P. 71

Seat heater switches * P. 593

Rear climate control seat switches * P. 593

Rear door sunshade switches * P. 603



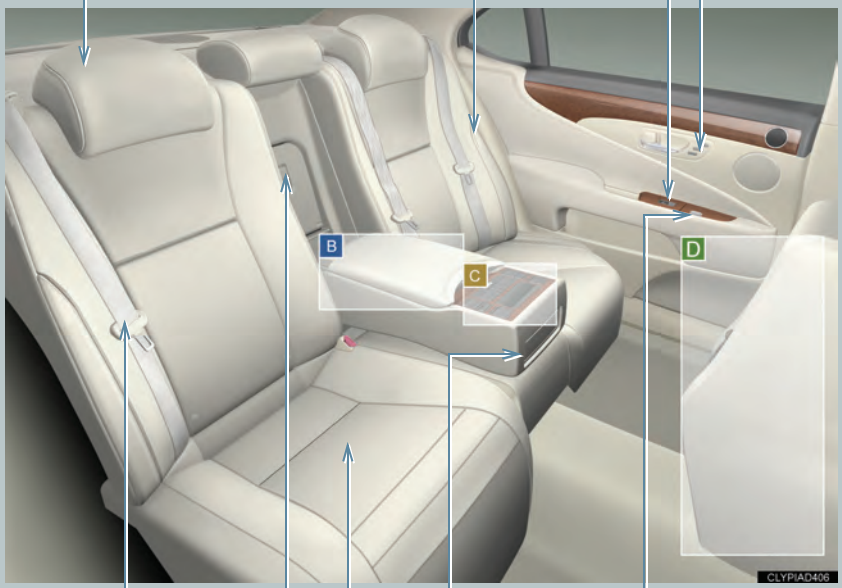
Rear air conditioning switches * P. 361

Rear sunshade switch * P. 600

*: If equipped

*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Rear interior (5-seat models with relaxation seat)



Seat position memory switches P. 87

Power window switches P. 104

SRS side airbags P. 121

Head restraints P. 89

Seat belts P. 92

Ashtray * P. 585

Non smokers box * P. 573

Cup holders P. 570

SRS seat cushion airbag P. 121

Cool box/auxiliary box P. 574

A

Interior lights P. 563

Personal lights P. 564



SRS curtain shield airbags P. 121

Vanity mirrors P. 581

Coat hooks P. 608

B

Headphone jacks P. 482 *1

Rear seat entertainment system controller P. 478 *1

Rear seat relaxation system/pelvic support seat controller P. 71

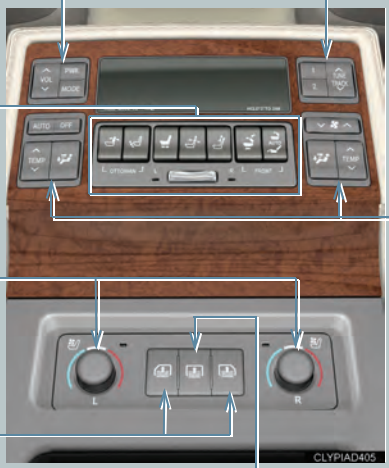


*: If equipped

*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Rear interior (5-seat models with relaxation seat)

C



Rear audio switches P. 469 *1

Power seat switches P. 71

Rear air conditioning switches P. 361

Rear climate control seat switches P. 593

Rear door sunshade switches P. 603

Rear sunshade switch P. 600

D



Rear seat entertainment system P. 478 *1

DVD player P. 489 *1

Auxiliary boxes P. 578

A/V input port P. 509 *1

Power outlets P. 588

*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

Rear interior (4-seat models)

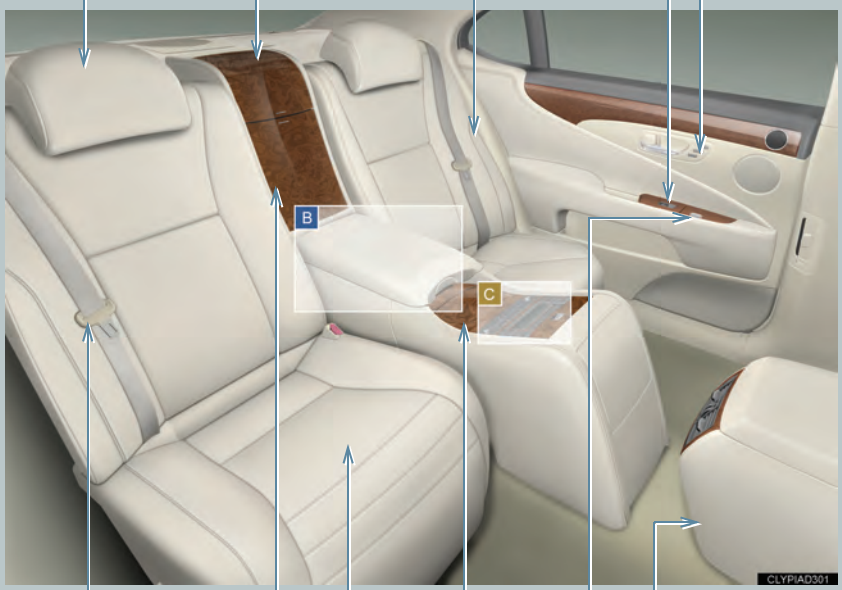
DVD player P. 489 *1
Headphone jacks P. 482 *1

Seat position memory switches P. 87

Power window switches P. 104

SRS side airbags P. 121

Head restraints P. 89



Seat belts P. 92

Power outlets * P. 588

Ashtray * P. 585

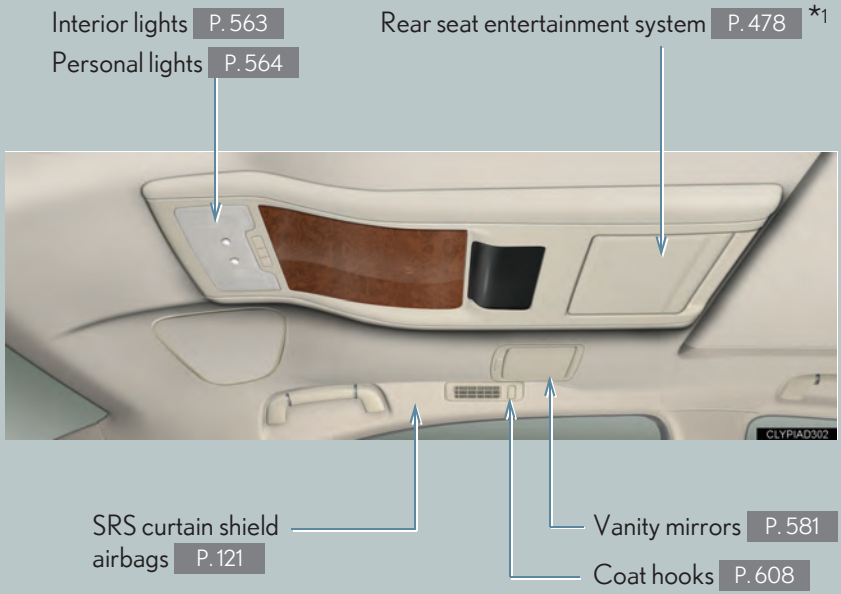
Non smokers box * P. 573

Cup holders P. 570

Auxiliary boxes P. 578

SRS seat cushion airbag P. 121

A



*: If equipped

*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Rear interior (4-seat models)

B

A/V input port P. 509 *1

Cigarette lighters * P. 586

Power outlets * P. 588



Rear seat entertainment system controller P. 478 *1

Rear seat relaxation system/pelvic support seat controller P. 71

Cool box/auxiliary box P. 574

C



Retractable table lock release lever P. 598

Rear sunshade switch P. 600

Rear door sunshade switches P. 603

Rear air conditioning switches P. 361

Rear air conditioning switches P. 361

Rear audio switches P. 469 *1

Rear climate control seat switches P. 593

Power seat switches P. 71

*: If equipped

*1: For vehicles with a navigation system, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustration may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Noise from under vehicle after turning off the engine

Approximately five hours after the engine is turned off, you may hear sound coming from under the vehicle for several minutes. This is the sound of a fuel evaporation leakage check and, it does not indicate a malfunction.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. You should know that Toyota does not warrant these products and is not responsible for their performance, repair, or replacement, or for any damage they may cause to, or adverse effect they may have on, your Lexus vehicle.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of a mobile two-way radio system

As the installation of a mobile two-way radio system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as the multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system, cruise control system, anti-lock brake system, SRS airbag system and seat belt pretensioner system, be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation.

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

Perchlorate Material

Special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

Your vehicle has components that may contain perchlorate. These components may include airbag, seat belt pretensioners, and wireless remote control batteries.

⚠ CAUTION

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the cigarette lighter, the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Symbols used throughout this manual

Cautions & Notices

⚠ CAUTION

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause injury to people. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to reduce the risk of injury to yourself and others.

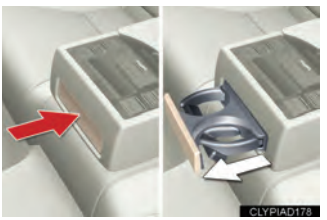
⚠ NOTICE

This is a warning against something which, if ignored, may cause damage to the vehicle or its equipment. You are informed about what you must or must not do in order to avoid or reduce the risk of damage to your Lexus and its equipment.

Symbols used in illustrations

Safety symbol

The symbol of a circle with a slash through it means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen.”



Arrows indicating operations

➡ Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

⇨ Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

Before driving 1

1-1. Key information

Keys 32

1-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Smart access system with push-button start 36

Wireless remote control 50

Doors 53

Trunk 58

1-3. Adjustable components (seats, mirrors, steering wheel)

Front seats 65

Power rear seat 71

Driving position memory 81

Rear seat position memory 87

Head restraints 89

Seat belts 92

Steering wheel 99

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror 100

Outside rear view mirrors 102

1-4. Opening and closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 104

Moon roof 107

1-5. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 111

1-6. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system 114

Alarm 116

1-7. Safety information

Correct driving posture 119

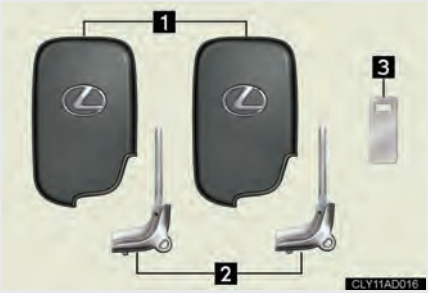
SRS airbags 121

Front passenger occupant classification system 134

Child restraint systems 139

Installing child restraints 144

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



1 Electronic keys
- Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 36)
- Operating the wireless remote control function (→P. 50)

2 Mechanical keys

3 Key number plate

Card key (if equipped)



1 Electronic key

Operating the smart access system with push-button start (→P. 36)

2 Mechanical key

Using the mechanical key



Take out the mechanical key.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 739)

Card key

- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.



- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it inside while pressing the lock release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.
- The card key is not waterproof.

When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Turn the trunk opener main switch off and lock the glove box and the trunk storage extension as circumstances demand. (→P. 59, 568, 606)
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

Key number plate

Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle. To have a new key made, the key number is required.

To have a new key made

New genuine Lexus keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using the keys provided with your vehicle; the electronic keys, card key and key number plate.

When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc, ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

⚠ NOTICE

To prevent key damage

Observe the following.

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for a long period of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.

NOTICE

- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the electronic keys.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems, glass top ranges, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

When a vehicle key is lost

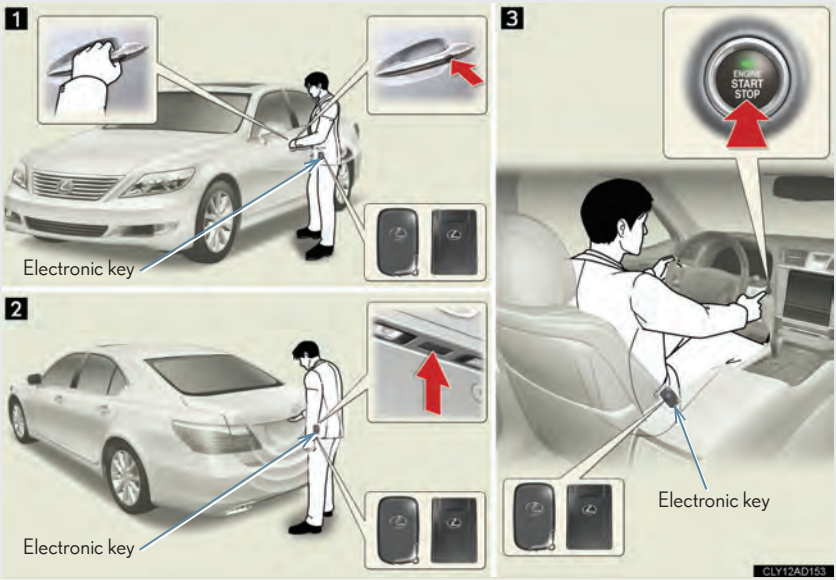
If the key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Lexus dealer immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key that was provided with your vehicle.

Precautions for handling the card keys

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key to the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may rust and the smart access system with push-button start become inoperable.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp it and pull.) If the battery is rusted, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations.
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins or keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as a tip of mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinners or benzene.

Smart access system with push-button start

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket.
(The driver should always carry the electronic key.)



1 Unlocks and locks the doors (→P. 37)
2 Opens the trunk (→P. 37)
3 Starts and stops the engine (→P. 163)

Unlocking and locking the doors



Grip the handle to unlock the door.

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.



Press the lock button to lock the door.

Pressing and holding the button closes the windows and moon roof.

Opening the trunk

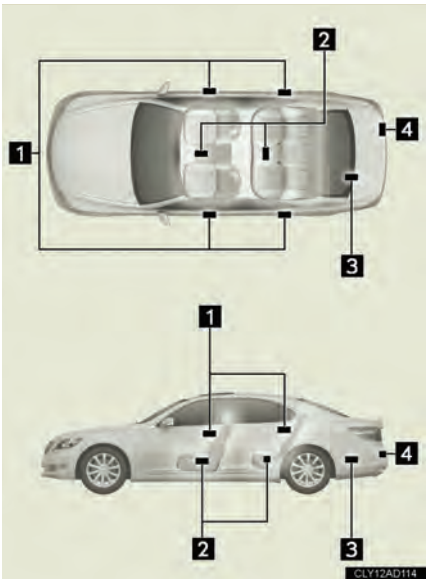


Press the button.

If the vehicle is equipped with a power trunk opener and closer, the trunk lid automatically opens fully.

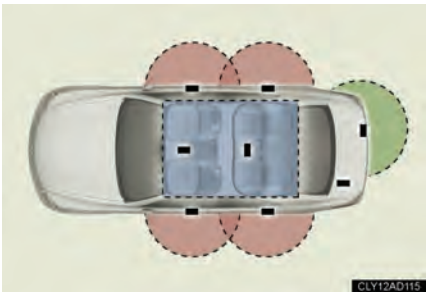
Antenna location and effective range

Antenna location



1 Antennas outside cabin
2 Antennas inside cabin
3 Antenna inside trunk
4 Antenna outside trunk

Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)



- When locking or unlocking the doors

  The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (70 cm) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

- When unlocking the trunk

  The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 2.3 ft. (70 cm) of the trunk release button.

- When starting the engine or changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes

  The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

Operation signals

Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Trunk: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the trunk has been unlocked.

Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are operating.

Door lock buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

Adjusting the volume of the buzzer

The operation signal buzzer and door lock buzzer can be set to the desired volume.



1 Increases the volume.

2 Decreases the volume.

The buzzer can be turned off by turning the knob fully clockwise.

Conditions affecting operation

The smart access system with push-button start uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart access system with push-button start, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly: (Ways of coping: →P. 739)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When multiple electronic keys are in the vicinity
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

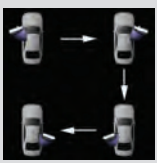
Switching the door unlock function

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 2 When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold , , or for about 5 seconds while pressing and holding on the key.

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 2.)

Multi-information display	Unlocking doors	Beep
	Hold the driver's door handle to unlock only the driver's door.	Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Rings once
	Hold a passenger's door handle to unlock all the doors.	
	Hold the door handle to unlock the front and rear doors on your side.	Exterior: Beeps 4 times Interior: Rings once
	Hold the door handle to unlock the door.	Exterior: Beeps once Interior: Rings once
	Hold a door handle to unlock all doors.	Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Rings once

STEP 3 Unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open one of the doors.

If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.
In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 116)

■ **Battery-saving function**

In the following circumstances, the entry function is disabled in order to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging and electronic key battery from depleting.

- When the entry function has not been used for 30 days or more
- When the electronic key has been left within approximately 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle for 10 minutes or more

The system will resume operation when

- The vehicle is locked using the door handle lock switch when carrying the electronic key on your person.
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the wireless remote control function. (→P. 50)
- The vehicle is locked/unlocked using the mechanical key. (→P. 739)

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine stops. (→ P. 45)
- The battery becomes depleted even if the electronic key is not used because the key always receives radio waves. If the smart access system with push-button start or the wireless remote control does not operate, or the detection area becomes smaller, the battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→ P. 681)

- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 3 ft. (1 m) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field.
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Glass top ranges
  - Table lamps

To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not function.)

Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the trunk is unlocked.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, rear package tray, floor or door pockets, or in the glove box when the engine is started or "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.

- The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The door will automatically be locked after approximately 60 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- Gripping the door handle when wearing a glove may not unlock the door.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.

When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 6 ft. (2 m) of the vehicle.

Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 60 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the anti-theft system automatically locks the vehicle again.

Alarms and warning indicators

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warnings displayed on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and unforeseeable accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Perform the appropriate correction procedure described in the following table:

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 2 seconds.	An attempt was made to lock the doors using the entry function while the electronic key was still inside the passenger compartment.	Retrieve the electronic key from the passenger compartment and lock the doors again.
	The trunk was closed with the electronic key inside and all doors were locked.	Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior alarm sounds once for 60 seconds.	An attempt was made to exit the vehicle and lock the doors while carrying the electronic key without first turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and lock the doors again.
Exterior alarm sounds once for 10 seconds.	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.
Interior alarm pings continuously.	The "ENGINE START STOP" switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door.
	The "ENGINE START STOP" switch was turned OFF while the driver's door was open.	Close the driver's door.
Interior alarm sounds continuously. *1	When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, an attempt was made to open the door and exit the vehicle, and the shift lever was not in "P".	Shift the shift lever to "P" and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Interior and exterior alarms sound continuously. *1	When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON or ACCESSORY mode, the driver's door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the shift lever was not in "P".	Shift the shift lever to "P", turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door again.
Interior alarm pings once. *1	The electronic key has a low battery.	Replace the electronic key battery.
	An attempt was made to start the engine without the electronic key being present, or the electronic key was not functioning normally.	Start the engine with the electronic key present. *2
Interior alarm pings once and exterior alarm sounds 3 times. *1	The driver's door was closed after the key was carried outside the vehicle, and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not turned OFF.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door again.
	An occupant carried the electronic key outside the vehicle and closed the door while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was not OFF.	Bring the electronic key back into the vehicle.

*1: A warning message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

*2: If the engine does not start when the electronic key is inside the vehicle, the electronic key battery may be depleted or there may be difficulties receiving the signal from the key. (→P. 43)

■ **If the smart access system with push-button start does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors and trunk: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 739)
- Starting the engine: →P. 740

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 681

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. smart access system with push-button start) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 778)

■ **Certification for the smart access system with push-button start**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMLF-4

NOTE:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- People with implanted pacemakers or cardiac defibrillators should keep away from the smart access system antennas. (→P. 38) The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as frequency of radio waves and timing of emitting the radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- User of any electrical medical device other than implanted pacemakers and implanted cardiac defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details for disabling the entry function.

Wireless remote control

The wireless remote control can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle and the trunk from outside the vehicle.



1 Locks all doors

2 Unlocks all doors

Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

3 Opens the windows and moon roof (press and hold)*

4 Unlocks the trunk (press and hold)
Vehicles equipped with a power trunk opener and closer: Opens the trunk (press and hold)

5 Sounds alarm (press and hold) (→P. 118)

*: This setting must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **Operation signals**

Doors: A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Trunk: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the trunk has been unlocked.

Windows and moon roof: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof are opening.

■ **Door lock buzzer**

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ **Adjusting the volume of the buzzer**

The operation signal buzzer and door lock buzzer can be set to the desired volume. (→P. 40)

■ **Alarm**

Using the wireless remote control to lock the doors will set the alarm system. (→P. 116)

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 43

■ **Security feature**

→P. 45

■ **If the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

- Locking and unlocking the doors and trunk: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 739)
- Starting the engine: →P. 740

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 681

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 41

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. trunk unlocking function) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 778)

Certification for wireless remote control

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: HYQ14ACX
FCC ID: HYQ14AEB
FCC ID: NI4TMRF-002
FCC ID: HYQ14ADF
FCC ID: HYQ14AEF
FCC ID: NI4TMRF-001

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

Entry function

→P. 37

Wireless remote control

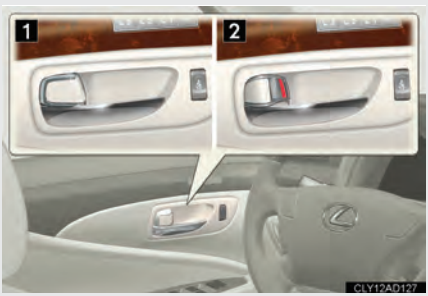
→P. 50

Door lock switch



1 Locks all doors
2 Unlocks all doors

Inside lock button



1 Locks the door
2 Unlocks the door

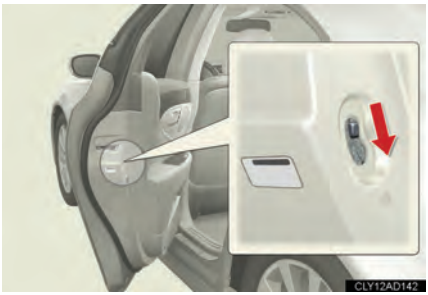
The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.

Locking the front doors from the outside without a key

The door cannot be locked if the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

Rear door child-protector lock



The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the locks are set.

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or cancelled:

Function	Operation
Shift position linked door locking function	Shifting the shift lever out of “P” locks all doors.
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Shifting the shift lever to “P” unlocks all doors.
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 12 mph (20 km/h) or higher.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are unlocked when the driver's door is opened within 10 seconds after turning the “ENGINE START STOP” switch OFF.

Setting and canceling the functions (without navigation system)

To switch between setting and canceling, follow the procedure below.

STEP 1 Close all the doors and switch the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode. (Perform the step 2 within 20 seconds.)



Shift the shift lever to "P" or "N", press and hold the driver's door lock switch (or) for about 5 seconds then release.

The shift lever and switch positions corresponding to the desired function to be set are shown as follows.

Use the same procedure to cancel the function.

Function	Shift lever position	Driver's door lock switch position
Shift position linked door locking function	P	
Shift position linked door unlocking function		
Speed linked door locking function	N	
Driver's door linked door unlocking function		

When the setting or canceling operation is complete, all doors are locked and then unlocked.

■ **Door closer (if equipped)**

In the event that a door is left slightly open, the door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

- The door closer will operate regardless of "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.
- The door closer will not function if the door has been closed while pulling the inside or outside door handle.
- The door can be opened by pulling the inside or outside door handle, even when the door closer is operating (except when the lock button is in the lock position or the child-protector lock is set).
- The motor sound may be heard for several seconds after the door closer closes the door. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Impact detection door lock release system**

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ **Using the mechanical key**

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 739)

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 778)

⚠ CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failing to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock all doors.
- Ensure that all doors are properly closed.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
  The doors may be opened and the passengers are thrown out of the vehicle and it may result in serious injury or death.

  Be especially careful for the front doors, as the doors may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.
- Set the rear door child protector locks when children are seated in the rear seat.

■ Door closer

In the event that a door is left slightly open, the door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.
If the child-protector lock is set, the door closer will not stop during operation even if an attempt is made to open the door from inside the vehicle. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the door. Failure to do so may result in serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

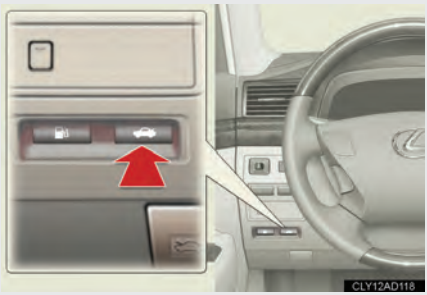
■ To prevent door closer malfunction

Do not frequently repeat opening and closing of doors, or apply excessive force to a door while the door closer is operating.

Trunk

The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener, entry function or wireless remote control.

Opening the trunk from inside the vehicle



Press the opener switch.

If the vehicle is equipped with a power trunk opener and closer, the trunk lid automatically opens fully.

Opening the trunk from outside the vehicle

▶ Entry function
→P. 37

▶ Wireless remote control
→P. 50

Trunk closer switch (with power trunk opener and closer)



Pressing the switch closes the trunk lid automatically. (A buzzer sounds.)

Pressing the switch while the trunk lid is closing opens the trunk lid again.

Canceling the trunk opener feature



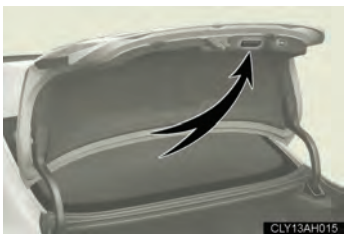
Turn the main switch in the glove box off to disable the trunk opener.

1 On

2 Off

The trunk lid cannot be opened even with the wireless remote control or the entry function.

Trunk handle



Use the trunk handle when closing the trunk.

Trunk easy closer

In the event that the trunk lid is left slightly open, the trunk easy closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

Function to prevent the trunk being locked with the electronic key inside (when all the doors are locked)

Closing the trunk lid with the electronic key left inside the trunk will sound an alarm. In this case, the trunk lid can be opened by pressing the button on the trunk lid.

Overload protection function (with a power trunk opener and closer)

The trunk lid will not operate when excessive load is present on the top of the trunk lid.

■ **Fall-down protection function (with a power trunk opener and closer)**

While the trunk lid is opening automatically, applying excessive force to it will stop the opening operation to prevent the trunk lid from rapidly falling down.

■ **Jam protection function (with a power trunk opener and closer)**

While the trunk lid is closing automatically, the trunk lid will stop closing and open if something gets caught.

■ **Internal trunk release lever**



The trunk lid can be opened by pulling down on the glow-in-the-dark lever located on the inside of the trunk lid.

The lever will continue to glow for some time after the trunk lid is closed.

■ **Using the mechanical key**

The trunk can be also opened using the mechanical key. (→P. 739)

■ **Which key to the vehicle is to leave with a parking attendant after disabling the trunk opener main switch**

→P. 34

■ **Customization**

Setting of power trunk opener and closer function can be deactivated. (Customizable features →P. 778)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

- Keep the trunk lid closed while driving.
  If the trunk lid is left open, it may hit near-by objects while driving or luggage in the trunk may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
  In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the trunk lid before driving.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the trunk lid is fully closed. If the trunk lid is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the trunk. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to enter the trunk.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the trunk, they could overheat or suffocate.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the trunk lid.
  Doing so may cause the trunk lid to operate unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing trunk lid.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using the trunk

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the trunk lid before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to fall closed again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.





- The trunk lid may fall if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the trunk lid unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.
- When closing the trunk lid, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.
- When closing the trunk lid, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the trunk handle is used to fully close the trunk lid, it may result in hands or arms being caught.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. Such additional weight on the trunk lid may cause the lid to fall closed again after it is opened.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Trunk easy closer



In the event that the trunk lid is left slightly open, the trunk easy closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the trunk easy closer begins to operate. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the trunk lid, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.

■ Power trunk opener and closer

Observe the following precautions when operating the power trunk opener and closer.
Failure to do so may cause serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- If the trunk closer switch is pressed while the trunk lid is opening during automatic operation, the trunk lid stops opening. Take extra care when on an incline, as the trunk lid may open or close suddenly.
- On an incline, the trunk lid may fall after it opens automatically. Make sure the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.
- In the following situations, the power trunk opener and closer may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the trunk lid has to be operated manually. Take extra care in this situation, as the stopped trunk lid may suddenly fall, causing an accident.
  - When the trunk lid contacts an obstacle
  - When the battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode or the engine is started during automatic operation
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. The power trunk opener and closer may not operate, causing itself to malfunction, or the trunk lid may fall closed again after it is opened.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Jam protection function

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the trunk lid fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the trunk lid.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

⚠ NOTICE

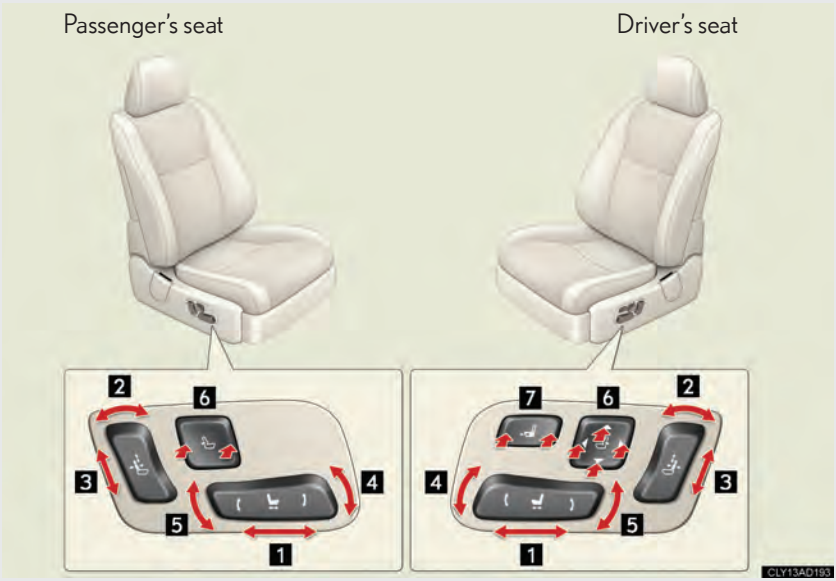
■ To prevent trunk easy closer malfunction

Do not apply force to the trunk lid while the trunk easy closer is operating.

■ To prevent damage to the power trunk opener and closer

- Make sure that there is no luggage or snow on the trunk lid before operating the power trunk opener and closer. In addition, make sure that there is no ice between the trunk lid and frame that prevents movement of the trunk lid. Operating the power trunk opener and closer when excessive load is present on the trunk lid may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the trunk lid while the power trunk opener and closer is operating.

Front seats



1 Seat position switch

The height of the driver's head restraint is automatically adjusted simultaneously with the seat position adjustment operation.

2 Seatback angle switch

3 Head restraint height adjustment switch (→P. 89)

4 Seat cushion (front) angle switch

5 Vertical height adjustment switch

6 Lumbar support switch

Driver's seat: 4 way
Front passenger's seat: 2 way

7 Seat cushion length adjustment switch

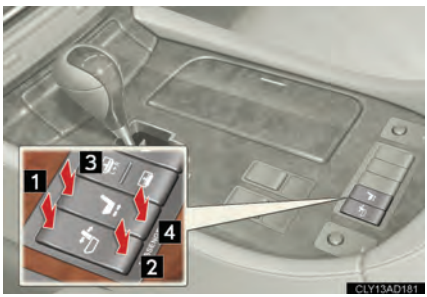
Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat

▶ Without rear console display



1 Tilts the seatback forward
2 Tilts the seatback backward
3 Moves the seat forward
4 Moves the seat backward

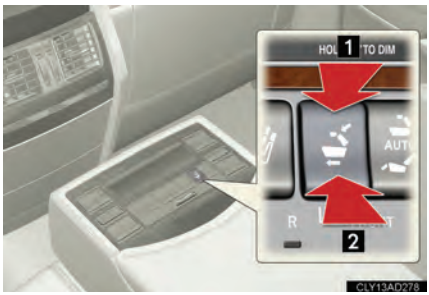
▶ With rear console display



1 Tilts the seatback forward
2 Tilts the seatback backward
3 Moves the seat forward
4 Moves the seat backward

Operating the front passenger's seat from the rear seat (with relaxation seat)

▶ 5-seat models



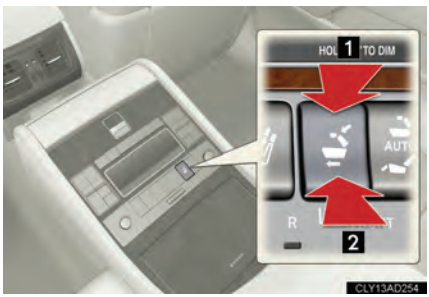
1 Moves the front passenger's seat forward

The signal beeps when the seat operation stops at the forward limit.

2 Moves the front passenger's seat backward

The seatback will return to the neutral position.

▶ 4-seat models



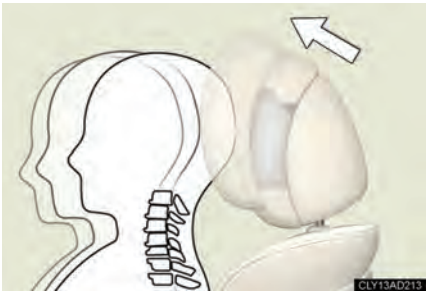
1 Moves the front passenger's seat forward

The signal beeps when the seat operation stops at the forward limit.

2 Moves the front passenger's seat backward

The seatback will return to the neutral position.

Active head restraints



If the vehicle detects an impact during a rear-end collision, the front part of the head restraint moves forward and upward to help reduce the risk of whiplash to the seat occupant.

When reversing, even a small amount of force applied from the rear, such as a minor rear impact, may cause the head restraints to move.

■ **Operating the front passenger's seat from the rear seat (with relaxation seat)**

The front passenger's seat can be operated when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode. However, in the following situations, the front passenger's seat does not move even when the switch is operated:

- The weight of an occupant or heavy object, etc. is detected on the front passenger's seat.
- The front passenger's seat belt is fastened.
- The front passenger's door is open. (The front seat will not move forward.)

■ **Seat cushion automatic length adjustment (driver's seat)**

If the front of the cushion gets too close to the area around the instrument panel when the seat position is being adjusted, the seat cushion will automatically retract.

■ **Seat operation automatic stop function (with relaxation seat)**

If a front seat is likely to come into contact with the retractable table (4-seat models) or the ottoman during seat operation or activation of the auto away function, a buzzer will sound and seat slide operation will be stopped partway.
(A warning message will be shown on the multi-information display.)

■ **Active head restraints**

- The active head restraint on the front passenger seat will not activate if the seat is unoccupied. However, it may activate during a rear-end collision if luggage is in the seat or the seat belt is fastened.
- Once the active head restraint has activated, the head restraint remains protruded forward and upward. After it has operated, have it repaired at your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Seat adjustment**

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

■ **Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat or rear seat**

Do not operate the front passenger's seat when a passenger is seated in it. In addition, do not let anyone sit down in the front passenger's seat while the seat is being operated. The front passenger may catch their legs between the instrument panel and seat, resulting in injury.

■ **The active head restraint on the front passenger seat**

Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat.
Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which may prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the active head restraint may not activate in the event of an accident.

■ **Active head restraint precautions**

- Do not put head restraint covers.
- For removal, installation, modification, disassembly or disposal of the active head restraints, contact your Lexus dealer.
  Inappropriate handling of the active head restraints may prevent them from operating properly during an accident.

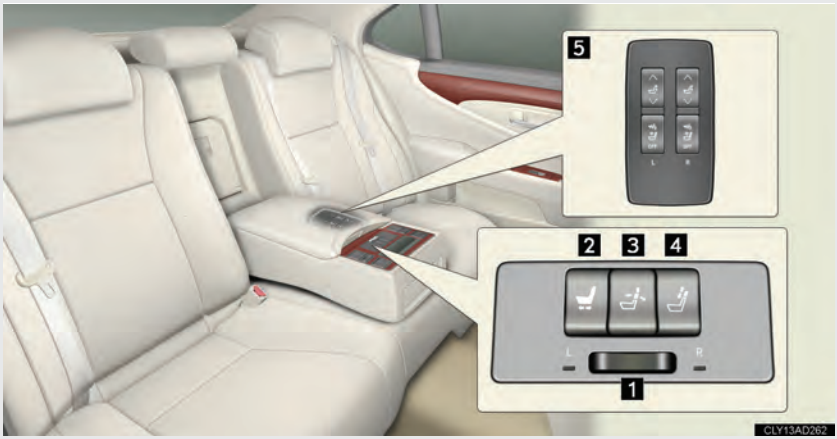
NOTICE

Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat or rear seat

Before operating the front passenger's seat, make sure that there is no luggage or any other objects on the seat or in the footwell that could prevent its operation. Failure to do so may result in excess force being applied, causing damage to the seat and/or the luggage.

Power rear seat*

▶ 5-seat models without relaxation seat



1 Seat selection switch
The indicator light for the seat that can be operated comes on.

2 Seat position adjustment switch

3 Seatback upper angle adjustment switch

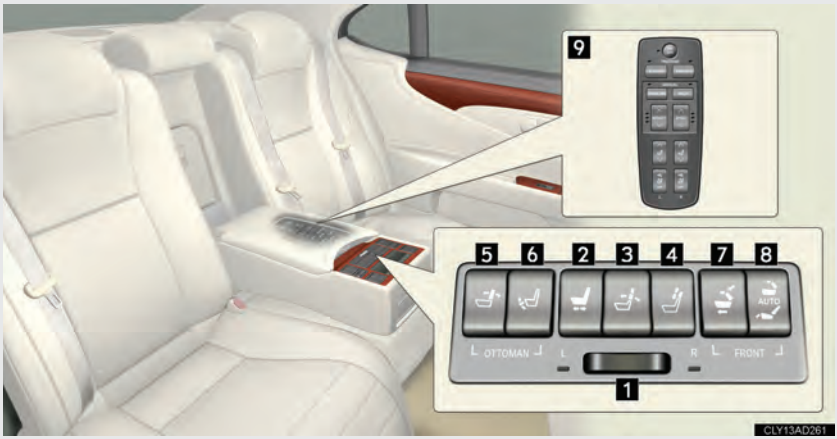
4 Head restraint height adjustment switch (→P. 89)

5 Pelvic support seat controller

The seat return function linked to the door opening operation allows the seat to automatically return to the neutral position for easier access to and from the vehicle.

*: If equipped

▶ 5-seat models with relaxation seat



The right-hand rear seat is a relaxation seat, which is equipped with a seatback angle adjustment function and an ottoman.

1 Seat selection switch
The indicator light for the seat that can be operated comes on.

2 Seat position adjustment switch

3 Seatback upper angle adjustment switch

4 Head restraint height adjustment switch (→P. 89)

5 Seatback angle adjustment switch

6 Ottoman angle adjustment switch

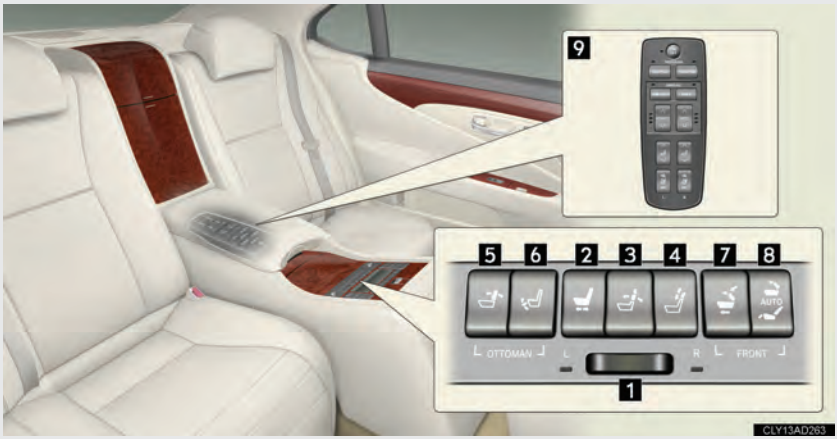
7 Front passenger's seat control switch (→P. 67)

8 Relaxation mode switch

9 Rear seat relaxation system/pelvic support seat controller

The seat return function linked to the door opening operation allows the seat to automatically return to the neutral position for easier access to and from the vehicle.

▶ 4-seat models



The right-hand rear seat is a relaxation seat, which is equipped with a seatback angle adjustment function and an ottoman.

1 Seat selection switch
The indicator light for the seat that can be operated comes on.

2 Seat position adjustment switch

3 Seatback upper angle adjustment switch

4 Head restraint height adjustment switch (→P. 89)

5 Seatback angle adjustment switch

6 Ottoman angle adjustment switch

7 Front passenger's seat control switch (→P. 67)

8 Relaxation mode switch

9 Rear seat relaxation system/pelvic support seat controller

The seat return function linked to the door opening operation allows the seat to automatically return to the neutral position for easier access to and from the vehicle.

Returning the rear seat from the front seats

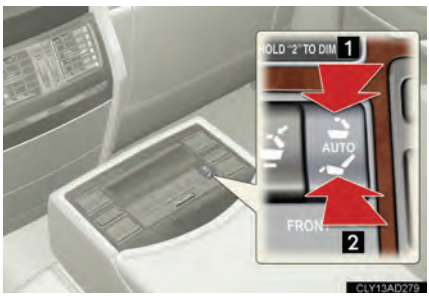


The seat will return to the neutral position while the button is pressed and held.

Relaxation mode operation (relaxation seat)

Relaxation mode can be entered by operating a switch. The front passenger seat will move forward, and then the seatback of the relaxation seat will recline and the ottoman will simultaneously rise.

▶ 5-seat models



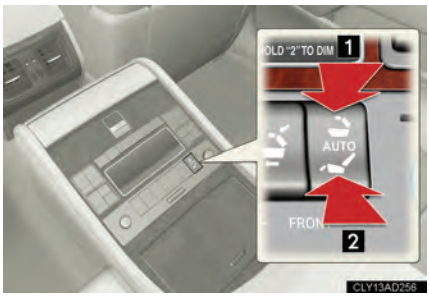
Pressing the switch will cause a beep to sound and operation will start.

1 Enters relaxation mode

2 Returns to the neutral position.

To stop the operation part-way through, press either side of the switch again, or press any other seat adjustment button.

▶ 4-seat models



Pressing the switch will cause a beep to sound and operation will start.

1 Enters relaxation mode

2 Returns to the neutral position.

To stop the operation part-way through, press either side of the switch again, or press any other seat adjustment button.

Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator

Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator, which feature a support plate mounted in the seatback and a vibration function, are equipped on each outside rear seat. The support plate position and vibration speed can be adjusted according to the occupant's preferences.

▶ Without relaxation seat

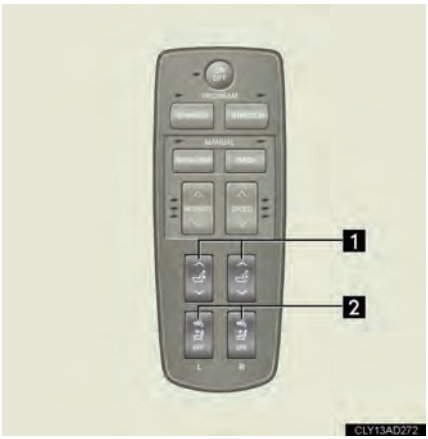


1 Support plate position adjustment switch

2 Vibration switch

Press  to operate the vibration function. Vibration will start in the same speed level as when previously operated. Each time  is pressed, the speed changes between 3 levels. Pressing "OFF" stops the vibration function.

▶ With relaxation seat



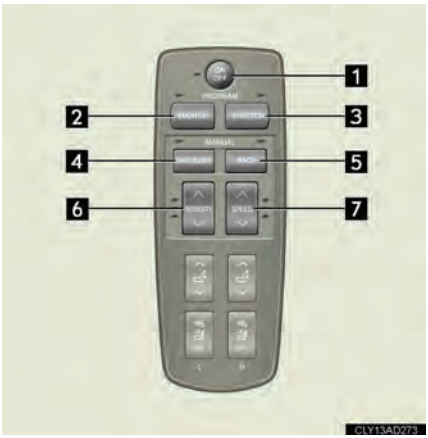
1 Support plate position adjustment switch

2 Vibration switch

Press  to operate the vibration function. Vibration will start in the same speed level as when previously operated. Each time  is pressed, the speed changes between 3 levels. Pressing "OFF" stops the vibration function.

Rear seat relaxation system (with relaxation seat)

Pneumatic chambers built into the right-hand rear seat provide the occupant with pressure of different speeds and intensities.



1 Turns the system on and off

If no buttons are selected within approximately 3 minutes of operating this switch, the system will automatically turn off.

2 Starts the "SHIATSU" program

Partial pressure for the whole back

3 Starts the "STRETCH" program

Stretches and relaxes the lower back

4 Starts operation for the upper back

5 Starts operation for the lower back

6 Adjusts the intensity of the air pressure

3 intensity levels are available.

7 Adjusts the speed of the air unit

3 speed levels are available.

■ **Seat return function linked to the door opening operation**

● Operating conditions
The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

● Canceling operation partway through
During the seat return operation, performing either of the following actions cancels the operation:

- Pressing the "SET", "M" or "C" button
- Pressing any of the seat adjustment switches

● Disabling the seat return function



Pressing the "C" button will disable the seat return function.
The indicator light comes on when the seat return function is disabled.
Pressing the button again will enable the seat return function.

● Seat return operation after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF
The seat will automatically return to the neutral position if the door is opened within approximately 45 seconds of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch being turned OFF.

■ **Relaxation mode (relaxation seat)**

● Operating conditions
Relaxation mode can be entered when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode. However, in the following situations, relaxation mode cannot be entered even when the switch is operated:

- The weight of an occupant or heavy object etc. is detected on the front passenger's seat.
- The front passenger's seat belt is fastened.
- The front passenger's door is open. (The front seat will not move forward.)

● Operation after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF
The rear seat can be returned to the neutral position as long as the relaxation mode switch is operated within approximately 45 seconds of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch being turned OFF.

■ **Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator**

● Operating conditions
The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

● Automatic stop function

- Vibration will automatically stop approximately 15 minutes after starting.
- Vibration will automatically stop if the adjacent rear door is opened.

● Pelvic support seat return function

- The position of the support plate will automatically return to the neutral position within approximately 5 seconds of the "ENGINE START STOP" switch being turned OFF.
- The position of the support plate will automatically return to the neutral position if the adjacent rear door is opened.

■ **Rear seat relaxation system (with relaxation seat)**

● Operating conditions
The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

● Automatic stop function
Each operation will automatically stop approximately 15 minutes after starting.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Power rear seats**

● Seat adjustment
To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may come into contact with the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

● When returning the rear seats from the front seats
To avoid injuring the rear passengers, wait until they have gotten out of the vehicle before returning the rear seats to the neutral position.

⚠ CAUTION

- When adjusting the seat position and ottoman angle (with relaxation seat)
  Keep sufficient footwell space to prevent your feet from being caught by the front seat.
- Using the ottoman (with relaxation seat)
  - Do not sit on the ottoman.
    If someone sits on the ottoman, the seat belt cannot be fitted properly, and they may be thrown from the seat in the event of an accident or sudden braking, resulting in death or serious injury.
  - When getting in or out of the vehicle, retract the ottoman. If the ottoman is not retracted, it may cause a fall, resulting in an injury.

■ Using the pelvic support seat with seat vibrator and rear seat relaxation system

- Those who are pregnant, have recently given birth, or suffer from ailments requiring rest (heart disease etc.) should consult a doctor before use.
- Do not allow children to use the pelvic support seat vibration function or the rear seat relaxation function.
- Do not use immediately after consuming a meal or alcohol, or for an extended period of time.
- If you feel sick while using the pelvic support seat vibration function or the rear seat relaxation function, immediately discontinue use.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent an ottoman malfunction (with relaxation seat)

- Do not place any objects in the rear seat footwell that could prevent the operation of the ottoman.
- Do not place heavy luggage on the ottoman.
- Do not place any objects under the ottoman while it is raised for use. These objects may interfere with the ottoman being folded, causing damage to the ottoman or the objects themselves.

Driving position memory

Your preferred driving position (the position of the driver's seat and steering wheel, angle of the outside rear view mirrors, and height of seat belt shoulder anchor) can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button. It is also possible to set this function to activate automatically when the doors are unlocked.
Three different driving positions can be entered into memory.

The same buttons are found on the front passenger's side, allowing the front passenger's seat position and seat belt shoulder anchor height to be memorized.

Entering a position to memory

STEP 1 Check that the shift lever is in "P".

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 3 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and seat belt shoulder anchor height to the desired positions (When memorizing the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat to the desired positions.)

STEP 4



Press the "SET" button, then within 3 seconds press button "1", "2" or "3" until the signal beeps.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.

Recalling the memorized position

STEP 1 Check that the shift lever is in "P".

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 3



Press button "1", "2" or "3" to recall the memorized position.

Front passenger's seat (with relaxation seat): When retractable table (4-seat models) or ottoman is used, rearward memories cannot be recalled.

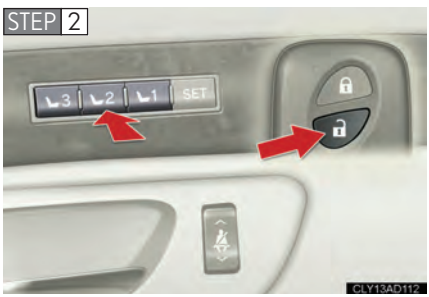
Linking driving position memory with door unlock operation (driver's seat)

One memorized driving position can be registered to each electronic key. This driving position will then be recalled when the driver's door is unlocked using the electronic key's entry function or wireless remote control and the driver's door is opened.

▶ Using the wireless remote control

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door.

STEP 2



While pressing the desired button ("1", "2" or "3"), push on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.

STEP 3 Open one of the doors.

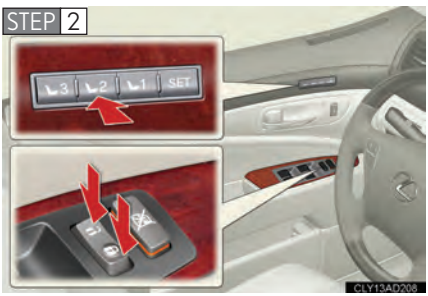
If a door is not opened within 60 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.
In case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P. 116)

▶ Using the door lock switch

Carry only one of the keys (including the card key) to which you want to link the driving position. If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be linked properly.

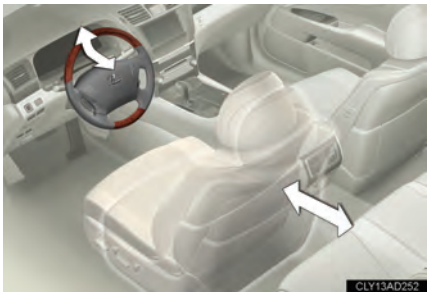
STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door.

STEP 2



While pressing the desired button ("1", "2" or "3"), press the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch (either the driver or passenger side) until the signal beeps.

Power easy access system (driver's seat)



The auto away/return function enables easy access by activating when the driver attempts to enter or exit the vehicle.

▶ Auto away function (exiting the vehicle)

When all of the following actions have been performed, the steering wheel will move up and back to the point farthest away from the driver and the seat will move backward:

- The shift lever has been shifted to "P".
- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned OFF.
- The driver seat belt has been unfastened.

▶ Auto return function (entering the vehicle)

When either of the following actions has been performed, the steering wheel will move toward the driver and seat will move forward:

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY mode.
- The driver seat belt has been fastened.

■ **When driving position memory is linked with door unlock operation**

If the driver's door is opened, the driver's seat will move toward the memorized position but stop slightly beforehand to allow easy access to the vehicle.
Turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode or fastening the driver's seat belt moves the seat fully into the memorized position.

■ **Canceling the linked door unlock operation**

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and close the driver's door.

STEP 2 Using the wireless remote control: While pushing the "SET" button, press on the wireless remote control until the signal beeps.
Using the door lock switch: While pressing the "SET" button, press the lock or unlock side on the door lock switch until the signal beeps.

■ **Operating the driving position memory after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF**

Driver's seat: Memorized positions (except the steering wheel position) can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and 60 seconds after it is closed again, even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF.

Front passenger's seat: Memorized position can be activated up to 180 seconds after the front passenger's door is opened, even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF.

■ **Stopping memorized position recall operations part-way through**

To stop all memorized position recall operations part-way through, perform one of the following actions:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".

To individually stop a memorized position recall operation for a seat, the steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors, or a seat belt shoulder anchor, operate the corresponding position adjustment switch while the memorized position is being recalled. All items can still be adjusted manually even if their recall operation is stopped part-way through.

■ **Seat operation automatic stop function (with relaxation seat)**

If a front seat is likely to come into contact with the retractable table (4-seat models) or the ottoman during seat operation or activation of the auto away function, a buzzer will sound and seat slide operation will be stopped partway.
(A warning message will be shown on the multi-information display.)

■ **The auto away function for exiting the driver seat**

If the seat is already close to the rearmost position, the auto away function may not operate when the driver exits the vehicle.

■ **Customization**

The distance that the driver's seat moves backward during the auto away function can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 778)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Seat adjustment caution**

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel. Always check that there is no rear passenger or luggage behind your seat during the auto away function is activated when you stop and exit from the vehicle.

Rear seat position memory*

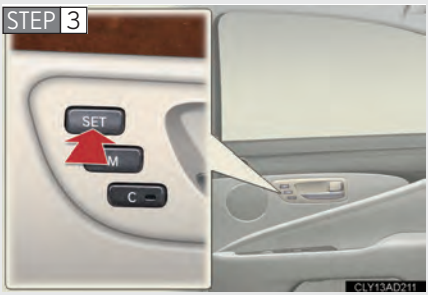
The rear seat position can be memorized and recalled with the touch of a button.

Entering a position to memory

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 2 Adjust the rear seat to the desired position.

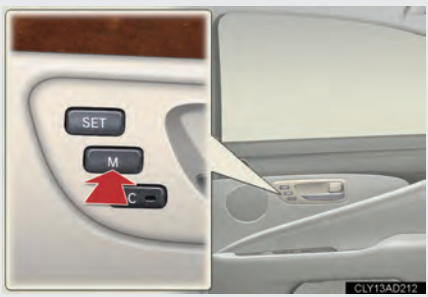
STEP 3



Press the "SET" button until the signal beeps.

If the preset is being used, the previously recorded seat position will be overwritten.

Recalling the memorized position



Press the "M" button until the signal beeps.

Relaxation seat: The memorized position will only be recalled if the ottoman is in a position higher than the memorized position. It will not move in an upward direction.

*: If equipped

■ **Seat return function linked to the door opening operation**

When the door is opened, the rear seat will automatically return to the neutral position. This function is available for 45 seconds after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF.

■ **Canceling the seat position recall or return function**



Pressing the "C" button will disable the seat position recall or seat return function.
The indicator light comes on when the function is disabled.
Pressing the button again will enable the seat position recall or seat return function.

Performing either of the following cancels the seat returning operation:

- Press the "SET", "M" or "C" button.
- Press any of the seat adjustment switches.

⚠ CAUTION

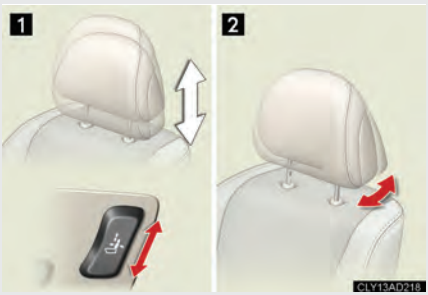
■ **Seat adjustment caution**

Take care during seat adjustment so that the rear passengers do not strike the front seats.

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

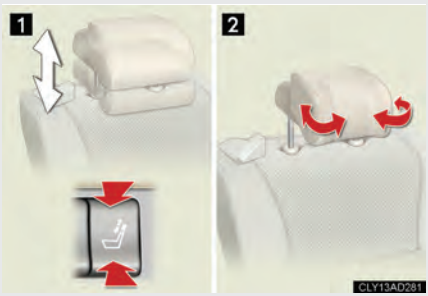
Front seats



1 Vertical adjustment
→P. 65
2 Horizontal adjustment

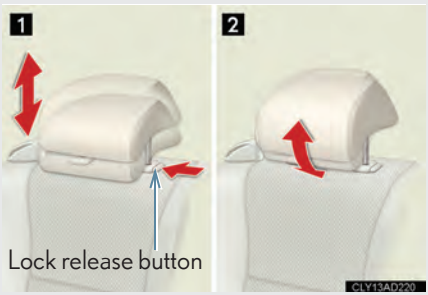
Outside rear seats

▶ Power type



1 Vertical adjustment
→P. 71
2 Side support adjustment

▶ Manual type



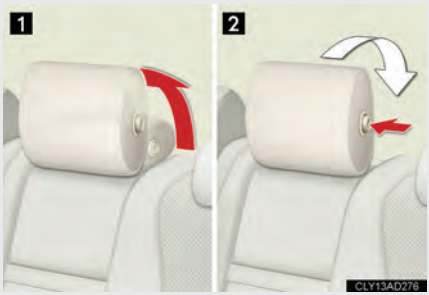
1 Vertical adjustment

Pull the head restraints up when raising.

Push and hold the lock release button when lowering.

2 Horizontal adjustment

Rear center seat (5-seat models)



1 To use
2 To fold

Removing the head restraints

For removal and installation of the head restraint, contact your Lexus dealer.

Adjusting the height of the head restraints (except rear center seat)



Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.

Rear center seat

Make sure to pull the head restraint forward when using the rear center seat.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- Manual type: After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

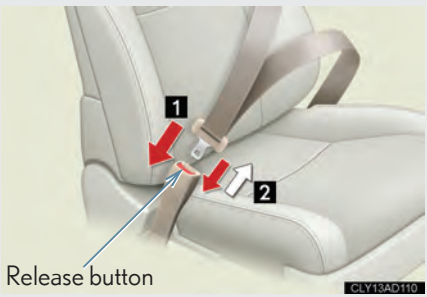
Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

Fastening and releasing the seat belt



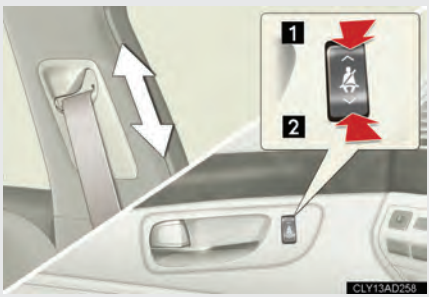
1 Fastening the belt

Push the tab into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.

2 Releasing the belt

Press the release button.
If the seat belt cannot be pulled out of the retractor, firmly pull the belt and release it.

Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)



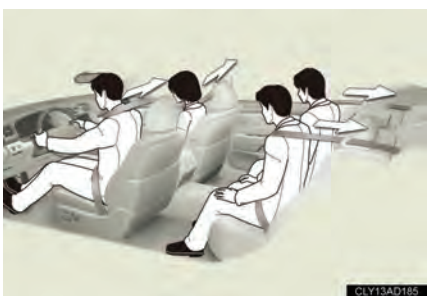
1 Up
2 Down

Seat belt comfort guide (outside rear seats)



If the shoulder belt sits close to a person's neck, slide the seat belt comfort guide forward.

Seat belt pretensioners (front and outside rear seats)



The pretensioner helps the seat belt to quickly restrain the occupant by retracting the seat belt when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal collision.

The pretensioner may not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

Pre-collision seat belts (front seats of vehicles with pre-collision system)

If the pre-collision sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-collision system will retract the seat belt using a motor, thus enhancing the effectiveness of the seat belt pretensioner in a crash.

The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 297)

Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When a passenger's shoulder belt is completely extended and then retracted even slightly, the belt is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. To free the belt again, fully retract the belt and then pull the belt out once more. (→P. 150)

Pregnant women



Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 92)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. Avoid belt contact over the round part of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way.

Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 139)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions on P. 92 regarding seat belt usage.

Automatic adjustment of the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)

A desired seat belt shoulder anchor height can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory and seat position memory. (→P. 81)

Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

Seat belt extender



If your seat belts cannot be fastened securely because they are not long enough, a personalized seat belt extender is available from your Lexus dealer free of charge.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

■ Adjustable shoulder anchor

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident. (→P. 93)

■ Seat belt pretensioners

- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the seat belt pretensioner for the front passenger's seat may not activate in the event of a collision.
- If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Child restraint lock function belt precaution

Do not allow children to play with the child restraint lock function belt. If the belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it will not be possible to pull the belt out leading to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are locked and the belt is not twisted.
  If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling of the pretensioner may prevent it from operating properly resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Precaution for pre-collision seat belts

Do not rely on the pre-collision system to avoid accidents. Always pay attention to the surrounding conditions, and drive safely and responsibly.

■ Using a seat belt extender

- Do not wear the seat belt extender if you can fasten the seat belt without the extender.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system because the belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
- The personalized extender may not be safe on another vehicle, when used by another person, or at a different seating position other than the one originally intended.

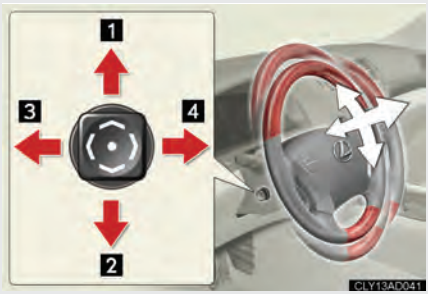
NOTICE

When using a seat belt extender

When releasing the seat belt, press on the buckle release button on the extender, not on the seat belt.
This helps prevent damage to the vehicle interior and the extender itself.

Steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or when the driver's seat belt is fastened.



1 Up
2 Down
3 Away from the driver
4 Toward the driver

Automatic adjustment of the steering position

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 81)

Power easy access system

The steering wheel and driver's seat move in accordance with "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P. 84)

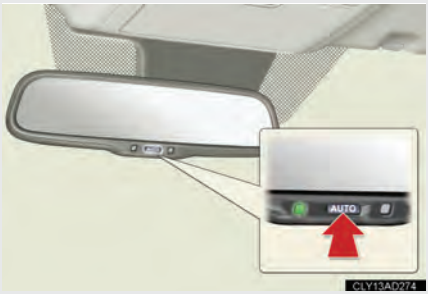
⚠ CAUTION

Caution while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Anti-glare inside rear view mirror

In automatic mode, sensors are used to detect the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically reduce the reflected light.



Turns automatic mode on/ off

The indicator comes on when automatic mode is turned on.

The mirror will revert to automatic mode each time the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror



Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

To prevent sensor error



To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.

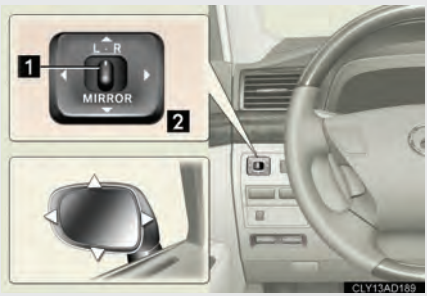
⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Outside rear view mirrors

Mirror angle can be adjusted using the switch when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.



1 Selects a mirror to adjust ("L": left or "R": right)

2 Adjusts the mirror up, down, in, or out using the switch

Folding and extending the mirrors



1 Folds the mirrors

2 Extends the mirrors

Putting the outside rear view mirror folding switch in the neutral position sets the mirrors in automatic mode. Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

When the mirrors are fogged up

Turn on the mirror defoggers to defog the mirrors. (→P. 369)

Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P. 81)

Linked mirror function when reversing

The outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground. However, this function will not operate when the mirror select switch is in the neutral position (between "L" and "R").

Auto anti-glare function

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P. 100)

CAUTION

When driving the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failing to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed using the following switches.



1 Closing
2 One-touch closing*
3 Opening
4 One-touch opening*

*: Pushing the switch in the opposite direction will stop window travel partway.

Lock switch



Press the switch down to lock the passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

■ **The power windows can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Door lock linked window operation**

- The power windows can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 37)
- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 739)

■ **Operating the power windows after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF**

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ **When the power window does not close normally**

If the jam protection function is operating abnormally and a window cannot be closed, perform the following operations using the power window switch on the relevant door.

- After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- If the window still cannot be closed even by carrying out the operation explained above, initialize the function by performing the following procedure.

STEP 1 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue holding the switch for a further 6 seconds after the window has closed.

STEP 2 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has opened completely.

STEP 3 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position once again. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning. If the window continues to close but then re-open slightly even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door key operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 778)

CAUTION

Closing the windows

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.
  Closing a power window on someone can cause serious injury, and in some instances, even death.

Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

Moon roof

Use the overhead switches to open, close, and tilt the moon roof up and down.

Opening and closing



1 Open

The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise. Press the switch again to fully open.

2 Close

Lightly press either of the moon roof switches to stop the moon roof partway.

Tilting up and down



1 Tilt up

2 Tilt down

Lightly press either of the moon roof switches to stop the moon roof partway.

■ **The moon roof can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Moon roof open warning buzzer**

The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument panel when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.

■ **Door lock linked moon roof operation**

- The moon roof can be closed using the entry function. (→P. 37)
- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. (→P. 739)

■ **Operating the moon roof after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF**

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ **Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

When the moon roof does not close normally

Perform the following procedure:

● If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*1
The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds.*2 Then it will close again, tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

● If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.

STEP 2 Press and hold the "UP" switch*1 until the moon roof moves into the tilt up position and stops.

STEP 3 Release the "UP" switch once and then press and hold the "UP" switch again.*1
The moon roof will pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*2 Then it will adjust slightly and pause for approximately 1 second. Finally, it will tilt down, open and close.

STEP 4 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*1: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*2: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, press and hold the "CLOSE" or "UP" switch, and the moon roof will tilt up and pause for approximately 1 second. Then it will tilt down, open and close. Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door key operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 778)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Opening the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ Closing the moon roof

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the moon roof.
  Closing the moon roof on someone can cause death or serious injury.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof fully closes.

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

Before refueling the vehicle

Close all the doors and windows, and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

Opening the fuel tank cap

STEP 1



Press the opener switch.

STEP 2



Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open.

STEP 3



Hang the fuel tank cap on the back of the fuel filler door.

Closing the fuel tank cap



When replacing the fuel tank cap, turn it until a clicking sound is heard.

After releasing your hand, the cap will turn slightly to the opposite direction.

Fuel types

Use unleaded gasoline. (Octane rating 91 [Research Octane Number 96] or higher)

Fuel tank capacity

Approximately 22.1 gal. (84 L, 18.4 Imp. gal.)

When the fuel filler door opener is inoperable



The lever can be used to open the fuel filler door if the fuel filler door cannot be opened using the inside switch.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it.
  A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their bodies to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
  Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
  This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■ When replacing the fuel cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.



The indicator light flashes after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned OFF to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.

■ **System maintenance**

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

Depending on surrounding environment and conditions, the engine immobilizer system may not operate properly. This may prevent the engine from starting.
(→P. 41)

Certifications for the engine immobilizer system

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: NI4TMIMB-1

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Alarm

The system sounds the alarm and flashes the lights when forcible entry is detected.

Triggering of the alarm

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door or trunk is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.

Setting the alarm system



Close the doors, trunk and hood, and lock all doors.
The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm:

- Unlock the doors or trunk.
- Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

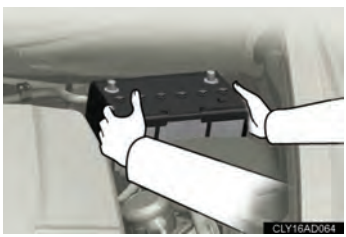
- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door, the trunk or hood.



- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked.

Alarm-operated door lock

- When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.
- Do not leave the key inside the vehicle when the alarm is operating, and make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the battery.

Panic mode



When is pressed for longer than about one second, an alarm will sound for about 60 seconds and the vehicle lights flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the wireless remote control.

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Correct driving posture

Drive in a good posture as follows:



1. Sit upright and well back in the seat. (→P. 65)
2. Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. (→P. 65)
3. Adjust the seatback so that the controls are easily operable.
4. Adjust the tilt and telescopic positions of the steering wheel downward so the SRS driver airbag is facing your chest. (→P. 99)
5. Adjust the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 89)
6. Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 92)

⚠ CAUTION

While driving

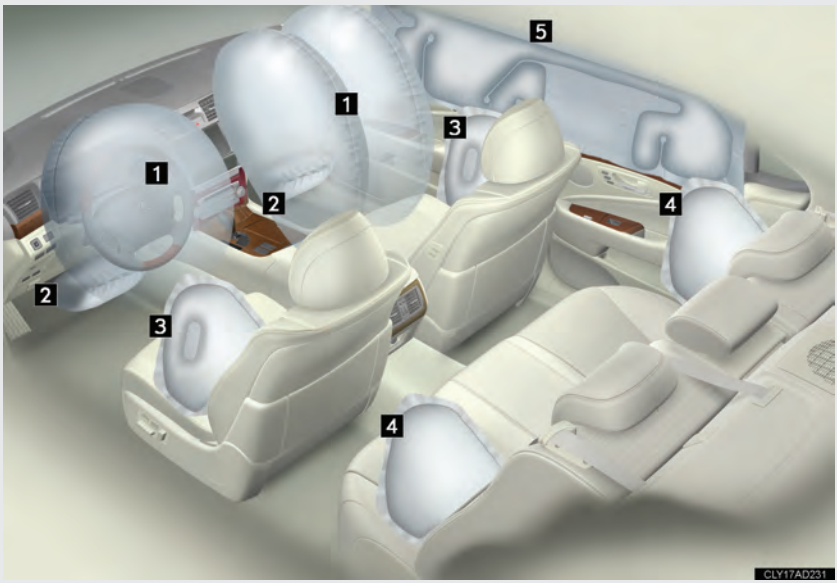
- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, increasing the risk of death or serious injury to the driver or passenger.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident. The adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.

Adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



▶ SRS front airbags

1 SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

2 SRS knee airbags
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

▶ SRS side and curtain shield airbags

3 Front SRS side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

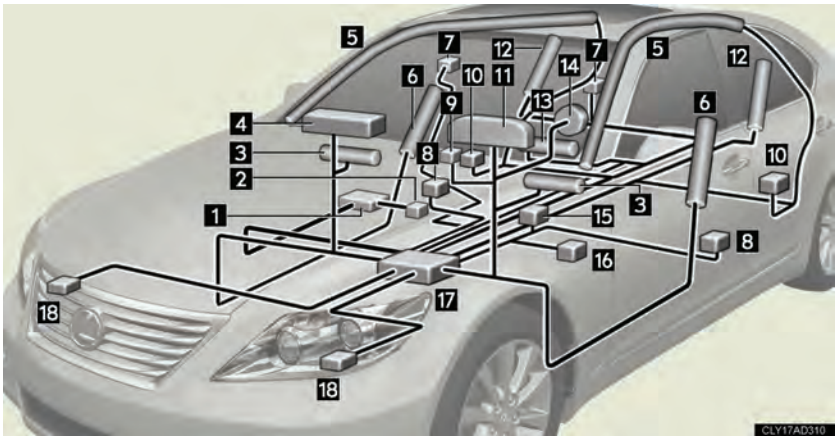
4 Rear SRS side airbags (power rear seat)
Can help protect the torso of the outside rear seat occupants

5 SRS curtain shield airbags
Can help protect primarily the head of outside occupants



6 SRS seat cushion airbag (relaxation seat)
Can help restrain the relaxation seat occupant

SRS airbag system components



1 Front passenger occupant detection system (ECU and sensors)
2 Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch
3 Knee airbags
4 Front passenger airbag
5 Curtain shield airbags
6 Front side airbags
7 Active head restraints
8 Side and curtain shield airbag sensors
9 "AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light
10 Curtain shield airbag sensors
11 SRS warning light
12 Rear side airbags
13 Seat cushion airbag
14 Driver airbag
15 Driver's seat belt buckle switch
16 Driver's seat position sensor
17 Airbag sensor assembly
18 Front airbag sensors

Your vehicle is equipped with ADVANCED AIRBAGS designed based on US motor vehicle safety standards (FMVSS208). The airbag system controls airbag deployment power for the driver and front passenger. The driver airbag system consists of the driver seat's position sensor etc. The front passenger's airbag system consists of the front passenger occupant classification sensor etc.

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. The airbag sensor assembly consists of a safing sensor and an airbag sensor.

In certain types of severe frontal or side impacts, the SRS airbag system triggers the airbag inflators. A chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

■ **SRS warning light**

This warning light system monitors the airbag sensor assembly, front airbag sensors, side and curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, curtain shield airbag sensor assemblies, driver's seat position sensor, driver's seat belt buckle switch, front passenger occupant classification system, "AIR BAG ON" indicator light, "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light, front passenger's seat belt buckle switch, seat belt pretensioner assemblies, active head restraint assemblies, inflators, interconnecting wiring and power sources. (→P. 714)

■ **If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)**

- Bruising and slight abrasions may result from contact with a deploying (inflating) SRS airbag.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the seats, and parts of the front pillar and roof side rail, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- For Safety Connect subscribers, if the SRS airbags deploy or in the event of a severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to send an emergency call to the response center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P. 622)

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag)**

- The SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

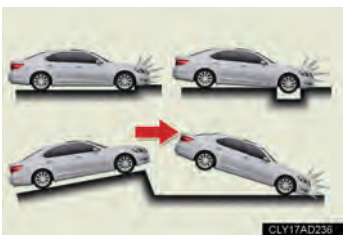
  However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher if the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck, etc.).

- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the designed threshold level, the SRS front airbags, SRS seat cushion airbag and the seat belt pretensioners may not activate together.

- The SRS front passenger airbag will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front passenger airbag may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, or the seat belt is fastened, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 92)

■ **Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision (SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag)**

The SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.



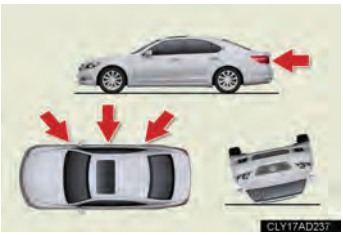
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags)**

- The SRS side airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 3300 lb. [1500 kg] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 12 - 18 mph [20 - 30 km/h]).
- The front SRS side airbag on the passenger seat will not activate if there is no passenger sitting in the front passenger seat. However, the front SRS side airbag on the passenger seat may deploy if luggage is put in the seat, even if the seat is unoccupied. (→P. 92)

■ **Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbag (SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag)**

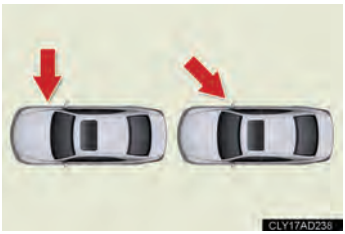
The SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag are generally not designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag may occur.



- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side airbag and curtain shield airbag system may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle

The SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags are not generally designed to inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

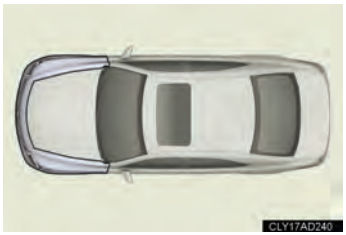


- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover

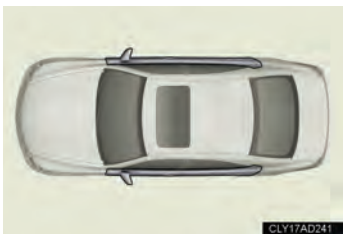
When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

- Any of the SRS airbags has been inflated.



- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS airbags to inflate.



- A portion of the doors is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- Relaxation seat: The seat cushion surface is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.
- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration ("NHTSA") advises:

  Since the risk zone for driver airbag is the first 2 - 3 in. (50 - 75 mm) of inflation, placing yourself 10 in. (250 mm) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 10 in. (250 mm) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

- Slightly recline the back of the seat.
  Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 10 in. (250 mm) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended by NHTSA above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.



- If the seat belt extender has been connected to the driver's seat belt buckle but the seat belt extender has not also been fastened to the latch plate of the driver's seat belt, the SRS driver's airbag system will judge that the driver is wearing the seat belt even though the seat belt has not been connected. In this case, the driver's airbag may not activate correctly in a collision, resulting in death or serious injury in the event of collision. Be sure to wear the seat belt with the seat belt extender.

- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are the safest for infants and children. (→P. 139)

CAUTION

SRS airbag precautions



- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not drive the vehicle while the driver or passenger have items resting on their knees.



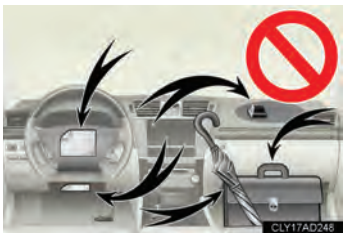
- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions





- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad or lower portion of the instrument panel.
  These items can become projectiles when SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.
- Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, front and rear pillars, roof side rail or assist grip.
- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and seriously injure or kill you, should the SRS curtain shield airbag deploy.
- If the vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components shown on P. 123.
  Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front pillar garnish, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ SRS airbag precautions

- Do not place anything, such as a cushion, on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the SRS front passenger airbag may not deploy in the event of a collision.

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer.
The SRS airbag may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.)
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios or CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability.

Front passenger occupant classification system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification system. This system detects the conditions of the front passenger seat and activates or deactivates the devices for front passenger.



1 SRS warning light
2 Front passenger's seat belt reminder light
3 "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light
4 "AIR BAG ON" indicator light

Condition and operation in the front passenger occupant classification system

Adult*1

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG ON"
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Activated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	
	Front passenger knee airbag	
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	
	Active head restraints	

Child*3 or child restraint system*4

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"*5
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Flashing*2
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated
	Active head restraints	

Unoccupied

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	Not illuminated
	SRS warning light	Off
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	
	Active head restraints	

There is a malfunction in the system

Indicator/ warning light	"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicator lights	"AIR BAG OFF"
	SRS warning light	On
	Front passenger's seat belt reminder light	Off
Devices	Front passenger airbag	Deactivated
	Side airbag on the right side passenger seats	
	Curtain shield airbag in the front passenger side	Activated
	Front passenger knee airbag	Deactivated
	Front passenger's seat belt pretensioner	Activated
	Active head restraints	

*1: The system judges a person of adult size as an adult. When a smaller adult sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as a child depending on his/her physique and posture.

*2: In the event the front passenger does not wear a seat belt.

*3: When a larger child who has outgrown a child restraint system sits in the front passenger seat, the system may recognize him/her as an adult depending on his/her physique or posture.

*4: Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. A forward-facing child restraint system should only be installed on the front passenger seat when it is unavoidable. (→P. 139)

*5: In case indicator light is not illuminated, consult this manual on how to install the child restraint system properly. (→P. 144)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding front passenger occupant classification system.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Wear the seat belt properly.
- Make sure the front passenger's seat belt tab has not been left inserted into the buckle before someone sits in the front passenger seat.
- Make sure the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is not illuminated when using the seat belt extender for the front passenger seat. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, disconnect the extender tongue from the seat belt buckle, then reconnect the seat belt. Reconnect the seat belt extender after making sure the "AIR BAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If you use the seat belt extender while the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, the front passenger airbag, side airbag on the front passenger side and front passenger knee airbag may not activate correctly, which could cause death or serious injury in the event of collision.
- Do not put weight on the front passenger seat by putting your hands or feet on the front passenger seat seatback from the rear passenger seat.
- Do not let a rear passenger lift the front passenger seat with their feet or press on the seatback with their legs.
- Do not put objects under the front passenger seat.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Front passenger occupant classification system precautions

- Do not recline the front passenger seatback so far that it touches a rear seat. This may cause the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light to be illuminated, which indicates that the passenger's airbags will not deploy in the event of a severe accident. If the seatback touches the rear seat, return the seatback to a position where it does not touch the rear seat. Keep the front passenger seatback as upright as possible when the vehicle is moving. Reclining the seatback excessively may lessen the effectiveness of the seat belt system.
- If an adult sits in the front passenger seat, the "AIR BAG ON" indicator light is illuminated. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator is illuminated, ask the passenger to sit up straight, well back in the seat, feet on the floor, and with the seat belt worn correctly. If the "AIR BAG OFF" indicator still remains illuminated, either ask the passenger to move to the rear seat, or if that is not possible, move the front passenger seat fully rearward.
- When it is unavoidable to install the forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, install the child restraint system on the front passenger seat in the proper order. (→P. 144)
- Do not modify or remove the front seats.
- Do not kick the front passenger seat or subject it to severe impact. Otherwise, the SRS warning light may come on to indicate a malfunction of the detection system. In this case, contact your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Child restraint systems installed on the rear seat should not contact the front seatbacks.
- Do not use a seat accessory, such as a cushion or seat cover, that covers the seat cushion surface.
- Do not modify or replace the upholstery of the front seat.

Child restraint systems

A child restraint system for a small child or baby must itself be properly restrained on the seat with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt.

The laws of all 50 states of the U.S.A. and Canada now require the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
  General installation instructions are provided in this manual. (→P. 144)

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 3 types according to the age and size of the child.

▶ Rear facing — Infant seat/convertible seat



▶ Forward facing — Convertible seat



▶ Booster seat



■ **When installing the child restraint system on a rear outboard seat (power rear seat)**



When you have to use a child restraint system in a rear outboard seat, adjust the following:

- The upper seatback to the rearmost position
- Relaxation seat: The seatback to the most upright position
- The seat cushion to the fully rearward position
- The head restraint to the lowmost and rearmost position

■ **Selecting an appropriate child restraint system**

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If the child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 92)

⚠ CAUTION

Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat even if "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the rear-facing child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be allowed to be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top tether strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top tether strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible even if "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated, because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not use the seat belt extender when installing a child restraint system on the front or rear passenger seat. If installing a child restraint system with the seat belt extender connected to the seat belt, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Child restraint precautions

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front pillar or roof side rail from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or an accident.

■ Child restraint lock function belt precaution

Do not allow children to play with the child restraint lock function belt. If the belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it will not be possible to pull the belt out leading to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the restraint unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or an accident.

Installing child restraints

Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the outside rear seats using the LATCH anchors or a seat belt. Attach the top tether strap when installing a child restraint.

The lap/shoulder belt can be used if your child restraint system is not compatible with the LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) system.



Child restraint LATCH anchors

LATCH anchors are provided for the rear outside seats. (Buttons displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



Seat belts equipped with a child restraint locking mechanism (ALR/ELR belts except driver's seat belt) (→P. 92)



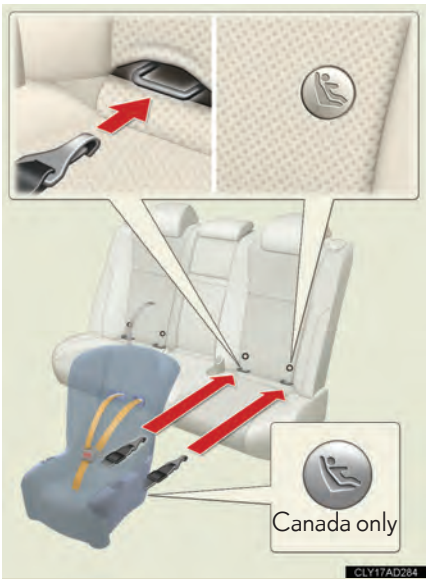
Anchor bracket (for top tether strap)

Anchor brackets are provided for each rear seat.

Installation with LATCH system

STEP 1 Vehicles with power rear seat: Adjust the seatback as upright as possible.

▶ Type A



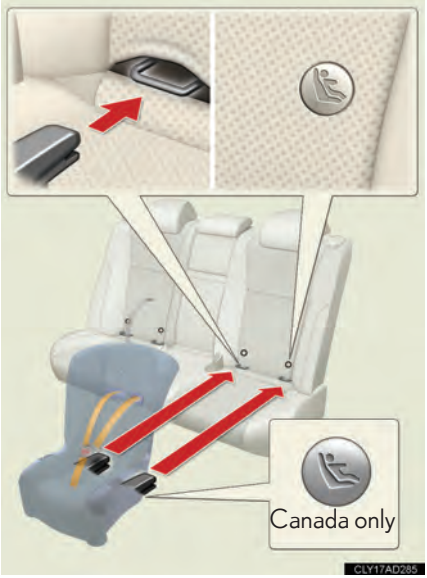
STEP 2 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly.

STEP 3 Latch the hooks of the lower straps onto the LATCH anchors.

STEP 4 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

▶ Type B



STEP 2 Widen the gap between the seat cushion and seatback slightly.

STEP 3 Latch the buckles onto the LATCH anchors.

STEP 4 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchors.

For owners in Canada:
The symbol on a child restraint system indicates the presence of a lower connector system.

Installing child restraints using a seat belt (child restraint lock function belt)

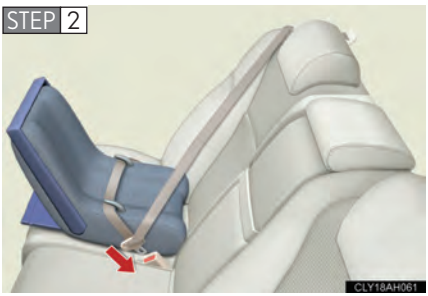
Rear-facing — Infant seat/convertible seat

STEP 1



Place the child restraint system on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.

STEP 2



Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

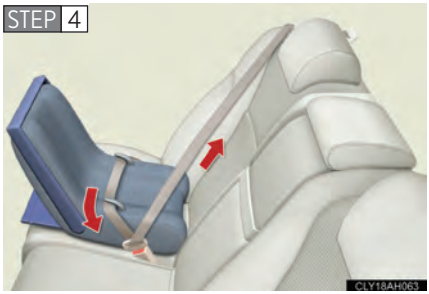
STEP 3



Fully extend the shoulder belt and then allow it to retract slightly in order to activate the ALR lock mode.

Lock mode allows the seat belt to retract only.

STEP 4



While pushing the child restraint system down into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

Forward-facing — Convertible seat

STEP 1



Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

STEP 2



Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

STEP 3



Fully extend the shoulder belt and allow it to retract to put it in lock mode. In lock mode, the belt cannot be extended.

STEP 4



While pushing the child restraint system into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract until the child restraint system is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

STEP 5 If the child restraint has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be latched onto the top tether strap anchor.

Booster seat

STEP 1



Place the booster seat on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

STEP 2



Sit the child in the booster seat. Fit the seat belt to the booster seat according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 92)

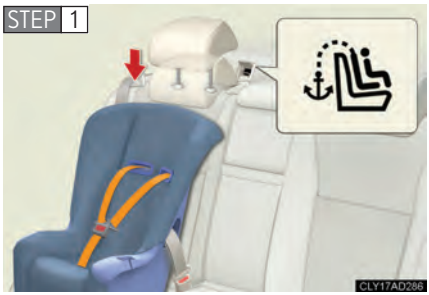
Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt



Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

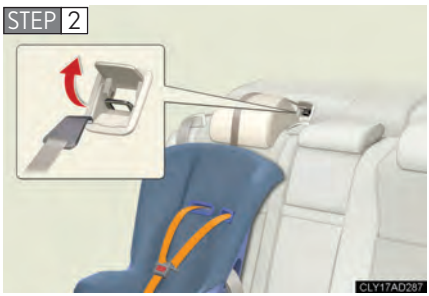
Child restraint systems with a top tether strap

STEP 1



Secure the child restraint using a seat belt or the lower anchors, and move the head restraint in place at the lowest position. (→P. 89)

STEP 2



Open the anchor bracket cover, latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top tether strap.

Make sure the top tether strap is securely latched.

Laws and regulations pertaining to anchors

The LATCH system conforms to FMVSS225 or CMVSS210.2.
Child restraint systems conforming to FMVSS213 or CMVSS213 specifications can be used.
This vehicle is designed to conform to the SAE J1819.

CAUTION

When installing a booster seat

To prevent the belt from going into ALR lock mode, do not fully extend the shoulder belt. (→P. 94)

In ALR lock mode, the belt is locked in the position and cannot be extended, which could cause injury or discomfort to the child seated in the booster seat.

When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.
If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.





- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.
- Adjust the front passenger seat or rear seats so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.
- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible even if "AIR BAG OFF" indicator light is illuminated. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).

⚠ CAUTION

■ When installing a child restraint system

- When a booster seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- When using the LATCH anchors for a child restraint system, adjust the seatback as upright as possible.
- Ensure that the belt and tab are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Push and pull the child restraint system from side to side and forward to be sure it is secure.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ Do not use a seat belt extender

If a seat belt extender is used when installing a child restraint system, the seat belt will not securely hold the child restraint system, which could cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors

When using the LATCH anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or an accident.

When driving 2

2-1. Driving procedures

Driving the vehicle 154
Engine (ignition) switch 163
Automatic Transmission (without paddle shift switches) 167
Automatic Transmission (with paddle shift switches) 172
Turn signal lever 179
Parking brake 180
Brake Hold 183
Horn 185

2-2. Instrument cluster

Gauges and meters 186
Indicators and warning lights 189
Multi-information display 193

2-3. Operating the lights and windshield wipers

Headlight switch 198
Automatic High Beam 201
Fog light switch 206
Windshield wipers and washer 207
Headlight cleaner switch 210

2-4. Using other driving systems

Cruise control 211
Dynamic radar cruise control 215
Intuitive parking assist 228
LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist) 237
Electronically modulated air suspension 244
Rear view monitor system 246
Advanced parking guidance system 250
Driving assist systems 291
Pre-Collision System 297

2-5. Driving information

Cargo and luggage 308
Vehicle load limits 311
Winter driving tips 313
Trailer towing 317
Dinghy towing 318

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.

Starting the engine (→P. 163)

Driving

STEP 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to "D". (→P. 167, 172)

STEP 2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 180)

STEP 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

Stopping

STEP 1 With the shift lever in "D", depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

When the vehicle is stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to "P" or "N". (→P. 167, 172)

Parking the vehicle

STEP 1 With the shift lever in "D", depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 Set the parking brake. (→P. 180)

STEP 3 Shift the shift lever to "P". (→P. 167, 172)

STEP 4 Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to stop the engine.

STEP 5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

Starting on a steep uphill

STEP 1 Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to "D".

STEP 2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

STEP 3 Release the parking brake.

■ **Starting off on a hill**

Hill-start assist control will operate. (→P. 291)

■ **Driving in the rain**

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ **Breaking in your new Lexus**

To extend the life of the vehicle, the following precautions are recommended to observe:

- For the first 186 miles (300 km):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 621 miles (1000 km):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive continuously in the low range in the "S" (without paddle shift switches) or "M" (with paddle shift switches) position.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ **Drum-in-disc type parking brake system**

Your vehicle has a drum-in-disc type parking brake system. This type of brake system needs bedding-down of the brake shoes periodically or whenever the parking brake shoes and/or drum are replaced. Have your Lexus dealer perform the bedding down.

■ **Operating your vehicle in a foreign country**

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 755)

■ **Regarding engine speed when idling**

When idling with the shift lever in "P" or "N" for an extensive period of time, the engine speed may rise to approximately 1000 rpm. This is not a malfunction. After a set period of time, the engine will return to its previous engine speed.

⚠ CAUTION

When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly, allowing you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
- Do not let the vehicle roll backwards while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in "R".
  Doing so may result in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- If the smell of exhaust is noticed inside the vehicle, open the windows and check that the trunk is closed. Large amounts of exhaust in the vehicle can cause driver drowsiness and an accident, resulting in death or a serious health hazard. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to D while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.

⚠ CAUTION

- Moving the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 749
- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 167, 172)
- When stopped on an inclined surface, use the brake pedal and parking brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward or forward and causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control that can cause accidents that may result in death or serious injury.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in death or serious injury.
- Do not drive the vehicle off-road.
  This is not a AWD vehicle designed for real off-road driving. Proceed with all due caution if it becomes unavoidable to drive off-road.
- Do not drive across river crossings or through other bodies of water.
  This may cause electric/electronic components to short circuit, damage the engine or cause other serious damage to the vehicle.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit. Even if the legal speed limit permits it, do not drive over 85 mph (140 km/h) unless your vehicle has high-speed capability tires. Driving over 85 mph (140 km/h) may result in tire failure, loss of control and possible injury. Be sure to consult a tire dealer to determine whether the tires on your vehicle are high-speed capability tires or not before driving at such speeds.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as engine braking caused by up-shifting or down-shifting, may cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than "P" or "N", the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, and may cause an accident.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of eye glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to "P", stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes and the rear bumper diffusers while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Exhaust gases

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless. Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.
- The exhaust should be checked occasionally. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer. Failure to do so may allow exhaust gases to enter the vehicle, resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, you may accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, which could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking the vehicle

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the electronically controlled brake system does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid downhills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, even though the brakes still operate, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Braking distance also becomes longer.
- The brake system consists of 3 individual hydraulic systems: if one of the systems fails, the others will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and braking distance becomes longer. If this happens, do not continue to drive the vehicle. If the brake system warning light (red indicator) comes on together with buzzer sound while driving, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

■ If the vehicle becomes stuck or bogged (AWD models)

Do not spin the wheels recklessly when any of the tires is up in the air, or stuck in sand or mud, etc. This may damage the drive system components or propel the vehicle forward (or in another direction) and cause an accident.

NOTICE

When driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving. If the brake pedal is depressed while driving with the accelerator pedal depressed, driving torque may be restrained.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

When parking the vehicle

Always put the shift lever in "P". Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for a long time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

If a brake pad wear warning message is displayed

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible.
The rotor damage can result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

Moderate levels of the brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured.
It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire. (→P. 726)

NOTICE

When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, differential, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft, bearings and suspension joints (where possible) and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes.

Starting the engine

STEP 1 Check that the parking brake is set.

STEP 2 Check that the shift lever is set in "P".

STEP 3 Sit in the driver's seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.
The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns green.

STEP 4



Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

The engine can be started from any "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.

Changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode

Modes can be changed by pressing the "ENGINE START STOP" switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



1 OFF*

The emergency flashers can be used.

2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns amber.

3 IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator turns amber.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than "P" when turning off the engine, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to OFF.

■ **If the engine does not start**

The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 114)

■ **When the steering lock cannot be released**



The green indicator light on the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will flash and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch again while turning the steering wheel left and right.

■ **When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch indicator flashes in amber**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Auto power off function**

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than an hour with the shift lever in "P", the "ENGINE START STOP" switch will automatically turn OFF.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 43

■ **When the electronic key battery is discharged**

→P. 681

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 41

■ **Note for the entry function**

→P. 44

⚠ CAUTION

When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Stopping the engine in an emergency

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, push and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for more than 3 seconds.
However, do not touch the "ENGINE START STOP" switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

⚠ NOTICE

To prevent the battery from being discharged

Do not leave the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.

When starting the engine

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have the engine checked immediately by your Lexus dealer.

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

Shifting the shift lever



While the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

Shift position uses

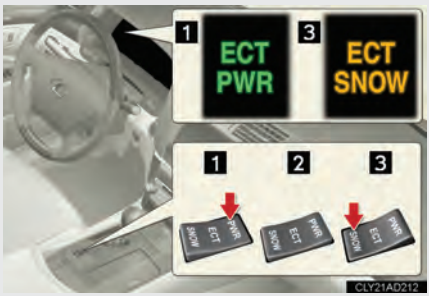
Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving*1
S	"S" mode driving*2 (→P. 169)

*1: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noises, set the shift lever in the "D" position for normal driving.

*2: Selecting shift ranges using "S" mode restricts the upper limit of the possible gear ranges, controls engine braking forces, and prevents unnecessary upshifting.

Selecting a driving mode

The following modes can be selected in any shift position to suit driving conditions:

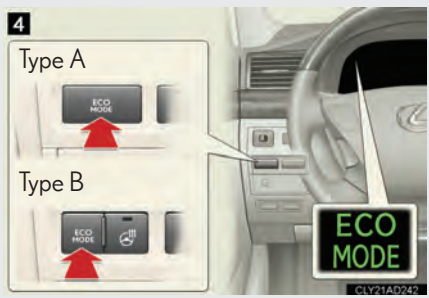


1 Power mode
For powerful acceleration and driving in mountainous regions

2 Normal mode

3 Snow mode
For accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow

To cancel power mode or snow mode, press the same side of the switch again.



4 Eco drive mode

When eco drive mode is turned on, the "ECO MODE" indicator will come on and the multi-information display will change to the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display and Average fuel consumption screen. (→P. 193)

Pressing the "ECO MODE" switch again turns eco drive mode off.

Changing shift ranges in “S” mode

Shift the shift lever to the “S” position and operate the shift lever.



1 Upshifting
2 Downshifting

The initial shift range in “S” mode is automatically set to “4”, “5”, “6” or “7” according to vehicle speed. However, the initial shift range may be set to “2” or “3” if the AI-SHIFT has operated while the shift lever was in the “D” position. (→P. 170)

Shift ranges and their functions

Meter display	Function
S2 - S8	A gear in the range between “1” and the selected gear is automatically chosen depending on vehicle speed and driving conditions
S1	Setting the gear at “1”

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. (→P. 336, 346) To improve air conditioning performance, adjust the fan speed or turn off Eco drive mode.

■ **"S" mode**

- When the shift range is "6" or lower, holding the shift lever toward "+" sets the shift range to "8."
- When the shift range is "6" or higher, moving the shift lever toward "-" may change down by 2 shift ranges or more depending on driving conditions.
- To prevent the engine from over-revving, upshifting may automatically occur.

■ **Downshifting restrictions warning buzzer (in the "S" mode)**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

■ **When driving with the cruise control system**

Engine brake will not operate in the "S" mode, even when downshifting to "7", "6", "5" or "4". (→P. 211, 215)

■ **Snow mode automatic deactivation**

Snow mode is automatically deactivated if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF after driving in snow mode.

■ **Eco drive mode**

When the vehicle is driven in eco drive mode, vehicle driving force and operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling) is controlled to improve fuel efficiency. If eco drive mode is turned on when the driving mode is in power mode or snow mode, power mode or snow mode will be canceled.

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"**

→P. 736

■ **AI-SHIFT**

The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the optimal gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.
The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the "D" and "S" position.

The engine speed may stay high while depressing the accelerator pedal and may remain high after releasing the accelerator pedal. This does not indicate a malfunction.

CAUTION

When driving on slippery road surfaces

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

Select a shift position appropriate for the driving conditions.

Shifting the shift lever



While the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever.

Shift position uses

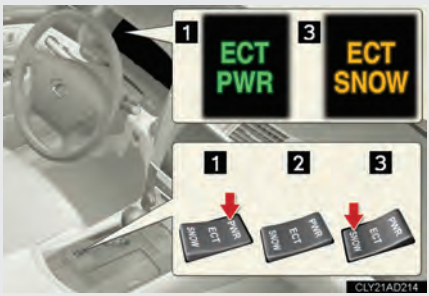
Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving*
M	"M" mode driving (→P. 176)

*: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noises, set the shift lever in the "D" position for normal driving.

Shift position	Meter display	Function	Purpose
	D	Normal “D” position driving	Gears between “1” and “8” are automatically selected according to driving conditions
	D4 (paddle shift switches activated)	Shift range selection (→P. 175)	Allows optimum use of engine braking
	M4	Individual gear selection (→P. 176)	Allows the driver to select gears for sporty driving

Selecting a driving mode

The following modes can be selected in any shift position to suit driving conditions:

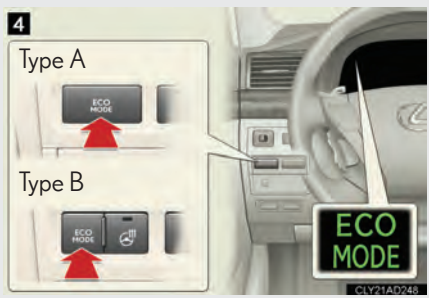


1 Power mode
For powerful acceleration and driving in mountainous regions

2 Normal mode

3 Snow mode
For accelerating and driving on slippery road surfaces, such as on snow

To cancel power mode or snow mode, press the same side of the switch again.



4 Eco drive mode

When eco drive mode is turned on, the "ECO MODE" indicator will come on and the multi-information display will change to the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display and Average fuel consumption screen. (→P. 193)

Pressing the "ECO MODE" switch again turns eco drive mode off.

Selecting shift ranges in the “D” position

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the “-”paddle shift switch. The shift range can then be selected by operating the “-” and “+” paddle shift switches. Changing the shift range allows restriction of the highest gear, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.



1 Higher shift range

2 Lower shift range

The selected shift range, from “1” to “8”, will be displayed in the meter.

To return to normal “D” position driving, the “+” paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

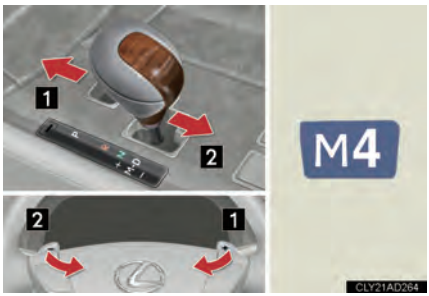
Shift ranges and their functions

Meter display	Function
D2 - D8	A gear in the range between “1” and the selected gear is automatically chosen depending on vehicle speed and driving conditions
D1	Setting the gear at “1”

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

Selecting gears in the “M” position

To enter “M” mode, shift the shift lever to the “M” position. Gears can then be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches, allowing you to drive in the gear of your choosing.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

The gear changes once every time the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated.

The selected gear, from “1” to “8”, will be displayed in the meter.

When in the “M” position, the gear will not change unless the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated.

However, even when in the “M” position, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When the automatic transmission fluid or engine coolant temperature is low.
- When the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high.

Gear functions

A selected gear from “M1” through “M8” will be set.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. (→P. 336, 346) To improve air conditioning performance, adjust the fan speed or turn off Eco drive mode.

■ **When the "-" paddle shift switch is operated in the "D" position**

- When the "-" paddle shift switch is operated in the "D" position, a shift range will be automatically selected. The highest gear of the first shift range will be one gear lower than the gear in use during normal "D" position driving.
- If the "-" paddle shift switch is operated when in range "6" or above, the shift range may be lowered by two ranges or more in accordance with the driving conditions.

■ **Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the "D" position**

Shift range selection in the "D" position will be deactivated in the following situations:

- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time in "6", "7" or "8" without changing the shift range

■ **Downshift restrictions warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

■ **When driving with the cruise control system**

Engine braking will not occur during shift range selection in the "D" position, even when downshifting to range "7", "6", "5" or "4". (→P. 211, 215)

■ **Power mode and snow mode automatic deactivation**

Power mode and snow mode are automatically deactivated if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF after driving in power mode or snow mode.

■ **Eco drive mode**

When the vehicle is driven in eco drive mode, vehicle driving force and operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling) is controlled to improve fuel efficiency. If eco drive mode is turned on when the driving mode is in power mode or snow mode, power mode or snow mode will be canceled.

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"**

→P. 736

■ **If the automatic transmission fluid temperature warning message is displayed**

If the automatic transmission fluid temperature warning message is displayed while driving, make sure you return to normal "D" position driving and reduce speed by easing off the accelerator pedal. Stop the vehicle in a safe place, shift the shift lever to the "P" position and let the engine idle until the warning message goes out.
When the warning message goes out, the vehicle can be driven again.
If the warning message does not go out after waiting a while, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **AI-SHIFT**

The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the optimal gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.
The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the "D" position. (Shifting the shift lever to the "M" position cancels the function.)

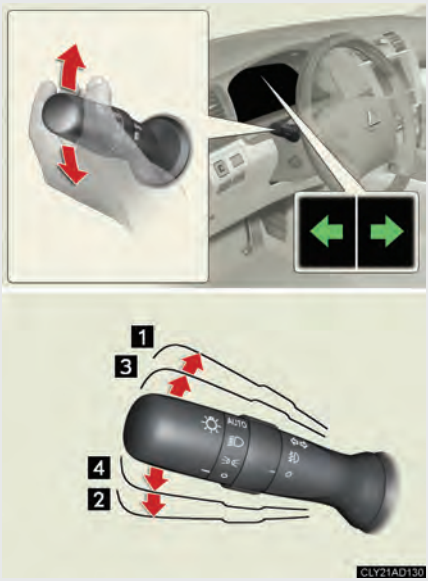
The engine speed may stay high while depressing the accelerator pedal and may remain high after releasing the accelerator pedal. This does not indicate a malfunction.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When driving on slippery road surfaces**

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

Turn signal lever



1 Right turn

2 Left turn

3 Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and then release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

4 Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and then release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

■ **Turn signals can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **If the indicators flash faster than usual**

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ **If the turn signals stop flashing before a lane change has been performed**

Operate the lever again.

■ **To discontinue flashing of the turn signals during a lane change**

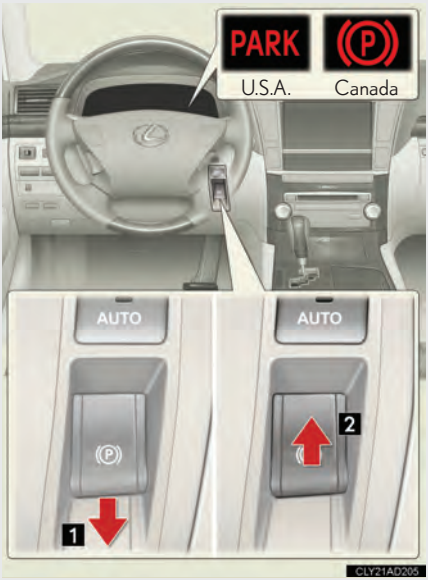
Operate the lever in the opposite direction.

■ **Customization**

The number of times the turn signals flash during a lane change can be changed. (Customizable features→P. 778)

For the parking brake, an electrical parking brake system is adopted.

Manual mode



1 Sets the parking brake

If the parking brake switch is operated when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, the parking brake indicator light will come on and stay on for a while.

Press and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving.

2 Releases the parking brake

Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. Make sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off.

Automatic mode



On/off

The parking brake is set automatically according to shift lever operation.

Operate the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

- When the shift lever is moved out of "P"
  The parking brake will be released.
- When the shift lever is moved into "P"
  The parking brake will be set.

Parking brake operation

- When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.
- If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

Parking brake indicator light

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

Parking brake operation sound

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 713, 723) Depending on the condition, the parking brake indicator light may flash.

■ **Usage in winter time**

See "Winter driving tips" for parking brake usage in winter time. (→P. 313)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Before you leave the vehicle, set the parking brake, shift the shift lever to "P" and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

■ **When the system malfunctions**

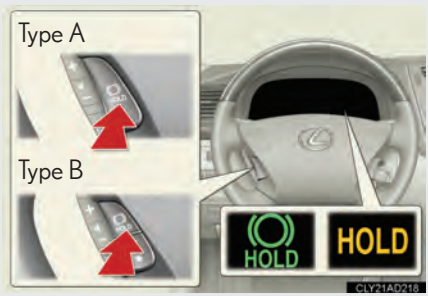
Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

■ **When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction**

Use the parking brake release tool to manually release the parking brake. (→P. 737)
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

Brake Hold

The brake hold system keeps the brake applied when the shift lever is in "D", "N", or "S" (without paddle shift switches) or "M" (with paddle shift switches) with the system on and the brake pedal has been depressed to stop the vehicle. The system releases the brake when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift lever in "D", "S" or "M" to allow smooth start off.



Turns the brake hold system on.

The brake hold standby indicator comes on. While the system is holding the brake, the brake hold operated indicator light comes on.

■ Brake hold system operating conditions

The brake hold system cannot be turned on in the following conditions:

- The trunk or hood is not closed.
- The driver's door is not closed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.

If any of the conditions above are detected when the brake hold system is enabled, the system will turn off and the brake hold operated indicator light will go off. In addition, if any of the conditions are detected while the system is holding the brake, a warning buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. The parking brake will then be set automatically.

■ **Brake hold function**

- If the brake pedal is left released for a period of about 3 minutes after the system has started holding the brake, the parking brake will be set automatically. In this case, a warning buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.
- To turn the system off while the system is holding the brake, firmly depress the brake pedal and press the switch again.
- The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle when the vehicle is on a steep incline. In this situation, it may be necessary for the driver to apply the brakes. The multi-information display will inform the driver of this situation.

■ **When the parking brake is set automatically while the system is holding the brakes**

The parking brake will not be released automatically. Release the parking brake by operating the parking brake switch, making sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off. (→P. 180)

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

Warning lights and/or warning messages will turn on or flash. (→P. 713, 723)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When stopped on a slippery road**

The system cannot stop the vehicle when the gripping ability of the tires has been exceeded. Do not use the system when stopped on a slippery road.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

The brake hold system is not designed for use when parking the vehicle for a long period of time. Turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF while the system is holding the brake may release the brake, which would cause the vehicle to move. When operating the "ENGINE START STOP" switch, depress the brake pedal, set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to "P".

Horn



To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.



The units used on the speedometer and the tachometer gauge display may differ depending on the model/type.

The following gauges, meters and display illuminate when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

1 Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

2 Multi-information display

→P. 193

3 Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

4 Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

5 Trip meter and trip meter reset buttons

6 Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven

7 Trip meter

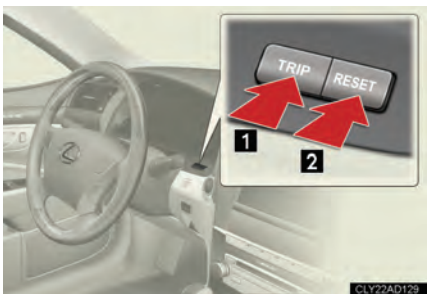
Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters "A" and "B" can be used to record and display different distances independently.

8 Shift position and shift range
→P. 167, 172

9 Instrument panel light control buttons

10 Engine coolant temperature gauge
Displays the engine coolant temperature

Trip meter and trip meter reset buttons



1 Changes the display

2 Resets the trip meter currently displayed to "0"

Instrument panel light control buttons

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.



1 Darker

2 Brighter

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P. 745)

The indicator and warning lights on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

▶ Instrument cluster



The units used on the speedometer and the tachometer gauge display may differ depending on the model/type.

▶ Center panel (without touch screen)



▶ Center panel (with touch screen)



Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.

Turn signal indicator (→P. 179)

Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 198)

*3 Automatic High Beam indicator (→P. 201)
(if equipped)

Headlight indicator (→P. 198)
(U.S.A.)

Tail light indicator (→P. 198)
(Canada)

Front fog light indicator (→P. 206)

Cruise control indicator (→P. 211, 215)

*1 "AFS OFF" indicator (→P. 199)

*1, 2 Slip indicator (→P. 292)

*1 VSC off indicator (→P. 293)

*1 Brake hold standby indicator (→P. 183)

*1 Brake hold operated indicator (→P. 183)



"ECT PWR" indicator (→P. 168, 174)



"ECT SNOW" indicator (→P. 168, 174)

*1



Eco Driving Indicator Light (→P. 196)



"ECO MODE" indicator (→P. 168, 174)



(if equipped)

"SPORT" mode indicator (→P. 244)



(if equipped)

"COMFORT" mode indicator (→P. 244)



(U.S.A.)

Parking brake indicator (→P. 180)



(Canada)

Parking brake indicator (→P. 180)



(if equipped)

Lane keeping assist indicator (→P. 237)

*1



(without touch screen)

"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicators (→P. 134)

*1



(with touch screen)

"AIR BAG ON" and "AIR BAG OFF" indicators (→P. 134)

*1

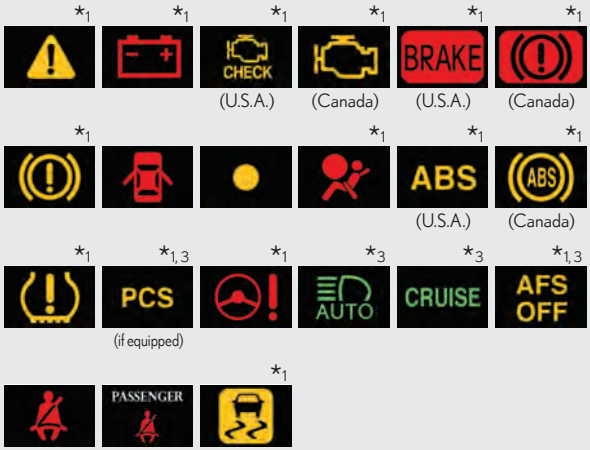


(if equipped)

"HEIGHT HIGH" indicator (→P. 244)

Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle's systems. (→P. 713)



*1: These lights turn on when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

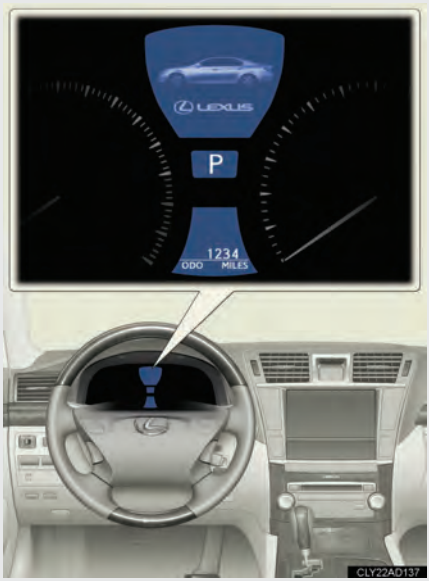
*3: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

CAUTION

If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS airbag warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data, including the current outside air temperature.



- Trip information (→P. 193)

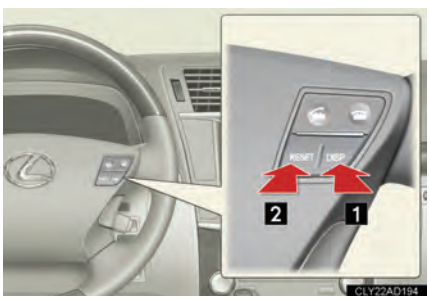
  Displays cruising range, fuel consumption and other cruising related information.
- Intuitive parking assist display (if equipped)* (→P. 228)
- Dynamic radar cruise control display (if equipped)* (→P. 215)
- Warning messages (→P. 723)

  Automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in one of the vehicle's systems.

*: Automatically displayed when the system is used.

Trip information

▶ With telephone switch



1 "DISP" switch

Display items can be switched by pressing the "DISP" switch.

2 "RESET" switch

▶ Without telephone switch



1 "DISP" switch

Display items can be switched by pressing the "DISP" switch.

2 "RESET" switch

Outside temperature

Displays the outside air temperature

The temperature range that can be displayed is from -40°F (-40°C) to 122°F (50°C).

Cruising range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.

Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display and Average fuel consumption

Displays Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display and the average fuel consumption since the function was reset.

The function can be reset by pressing the "RESET" switch when the average fuel consumption is displayed.

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

On vehicles with a navigation system, the "Past Record" screen on the touch screen will also be updated.
For details on the "Past Record" screen, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Current fuel consumption

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption

Average fuel consumption after refueling

Displays the average fuel consumption since the vehicle was last refueled

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

Distance after refueling

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the vehicle was last refueled

Elapsed time

Displays the elapsed time since it was last reset

The function can be reset by pressing the "RESET" switch when the elapsed time is displayed.

Average vehicle speed

Displays the average vehicle speed since the function was reset

The function can be reset by pressing the "RESET" switch when the average vehicle speed is displayed.

Tire inflation pressure

Displays inflation pressure of each tire. There is no correlation between the order of the displayed values and the tire positions

It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.

Eco Driving Indicator customization

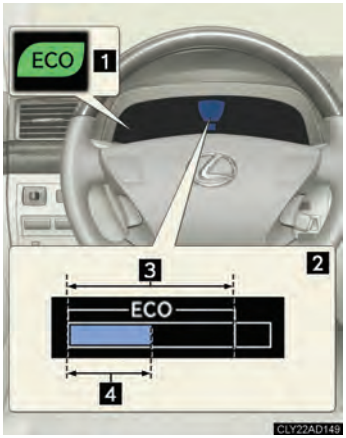
Eco Driving Indicator Light can be deactivated.

Eco Driving Indicator Light can be activated or deactivated by pressing the "DISP" switch for longer than 1 second when the Eco Driving Indicator customization screen is displayed.

■ System check display

After switching the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, "SYSTEM CHECK" is displayed while system operation is checked. When the system check is complete, the normal screen will return.

■ Eco Driving Indicator



1 Eco Driving Indicator Light
During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on.

2 Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display
Suggests Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

3 Zone of Eco driving

4 Eco driving ratio based on acceleration
In case over-use of the accelerator causes the vehicle to exceed Zone of Eco driving, the right of Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will blink and Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn off.

▶ Without paddle shift switches

Eco Driving Indicator will operate when the vehicle is being driven at a speed of approximately 81 mph (130 km/h) or lower with the shift lever in "D". Eco Driving Indicator will not operate when the vehicle is in power mode or snow mode.

▶ With paddle shift switches

Eco Driving Indicator will operate when the vehicle is being driven at a speed of approximately 81 mph (130 km/h) or lower with the shift lever in "D" and the paddle shift switches not used. Eco Driving Indicator will not operate when the vehicle is in power mode or snow mode.

■ **Outside temperature display**

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 12 mph [20 km/h])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

■ **To turn off the background images on the trip information screen**

When information is displayed together with a background image, press the "DISP" switch for 1 second or more.
Pressing the switch again for longer than 1 second turns on the background images.

■ **Tire inflation pressure**

Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using other gauges.

■ **When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals**

The following information will be reset:

- Cruising range
- Average fuel consumption
- Average fuel consumption after refueling
- Distance after refueling
- Elapsed time
- Average vehicle speed

■ **Liquid crystal display**

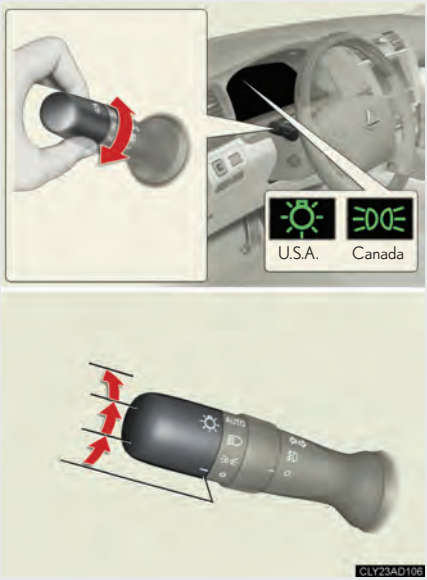
Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem to continue using the display.

■ **Customization**

Setting of available languages can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 778)

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

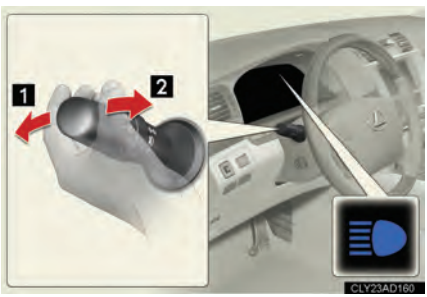


The side marker, parking, tail, license plate, daytime running lights and instrument panel lights turn on.

The headlights and all lights listed above (except daytime running lights) turn on.

AUTO The headlights, other exterior lights and instrument panel lights turn on and off automatically. (When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode)

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you to turn on the high beams.

Release to turn them off. You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

AFS

AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System) improves visibility at intersections and on curves by automatically adjusting the direction of light axis of the headlights according to vehicle speed and the degree of the tire angle that are controlled by steering input.

Operates at speeds of 6 mph (10 km/h) or higher.

Deactivating AFS



On/off

The indicator turns on when the AFS is deactivated.

Daytime running light system

- To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, the headlights turn on automatically (at a reduced intensity) whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released. Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.
- Compared to turning on the headlights, the daytime running light system offers greater durability and consumes less electricity, so it can help improve fuel economy.

Headlight control sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.
Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.

■ **Automatic light off system**

- When the headlights come on: The headlights turn off 30 seconds after a door is opened and closed if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch has been switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF. (The lights turn off immediately if on the key is pressed after all doors are locked.)
- When only the tail lights come on: The tail lights turn off automatically if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF and driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to the or position.

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ **If the "AFS OFF" indicator flashes...**

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 778)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

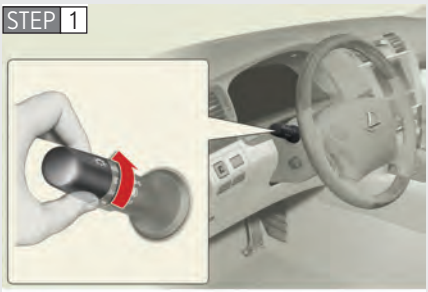
Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Automatic High Beam*

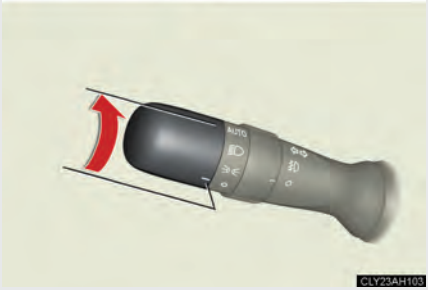
The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle camera sensor to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles, etc., and automatically turns high beam on or off as necessary.

Activating the Automatic High Beam system

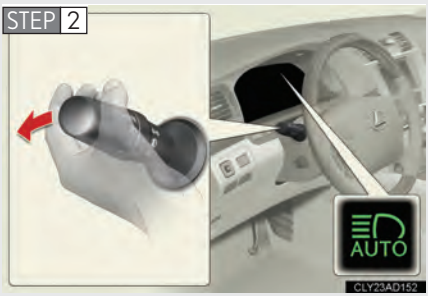
STEP 1



Headlight switch in "AUTO" position.



STEP 2



Push the lever away from you.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the headlights are turned on automatically to indicate that the system is active.

*: If equipped

High beam automatic turning on or off conditions

When all of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned on (after approximately 1 second):

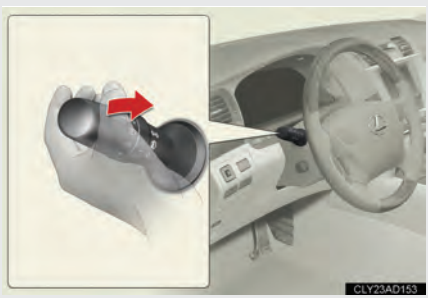
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 21 mph (34 km/h).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no oncoming or preceding vehicles with headlights or tail lights turned on.

If any of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned off:

- Vehicle speed drops below approximately 17 mph (27 km/h).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- Oncoming or preceding vehicles have headlights or tail lights turned on.

Turning the high beam on/off manually

▶ Switching to low beam



Pull the lever to original position.

▶ Switching to high beam



Turn the light switch to position.

■ **The Automatic High Beam can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Camera sensor detection information**

- High beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
  - When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve.
  - When the vehicle is cut in front of by another.
- High beam may be turned off if an oncoming vehicle that is using fog lights without using the headlights is detected.
- House lights, street lights, red traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to turn off.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn high beam on or off:
  - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles
  - Road conditions (wetness, ice, snow etc.)
  - The number of passengers and amount of baggage
- High beam may be turned on or off when unexpected by the driver.
- In the situations below, the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness levels, and may flash or expose nearby pedestrians to the high beam. Therefore, you should consider turning the high beams on or off manually rather than relying on the Automatic High Beam system.

- In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms etc.)
- The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt etc.
- The windshield is cracked or damaged.
- The inside rear view mirror or camera sensor is deformed or dirty.
- Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights.
- Vehicles ahead have headlights that are either switched off, dirty, are changing color, or have are not aimed properly.
- When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness
- When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel tracks etc.)
- When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road
- There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror.
- The vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty.
- The vehicle is listing or tilting, due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed etc.
- The Automatic High Beam indicator is flashing.
- The driver believes that the high beam may be causing problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

If the Automatic High Beam indicator flashes

It may indicate a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Temporary lowering sensor sensitivity

The sensitivity of the sensor can be temporarily lowered.
To lower the sensitivity, push and hold the "AUTO" button on the inside rear view mirror for 15 to 20 seconds, and release. The indicator light on the inside rear view mirror will flash to indicate that the sensitivity has been lowered.

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned off, the sensitivity will be returned to its normal level.

Customization

The Automatic High Beam can be turned off.
(Customizable features →P. 778)

CAUTION

Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning high beam on or off manually if necessary.

NOTICE

Notes when using the Automatic High Beam system

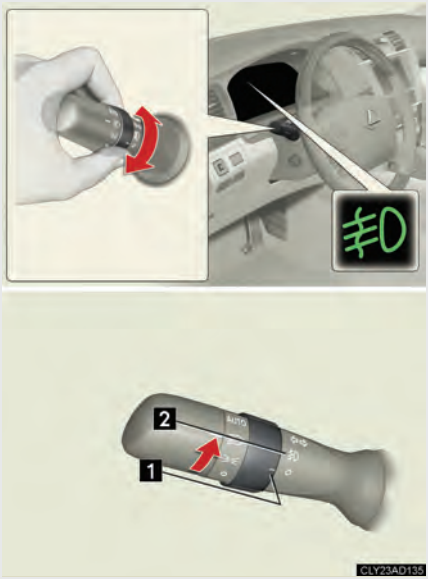


Observe the following to ensure that the Automatic High Beam functions correctly.

- Do not touch the camera sensor.
- Do not subject the inside rear view mirror or the camera sensor to a strong impact.
- Do not disassemble the camera sensor.
- Do not spill liquid onto the inside rear view mirror or the camera sensor.
- Do not apply window tinting or stickers to the camera sensor or the area of windshield near the camera sensor.
- Do not place items on the dashboard. There is a possibility that the camera sensor will mistake items reflected in the windshield for streetlights, the headlights of other vehicles, etc.
- Do not install a parking tag or any other accessories near or around the inside rear view mirror and the camera sensor.
- Do not overload the vehicle.
- Do not modify the vehicle.
- Do not replace windshield with non-genuine windshield.
  Contact your Lexus dealer.

Fog light switch

The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain or fog. The fog lights can be turned on only when the headlights are on low beam.

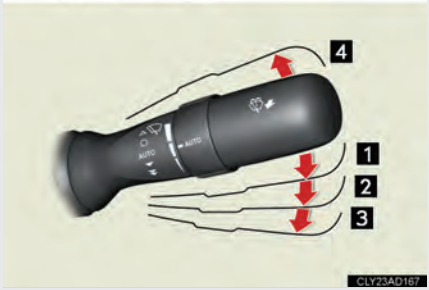


1 Turns the front fog lights off
2 Turns the front fog lights on

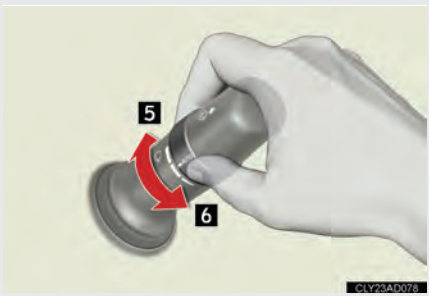
Windshield wipers and washer

With "AUTO" selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.





1 Rain-sensing wiper operation
2 Low speed wiper operation
3 High speed wiper operation
4 Temporary operation



5 Increases the sensitivity
6 Decreases the sensitivity



7 Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers operate automatically. (After operating several times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping.)

■ **The windshield wipers and washer can be operated when**

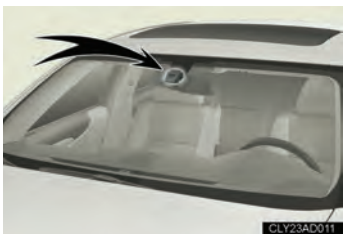
The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation**

With the settings other than "AUTO" also, the time until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs is changed depending on vehicle speed.

With low speed wiper operation selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary. (However, when the sensor sensitivity is adjusted to the highest, the mode cannot be switched.)

■ **Raindrop sensor**



- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

  An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.

- If the wiper switch is turned to "AUTO" position while the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wiper will operate once to show that auto mode is activated.

- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 194°F (90°C) or higher, or 5°F (-15°C) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than "AUTO".

If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked and if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

Headlight cleaner linked operation (if equipped on headlight cleaner)

When the windshield washer is operated with the headlights on, the headlight cleaner will operate once.

CAUTION

Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in "AUTO" mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in "AUTO" mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

NOTICE

When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

When the washer fluid tank is empty

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

Headlight cleaner switch*

Washer fluid can be sprayed on the headlights.



Press the switch to clean the headlights.

■ **The headlight cleaner can be operated when**

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlight switch is turned on.

■ **Windshield washer linked operation**

When the windshield washer is operated with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights on, the headlight cleaner will operate once. (→P. 207)

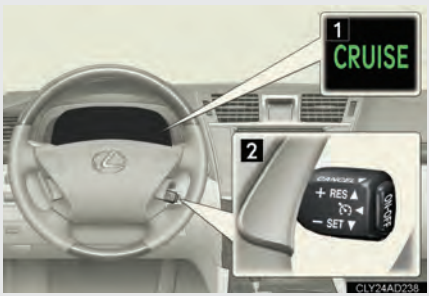
⚠ NOTICE

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the switch is pressed continually.

*: If equipped

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.



1 Indicator
2 Cruise control switch

Setting the vehicle speed



Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

*: If equipped

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases speed

2 Decreases speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

2 Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

■ **Cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in the D or range 4 or higher of S has been selected.
- Range 4 or higher has been selected by using the paddle shift. (vehicles with paddle shift switch)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

■ **Accelerating**

The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.

■ **Automatic cruise control cancellation**

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 10 mph (16 km/h) below the preset vehicle speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 25 mph (40km/h).
- VSC is activated.
- The shift lever is shifted to the M position.
- When the shift lever is in the D position and any of the ranges 1 through 3 is selected using the "-" paddle shift switch. (vehicles with paddle shift switch)

■ **If the cruise control indicator light flashes**

Press the "ON-OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON-OFF" button when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- During emergency towing

Dynamic radar cruise control*

Dynamic radar cruise control supplements conventional cruise control with a vehicle-to-vehicle distance control. In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates or decelerates in order to maintain a set following distance from vehicles ahead.



1 Display
2 Set speed
3 Indicator
4 Cruise control switch
5 Vehicle-to-vehicle distance button

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)



Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

*: If equipped



Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and push the lever down to set the speed.

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases speed

2 Decreases speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

▶ When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: By approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

▶ When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

Fine adjustment: By approximately 0.6 mph (1 km/h) each time the lever is operated

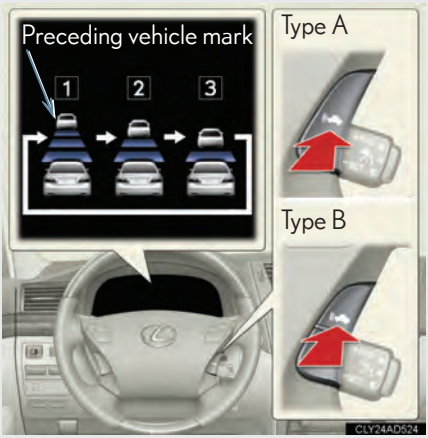
Large adjustment: By approximately 3.1 mph (5 km/h) for each 0.75 seconds the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P. 221), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 mph (1.6 km/h) each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance



Pressing the button changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

1 Long
2 Medium
3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark will also be displayed.

Canceling and resuming the speed control



1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the cruise control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

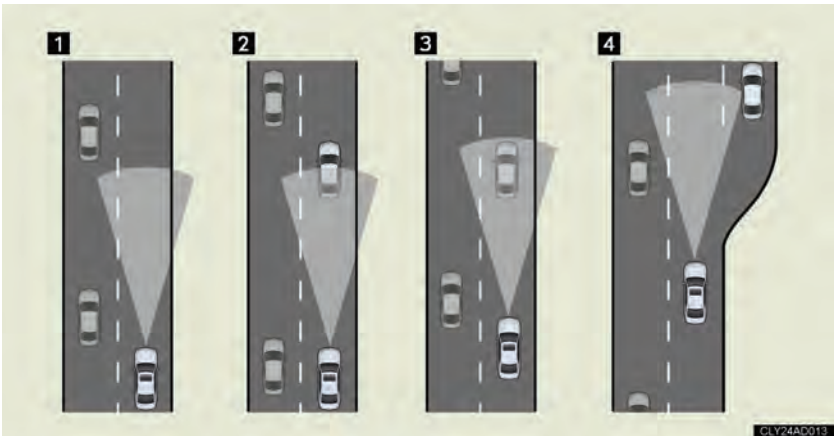
2 Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a sensor to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 400 ft. (120 m) ahead and to judge the distance between your vehicle and those the vehicle ahead of you.

Note that vehicle-to-vehicle distance will close in when traveling on long downhill slopes.



1 Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.

2 Example of deceleration cruising
When the vehicle ahead is driving slower than the set speed

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes. A warning tone warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

3 Example of follow-up cruising
When following a vehicle driving slower than the set speed

The system continues follow-up cruising while adjusting for changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver.

4 Example of acceleration
When there are no longer any vehicles ahead driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Approach warning

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Apply the brakes to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

Selecting conventional constant speed control mode

Dynamic radar cruise control can be used as conventional cruise control if you select constant speed control mode.



1 Press the "ON-OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is always reset when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

2 Switch to constant speed control mode.
(Push the lever forward and hold for approximately one second.)

Constant speed control mode indicator will come on.

Adjusting the speed setting:
→P. 216

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P. 218

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in the D or range 4 or higher of S has been selected.
- Range 4 or higher has been selected by using the paddle shift. (vehicles with paddle shift switch)
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 mph (50 km/h).

■ **Switching modes**

The mode cannot be switched to constant speed control mode if vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode has been used. The mode also cannot be switched from constant speed control to vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode. Turn the system off by pressing the "ON-OFF" button, and turn it on again.

■ **Accelerating**

The vehicle can accelerate normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the vehicle ahead.

■ **Automatically canceling vehicle-to-vehicle distance control**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated
- The sensor cannot operate correctly because it is covered in some way.
- The windshield wipers are operating at high speed.
- The driving mode select switch is set to snow mode.
- The shift lever is shifted to the M position.
- When the shift lever is in the D position and any of the ranges 1 through 3 is selected using the "-" paddle shift switch.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control driving is automatically canceled for any other reason, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Automatic cancelation of constant speed control

The cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 10 mph (16 km/h) below the set vehicle speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- VSC is activated.
- The shift lever is shifted to the M position.
- When the shift lever is in the D position and any of the ranges 1 through 3 is selected using the "-" paddle shift switch.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 160 ft. (50 m)
Medium	Approximately 130 ft. (40 m)
Short	Approximately 100 ft. (30 m)

Radar sensor and grille cover

Always keep the sensor and grille cover clean to ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control operates properly. (Some obstructions, such as snow, ice and plastic objects, cannot be detected by the obstruction sensor.)
Dynamic radar cruise control is canceled if an obstruction is detected.



1 Grille cover
2 Radar sensor

■ **Warning lights, messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control**

Warning lights, messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. (→P. 713, 723)

■ **Approach warning**

In the following instances, there is a possibility that the warnings will not occur:

- When the speed of the vehicle ahead matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the vehicle ahead is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- At the instant the accelerator is applied

■ **Certification**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: HYQDNMWR004

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control

Do not overly rely on vehicle-to-vehicle distance control.
Be aware of the set vehicle speed. If automatic deceleration/acceleration is not appropriate, adjust the vehicle speed, as well as the distance between your vehicle and vehicles ahead by applying the brakes etc.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance.
  The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is appropriate or not. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control has no capability to prevent or avoid a collision with a vehicle traveling ahead. Therefore, if there is ever any danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ To avoid inadvertent cruise control activation

Switch the cruise control off using the “ON-OFF” button when not in use.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice and snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to expressways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from functioning correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When the approach warning buzzer is heard often
- During emergency towing

■ When the radar sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

Apply the brakes as necessary when any of the following types of vehicles are in front of you.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P. 220) will not be activated, and a fatal or serious accident may result.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board etc.)
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane

⚠ CAUTION

■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control may not function correctly

Apply the brakes as necessary in the following conditions as the radar sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, and a fatal or serious accident may result:

- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the functioning of the radar sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the trunk etc.)
- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow
- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the cruise control system can function effectively.

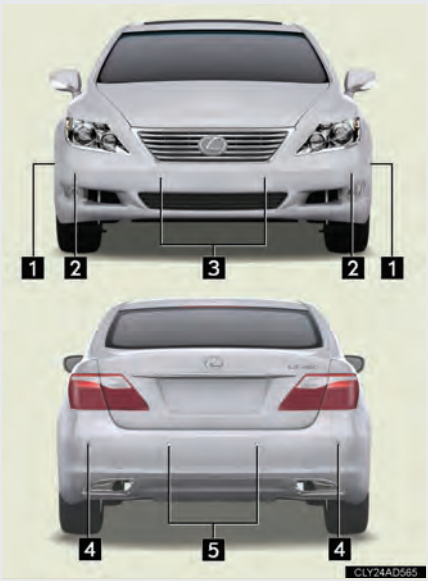
Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- Keep the sensor and front grille cover clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and front grille cover with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by a Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille cover.
- Do not replace them with non-genuine parts.

Intuitive parking assist*

The distance to obstacles measured by the sensors is communicated via the multi-information display and a buzzer when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

Types of sensors



1 Front side sensors
2 Front corner sensors
3 Front center sensors
4 Rear corner sensors
5 Rear center sensors

Intuitive parking assist switch



On/off

When on, the indicator light comes on and the buzzer sounds to inform the driver that the system is operational.

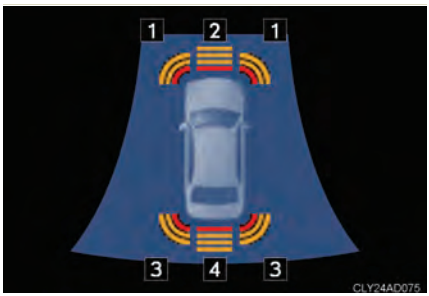
Press the button to switch the on/off mode.

*: If equipped

Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, the graphic is shown on the multi-information display and touch screen (if equipped) according to position and distance to the obstacle.

Multi-information display



1 Front side sensors and front corner sensors operation
2 Front center sensors operation
3 Rear corner sensors operation
4 Rear center sensors operation

Touch screen (if equipped)



When the vehicle is moving forward

The graphic is automatically displayed when an obstacle is detected. The screen can be set so that the graphic is not displayed. (→P. 234)



When the vehicle is moving backward

A simplified image is displayed on the right upper corner of the touch screen when an obstacle is detected.

The distance display and buzzer

When a sensor detects an obstacle, the direction of and the approximate distance to the obstacle are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

Center sensors

Level	1	2	3	4
Display example of front center sensor				
Buzzer	Slow	Medium	Fast	Continuous

Corner sensors and side sensors

Level	1	2	3	4
Display example of front right sensor	-			
Buzzer	-	Medium	Fast	Continuous

Detection level and approximate distance to an obstacle

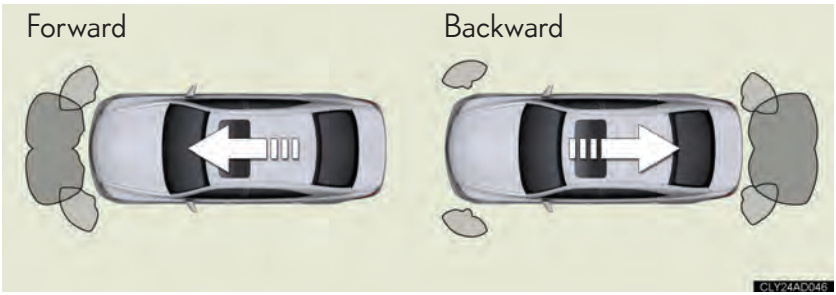
Level	1	2	3	4
Front side sensors	-	1.6 to 1.2 ft. (50 to 37.5 cm)	1.2 to 1.0 ft. (37.5 to 30 cm)	1.0 ft. (30 cm) or less
Front corner sensors	-	2.0 to 1.2 ft. (60 to 37.5 cm)	1.2 to 1.0 ft. (37.5 to 30 cm)	1.0 ft. (30 cm) or less
Front center sensors	3.3 to 1.6 ft. (100 to 50 cm)	1.6 to 1.2 ft. (50 to 37.5 cm)	1.2 to 1.0 ft. (37.5 to 30 cm)	1.0 ft. (30 cm) or less
Rear corner sensors	-	2.0 to 1.2 ft. (60 to 37.5 cm)	1.2 to 0.8 ft (37.5 to 25 cm)	0.8 ft. (25 cm) or less
Rear center sensors	4.9 to 2.0 ft. (150 to 60 cm)	2.0 to 1.5 ft. (60 to 45 cm)	1.5 to 1.1 ft. (45 to 35 cm)	1.1 ft. (35 cm) or less

Sensors that operate and detection range

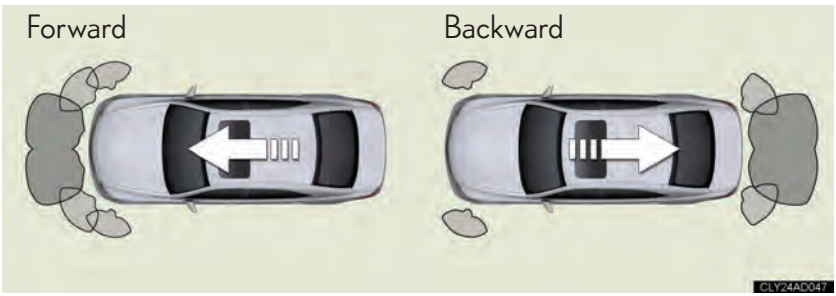
The following diagrams show the sensor detection range. Note that sensors may not be able to detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

Sensors that operate

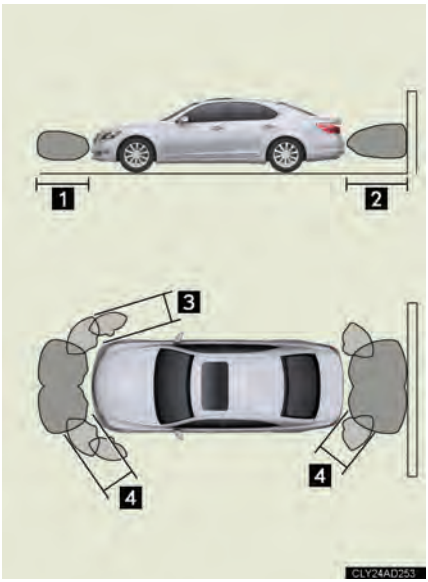
▶ With advanced parking guidance system



▶ Without advanced parking guidance system



Detection range of the sensors



1 Approx. 3.3 ft. (100 cm)
2 Approx. 4.9 ft. (150 cm)
3 Approx. 1.6 ft. (50 cm)
4 Approx. 2.0 ft. (60 cm)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors may not be able to detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

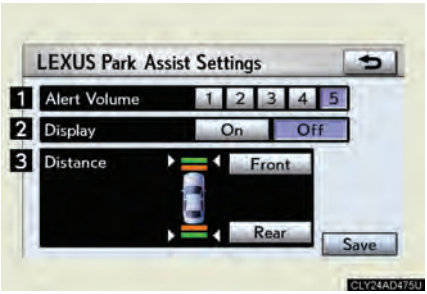
Customization of the intuitive parking assist (with touch screen)

The buzzer volume, display and buzzer timing and display of the graphic on the screen can be customized.

STEP 1 Press “SETUP” to display the “Setup” screen. (→P. 329)

STEP 2 Touch “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “LEXUS Park Assist” on the “Vehicle Settings” screen.



1 Alert volume setting
2 Display on/off
3 Alert distance setting

■ **Sensor detection information**

● Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor.
- A sensor is frozen.
- A sensor is covered in any way.
- The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass
- The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or radio antenna.
- Towing eyelets are installed.
- A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or right-angled curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension, etc.) is installed.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

● The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:

- Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
- Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
- Sharply-angled objects
- Low obstacles
- Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

■ **Touch screen display**

If an obstacle is detected while the vehicle is reversing, the warning indicator will appear in the top right of the screen even if the display setting has been set to “Off”.

■ **If the display flashes and a message is displayed**

→P. 723

■ **Certification (Canada only)**

This ISM device complies with Canadian ICES-001.

■ **Customization (without touch screen)**

Settings (e.g. buzzer volume) can be changed. (Customizable features →P. 778)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Caution when using the intuitive parking assist**

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Notes when washing the vehicle**

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.
Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

LKA (Lane-Keeping Assist)*

While driving on a freeway or motor highway that has lane markings, this system recognizes the lanes using a camera as a sensor to assist the driver with staying in the lane. The LKA system has two functions.

Lane departure warning function

If the system judges that the vehicle may deviate from its lane, it alerts the driver using rapid beeping, indications on the multi-information display, and sensory warning* via the steering wheel.

*: A slight steering torque is applied for a short period of time in the direction of the center of the lane.

Lane keeping assist function

This function will be active when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode of the cruise control (→P. 215) is set with vehicle speed above approximately 45 mph (72 km/h) while the lane departure warning function is active. When the lane keeping assist function is active, a slight steering torque will be applied, to help the driver maintain the vehicle in a central position within the lane.

Turning the LKA system on

The lane departure warning function and lane keeping assist function will be activated depending on the recognition condition of lane markings, vehicle speed and the setting of radar cruise control (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode).



Press the "LKA" switch to activate the system.

Press the switch again to turn the LKA system off.

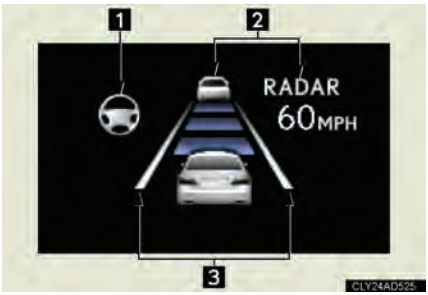
*: If equipped

Operating conditions for each function

LKA system	Cruise control (Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)	Lane departure warning function	Lane keeping assist function
		Vehicle speed is between about 30 and 125 mph (48 and 200 km/h)	Vehicle speed is between about 45 and 112 mph (72 and 180 km/h)
On	Off	Available	Not Available
	On While cruising in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode with the set vehicle speed approximately 44 mph (71 km/h) or less	Available	Not Available
	On While cruising in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode with the set vehicle speed approximately 45 mph (72 km/h) or more	Available	Available

Indications on the multi-information display

While the LKA system is on, the lane line display and steering wheel display are shown on the multi-information display to inform the driver that the LKA system is on.



1 Steering wheel display

When the steering wheel display is shown:
The lane keeping assist function is active.

2 Dynamic radar cruise control display

3 Lane line display

When outlines of the lane lines are shown:
A lane marking is not recognized by the system, or the LKA system functions are temporarily cancelled. (When the lane keeping assist function is cancelled, the signal will beep twice.)

When solid lane lines are shown:
The lane departure warning function is active.

■ **Temporary cancellation of the LKA system functions**

If any of the following occurs, the LKA system functions will be temporarily cancelled. The functions will resume after the necessary operating conditions have returned.

- The turn signal lever is operated.
- The steering wheel is turned as far as necessary to cause the vehicle to change lanes.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
  The lane keeping assist function will not resume even after the brake pedal is released because depressing the brake pedal also cancels the dynamic radar cruise control.
- The vehicle speed deviates from the operating range of the LKA system functions.
- While the lane lines cannot be recognized while driving.
- The wiper operates continuously.

■ **When the lane departure warning function is activated**

The lane departure warning function will be temporarily canceled and will not resume until a few seconds elapse after it is activated.

■ **Hands-free driving warning**

If the steering wheel is not operated for about 15 seconds on a straight road or about 5 seconds on a curve, the signal will beep twice, indications on the multi-information display will flash, and the lane keeping assist function will be temporarily cancelled. If you drive the vehicle with your hands lightly touching the steering wheel, it may also be detected as hands-free driving.

■ **When the vehicle has been parked under the scorching sun or when the temperature in the cabin is extremely low**

The LKA system functions may not be available for a while after driving of the vehicle has been started. In such cases, turn the LKA system off and turn it on again after normal temperature returns. When the temperature in the cabin decreases or increases, and the temperature around the camera sensor becomes appropriate for its operation, the functions will begin operating. (→P. 243)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Before using the LKA system

Do not rely on the LKA system to remain within a selected lane. The LKA system is not designed to enable inattentive driving. The steering wheel should be operated by the driver to maintain the vehicle in a suitable position within its lane. Always drive carefully.

■ Turn the LKA off while driving in any of the following conditions:

Do not use LKA in any of the following situations. Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- When driving with snow tires, snow chains, a spare tire, or similar equipment.
- When driving with non-standard parts or aftermarket equipment installed. (including modified tires and suspensions, etc.)
- When there are objects or structures along the roadside that might be misinterpreted as lane markers. (such as guardrails, curb, reflector posts, etc.)
- Where there are wheel ruts, icy trademarks, etc. or if snow remains on the road surface.
- When there are shadows on the road running parallel with lane markers, or if a shadow covers the lane markers.
- When there are visible lines on the pavement from road repairs, or if the remains of old lane markers are still visible on the road.
- When driving on slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow.
- When driving in a lane other than the driving or passing lanes on a freeway, highway or motorway.
- When driving on a road with lane closures due to maintenance, or when driving in a temporary lane.
- When driving on winding roads or roads that are rough or uneven.

NOTICE

■ **In the following situations, the LKA will not work, or will not perform reliably:**

- When lane markers are interrupted or are not present, such as before a tollbooth (tollgate).
- When lane markers are only on one side of the road.
- When driving on a sharp curve.
- When lanes are extremely narrow or extremely wide.
- When the vehicle leans to one side an unusual amount due to a heavy load or improper tire inflation pressure.
- When the following distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is extremely short.
- When the lane markers are broken, "Botts' dots", or "Raised pavement marker".
- When lane markers are obscured or partially obscured by sand, dirt, etc.
- When driving on a particularly bright road surface, such as concrete.
- When driving on a road surface that is bright due to reflected light.
- When driving in a location where the light level changes rapidly, such as the entrance to or exit from a tunnel.
- When sunlight or the headlights of oncoming vehicles are shining directly into the camera lens.
- When driving on roads that are branching or merging.
- When pavement lane markers are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, etc.
- When driving on a road surface that is wet due to rain, previous rainfall, standing water, etc.
- When the vehicle experiences strong up-and-down motion such as when driving on an extremely rough road or on a seam in the pavement.
- When headlight brightness is reduced due to dirt on the lenses, or when the headlights are misaligned.
- When driving with a strong crosswind.

NOTICE

Camera sensor



Observe the following to ensure that the LKA system functions correctly.

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  LKA performance may deteriorate due to the presence of raindrops, condensation, ice or snow on the windshield.
- Do not attach a sticker or other items to the windshield near the camera sensor.
- When adjusting the rear view mirror, make sure that it does not block the camera lens.
- When it is cold, using the heater with air blowing to the feet may allow the upper part of the windshield to fog up. This will have a negative effect on the images. In such a case, use the windshield defogger to provide warm, dry air to the windshield.
- Do not place anything on the dashboard.
  The camera sensor may recognize the image reflected on the windshield as lane markers by mistake.
- Do not scratch the camera lens, or let it get dirty.
- Do not change the installation position of the camera sensor or remove it. The direction of the camera sensor is precisely adjusted.
- Do not subject the camera sensor to strong impact or force, and do not disassemble the camera sensor.

Electronically modulated air suspension*

The vehicle adjusts the damping of the shock absorbers and maintains vehicle height automatically in response to driving conditions to help provide enhanced driving comfort and vehicle control.

Vehicle height adjustment

The vehicle's height is maintained at the selected level regardless of the number of occupants and luggage weight.



Turn the "HEIGHT HIGH" switch on.

The indicator light comes on.

Press the switch once more to cancel the high mode.

Damping mode selection

You can select the damping mode of the shock absorbers.



1 Sport
The indicator light comes on.
2 Normal
3 Comfort
The indicator light comes on.

Operating sound of the air suspension compressor

When the vehicle height is lowered, such as when entering or loading the vehicle, or high mode is selected, the compressor may operate and a whirring sound may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

*: If equipped

CAUTION

■ **Be sure to stop the engine in the following situations in order to stop operation of the electronically modulated air suspension:**

- The vehicle is parked on a curb.
- Any of the wheels is stuck in a ditch.
- It is necessary to jack up the vehicle.
- It is necessary to tow the vehicle with part of it lifted.

If the "ENGINE START STOP" switch remains in IGNITION ON mode, the vehicle height may change, resulting in an accidental damage.

Rear view monitor system*

The rear view monitor system assists the driver by displaying an image of the area behind the vehicle. The image is displayed in reverse on the screen. This reversed image is a similar image to the one on the inside rear view mirror.

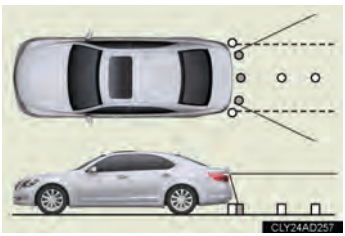


The rear view image is displayed when the shift lever is in the "R" position.

If the shift lever is shifted out of R, the screen returns to the previous one.

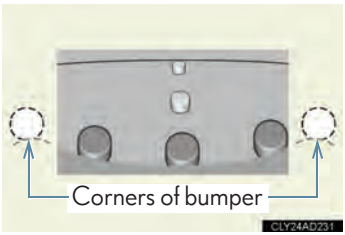
*: If equipped

Displayed area



The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.



Rear view monitor system camera



In the following cases, it may become difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly:

- The vehicle is in a dark area, such as at night.
- The temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- Water droplets are on the camera lens or humidity is high, such as when it rains.
- Foreign matter, such as snow or mud, adheres to the camera lens.
- The camera has scratches or dirt on it.
- The sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.

Smear effect



If a bright light, such as sunlight reflected off the vehicle body, is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* characteristic to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect — A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

CAUTION

When using the rear view monitor system, observe the following precautions to avoid an accident that could result in death or serious injuries:

- Never depend solely on the monitor system when reversing.
- Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
- Do not use the system if the trunk is open.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Conditions which may affect the rear view monitor system

- If the back of the vehicle has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, or mercury lights, the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.

Advanced parking guidance system*

The advanced parking guidance system supports the driver during reverse parking by displaying a rear-view image and controlling the steering wheel to help the driver reverse the vehicle into a target parking position set on the screen.

The illustrations of the display shown are examples only and may differ from actual images. When parking in a space on the opposite side to that shown in the examples, be sure to substitute left for right and vice versa when operating the steering wheel.



Advanced parking guidance system will activate when the shift lever is in "R" position.

If you move the lever out of "R" position, the advanced parking guidance system will be deactivated.

As the advanced parking guidance system only assists with parking in a set target parking position, there are times when the system will be unable to render this assistance, depending on factors such as road surface or vehicle condition, or the distance to the set target parking position.

The advanced parking guidance system is not an automatic parking system. It is a system to assist back up parking.

*: If equipped

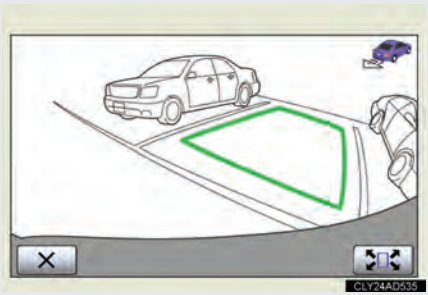
About the screen



1 Parking assist mode button
Touching this button turns parking assist mode on. (→P. 254)

2 Parallel parking assist mode button
Touching this button turns parallel parking assist mode on. (→P. 263)

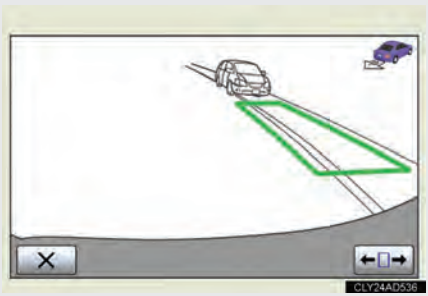
Perpendicular parking



● Parking assist mode (→P. 254)

This mode assists the driver during perpendicular parking by automatically controlling the steering wheel to move the vehicle into the target position set on the screen.

Parallel parking

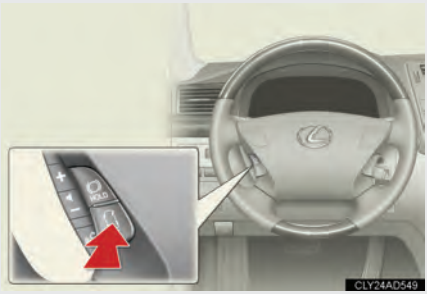


● Parallel parking assist mode (→P. 263)

This mode assists the driver during parallel parking by automatically controlling the steering wheel to move the vehicle into the target position set on the screen.

APGS pre-support switch

Use this switch to turn on/off the pre-support function and to switch assist mode between parallel parking assist mode and perpendicular parking assist mode.

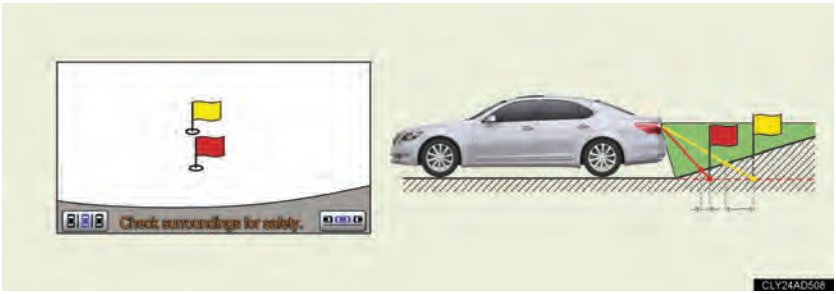


Pressing the pre-support switch while assist mode is on, the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the vehicle is traveling below 9 mph (15 km/h) with the shift position in any position other than "P" or "R", will cause the screen to change in the following order:

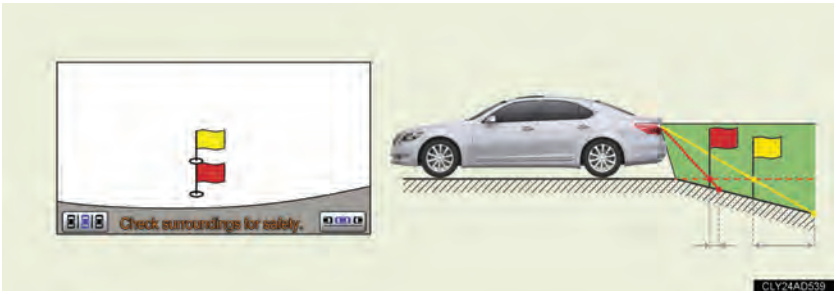
Pre-support function OFF → Parallel parking assist mode pre-support screen → Perpendicular parking assist mode pre-support screen → Pre-support function OFF

If the pre-support function cannot be used, two beeps will sound (the beeps will not sound if the shift lever is in the "R" position).

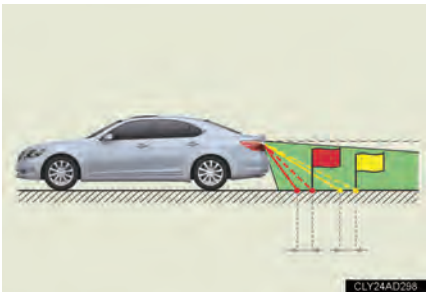
Driving precautions



When the grade behind the vehicle slopes up sharply, objects appear to be farther away than they actually are.



When the grade behind the vehicle slopes down sharply, objects appear to be closer than they actually are.



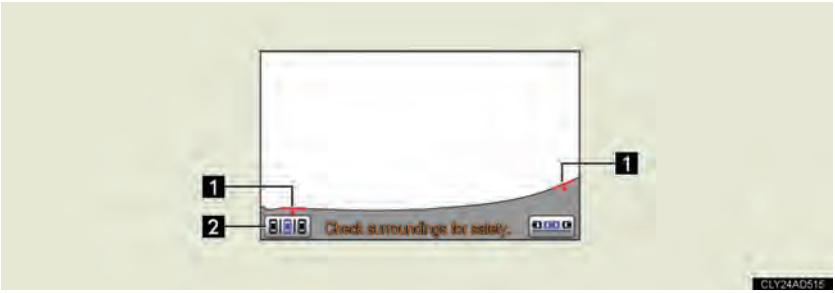
When any part of the vehicle sags due to the number of passengers or the distribution of the load, there is a margin of error between the set target parking position on the screen, and the actual distance/course on the road.

Parking assist mode (Perpendicular parking)

Screen description

Parking assist mode assists the driver with perpendicular parking by automatically controlling the steering wheel when backing up, in order to park in the target position set on the screen.

If a message is displayed while maneuvering (→P. 272)



1 Camera orientation confirmation lines

If the edge of the bumper displayed on the screen does not match the camera orientation confirmation lines, the camera may not be aligned correctly. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

2 Parking assist mode button

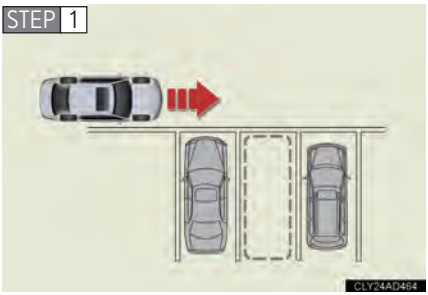
Parking operation

● Pre-support function

Pre-support is useful for parking perpendicular to another vehicle. This function detects the empty parking space beyond the parked vehicle and then guides the driver to the correct starting position for reversing. Chimes are used to inform the driver when it is time to turn the steering wheel and when it is time to start reversing.

● Before backing up

▶ When the pre-support function is in use



With the vehicle stopped or driving at 9 mph (15 km/h) or less, push the pre-support switch twice when your vehicle is positioned slightly before the target parking space. (→P. 252) Check that the screen changes.

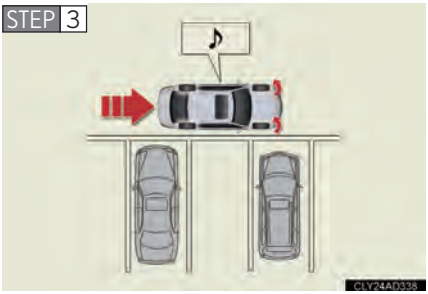


Move your vehicle slowly to a position perpendicular to and as close as possible to the target parking space.

Drive slowly enough to be able to turn the steering wheel immediately after the chime sounds.

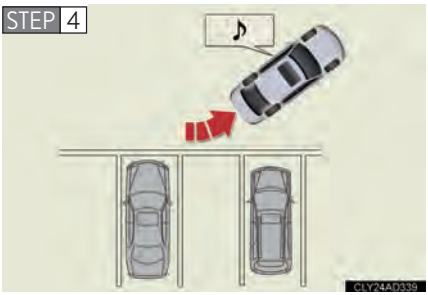
To discontinue the guidance, push the pre-support switch once to turn the pre-support function off. (→P. 252)

STEP 3



A chime will sound once when the center of the target parking space is visible right beside you. After this chime has sounded, turn the steering wheel about half a turn or more while driving forward.

STEP 4



When the chime sounds twice, stop your vehicle and straighten the steering wheel.

To enter the target parking space more accurately, position your vehicle with a larger heading angle.

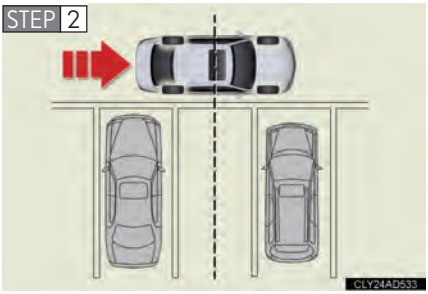
▶ When the pre-support function is not in use

STEP 1



Move your vehicle slowly to a position perpendicular to the parking space, and as close as possible to the parking space.

Positioning the vehicle perpendicular to the parking space allows the angle of the parking position to be identified easily.



Move your vehicle to a position where you can see the center of the parking space right besides you.

To facilitate the setting of the target parking position, the front side sensors detect the vehicles parked at the left and right of the parking space and identify the target parking position.

It is possible to identify the target parking position even if there is only a vehicle parked on one side of the parking space.

If no vehicle or small vehicles are parked on both sides of the desired parking space, stop with the steering wheel straight.

- By stopping the vehicle here, you can mostly identify the parking location, making it easier to set the target parking position.
- Make sure the steering wheel is straight when you stop. If not, the parking location cannot be identified.
- If you do not stop in front of the parking space, the system will refer to the angle of the vehicle relative to the target parking space, and display the target parking position (green or red frame) in the position used last time the parking assist mode was activated.



Position your vehicle so that you can enter the parking space, then stop the vehicle with the steering wheel straight.

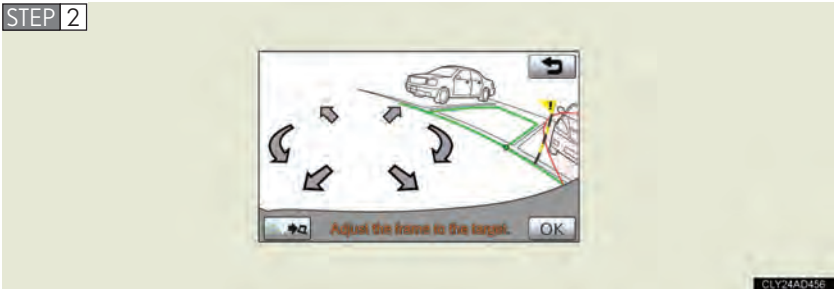
To enter the target parking space more accurately, position your vehicle with a larger heading angle.

● While backing up

STEP 1 Place the shift lever in "R" position.

Touch on the screen (only when the pre-support function is not in use).

STEP 2



Use the arrow to align the green frame with the desired parking space, then touch "OK".

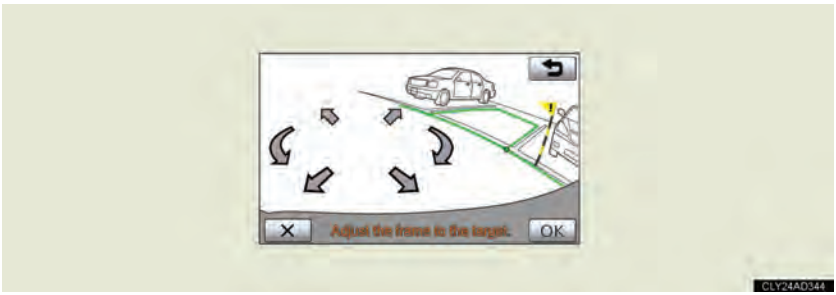
- You can also move the green frame by touching the screen (area other than the arrow).
- There are tricks to align the green frame. (→P. 260)
- Areas in which you are unable to park are displayed in red.
- If the frame is displayed in red, you cannot use the parking assist mode to park in that location. (→P. 277)
- When the green frame is displayed, if you begin backing up without touching "OK", the message "Parking position has not been set." appears. If you continue to back up, you will hear a warning tone and the system will be disabled.
- If the frame is red, there will be no guidance even if you begin backing up.
- If the orientation of the frame is opposite to that of the target parking space, touch .
- There may be times when, due to image distortion, the green frame does not match the parking space lines on the road surface. In this case, attempt an approximate match in an area where the warning flag does not overlap with any parked vehicles or obstacles.
- You may adjust the target parking position even after starting the parking assist mode.

STEP 3



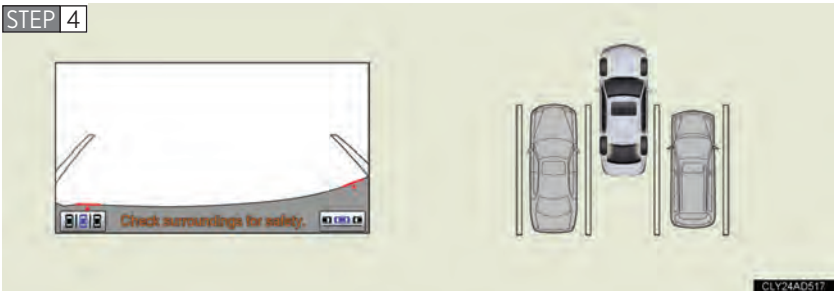
Position yourself as you would when backing up normally, and rest your hands on the steering wheel without applying any pressure. Check your surroundings and behind the vehicle for safety, and slowly back up, using the brake pedal to control the vehicle's speed.

If you touch "X", assistance is canceled.



You can change the target parking position by touching . If you are backing up, or have already moved close to the target parking position, will turn gray, and you will be unable to change the target.

Touch the arrows to move the target parking position, and then touch "OK".



Once the vehicle is mostly within the target parking position, voice guidance will inform you to finish the assist mode.

For safety, voice guidance is given slightly before the target parking position. Furthermore, at that point system control will finish, so grip the steering wheel firmly, and finish parking in the desired position, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.

Check in front and behind the vehicle visually and check with the mirrors while backing up.

Tips for setting the target parking position

Useful information for setting the target parking position (green frame)

● The display position of the green frame

The system decides the initial positioning of the green frame by the position of the parking space detected by the front side sensors or the position of the vehicle when it stops, and by detecting the white lines of the parking space in the camera image to identify the parking space location.

The front side sensors identify the parking space location and the white lines near that location are detected.

The front side sensors cannot identify the parking space location, or the parking space location maybe misaligned in the following situations.

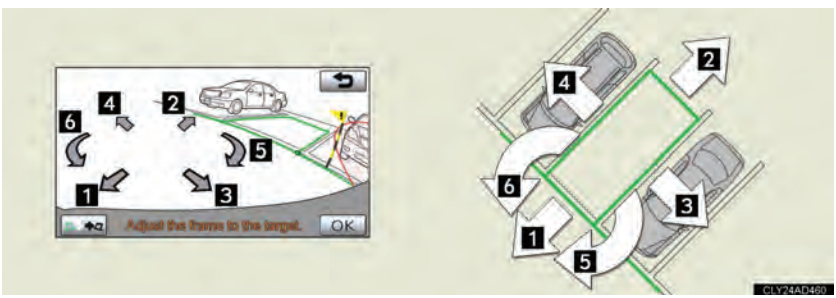
- A vehicle is parked at the back of the parking space or the sensors cannot detect a parked vehicle due to vehicle shape etc.
- The sensors cannot detect a pole or wall beside the parking space.
- The sensors detect a pedestrian or object near the parking space.

If the point at which you stop is correctly identified, the green frame will display the parking space accurately. If the white lines of the parking space have not been correctly identified, the green frame will not match the parking space even if you stop in the correct location. In this case, adjust the point at which you stop as needed.

● Aligning the green frame

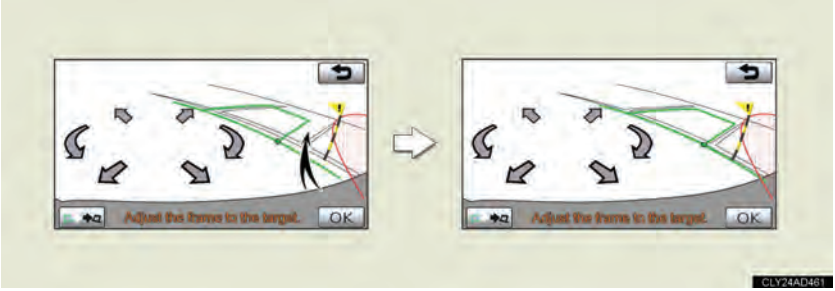
There are two ways to align the green frame with the parking space, either using the arrows on the screen, or by touching the screen at points other than the arrows.

▶ Using the arrows on the screen:



By touching the arrows displayed on the screen, you can move the green frame.

▶ Directly touching the target point:



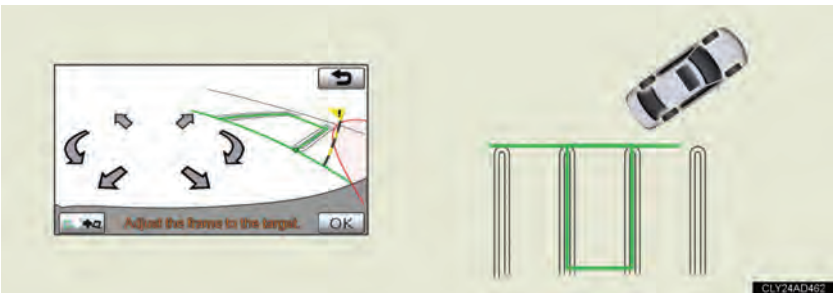
Touch the front edge of the place you wish to move.

By touching the point you wish to move the frame to, you can move the green frame.

If you touch the following areas, the green frame will not move:

- The area surrounding the arrows.
- The area near the lower button on the screen.
- Areas too far away to park in the range of 31.2 ft. (9.5 m) or more behind, and/or either left or right from the current position.

● If the parking space and the green frame do not match



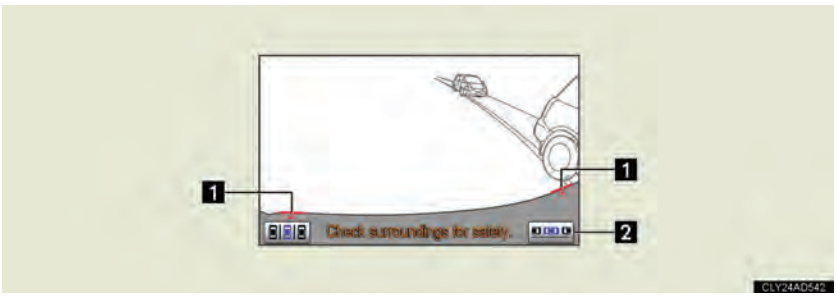
If the lines of the parking space are wider than the green frame, position the frame so that the difference between the frame and the parking space lines is equal on both sides.

Parallel parking assist mode

Screen description

Parallel parking assist mode assists the driver with parallel parking by automatically controlling the steering wheel when backing up, in order to park in the target position set on the screen.

If a message is displayed while maneuvering (→P. 272)



1 Camera orientation confirmation lines

If the edge of the bumper displayed on the screen does not match the camera orientation confirmation lines, the camera may not be aligned correctly. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

2 Parallel parking assist mode button

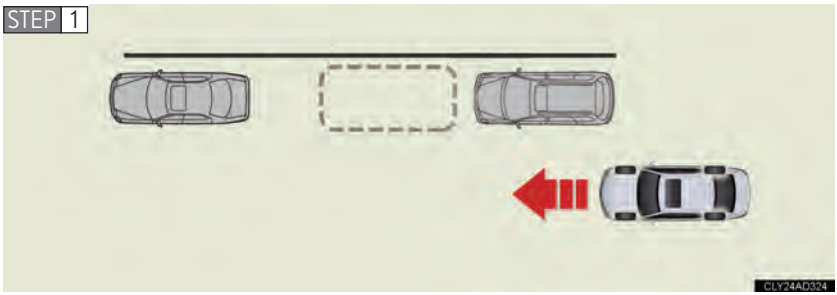
Parking operation

● Pre-support function

Pre-support is useful for parking between two vehicles that are parked along the shoulder of the road. This function detects the empty parking space between the parked vehicles and then guides the driver to the correct starting position for reversing. Chimes are used to inform the driver when it is time to start reversing.

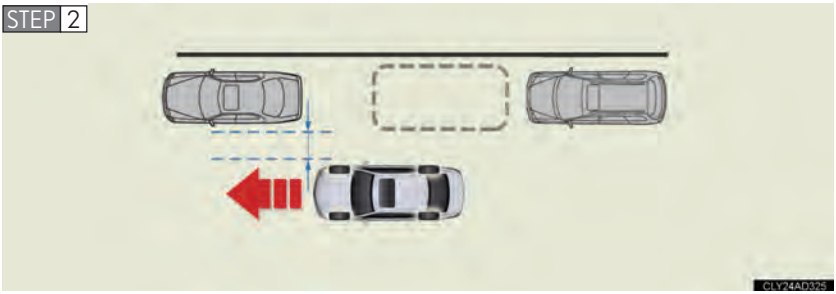
● Before backing up

▶ When the pre-support function is in use



With the vehicle stopped or driving at 9 mph (15 km/h) or less, push the pre-support switch once when your vehicle is positioned slightly before the target parking space. (→P. 252) Check that the screen changes.

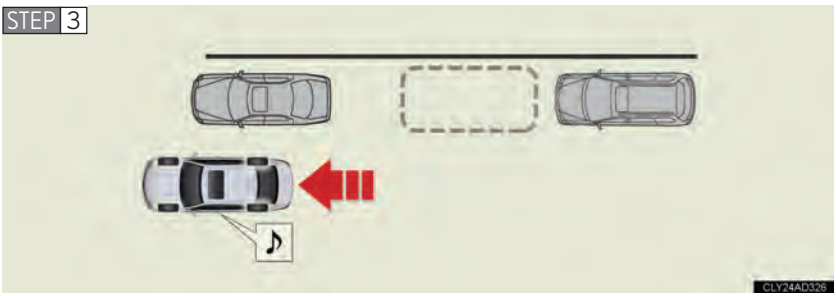
STEP 2



Move your vehicle slowly alongside the vehicle parked in front of the target parking space. Your vehicle should move parallel to the road or shoulder and be approximately 3 ft. (1 m) away from the side of the parked vehicle.

To discontinue the guidance, push the pre-support switch twice to turn the pre-support function off. (→P. 252)

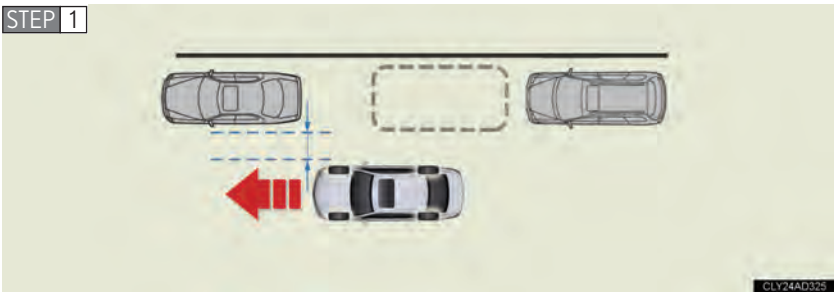
STEP 3



A chime will sound twice when the front edge of the vehicle parked in front of the target parking space is visible right beside you. When this chime sounds twice, stop your vehicle.

▶ When the pre-support function is not in use

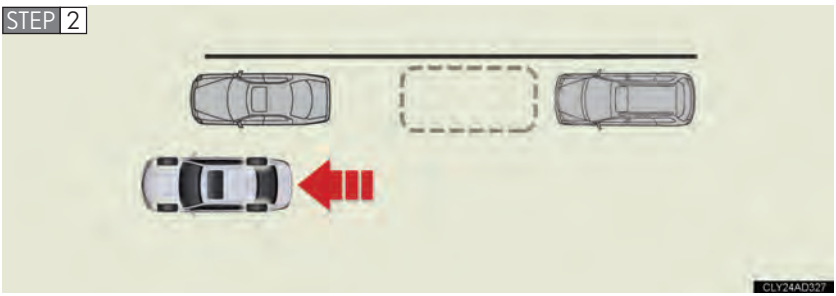
STEP 1



Move your vehicle slowly to a position parallel to the road or shoulder approximately 3 ft. (1 m) away from parked vehicles.

To facilitate the setting of the target parking position, the front side sensors detect the vehicles parked in front of and behind the parking space and identify the target parking position.

STEP 2



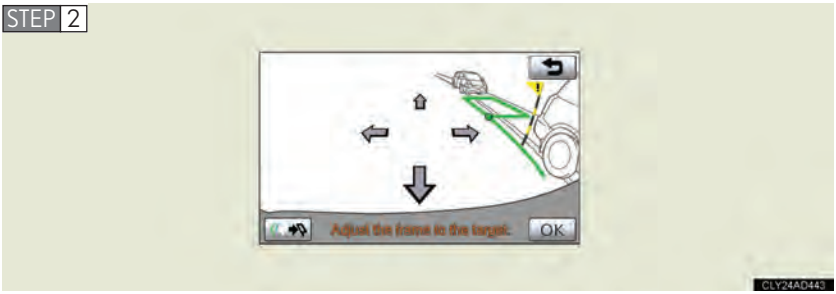
Stop your vehicle in a position where you can see the front edge of the leading parked vehicle right beside you, with the steering wheel straight.

If there is no leading parked vehicle, the system will display the target parking position (green or red frame) in the position used last time the parallel parking assist mode was activated.

● While backing up

STEP 1 Place the shift lever in the "R" position.
Touch on the screen (only when the pre-support function is not in use).

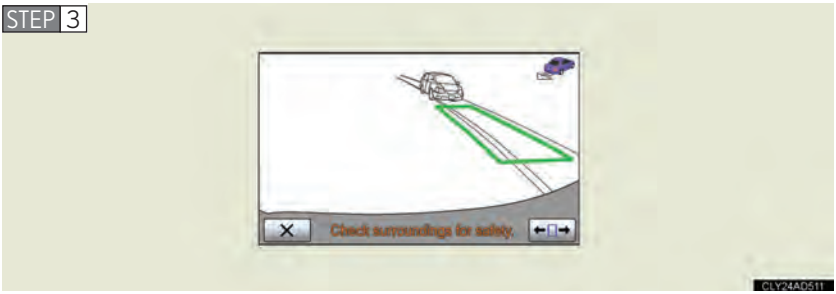
STEP 2



Use the arrow to align the green frame with your target parking space, and touch "OK".

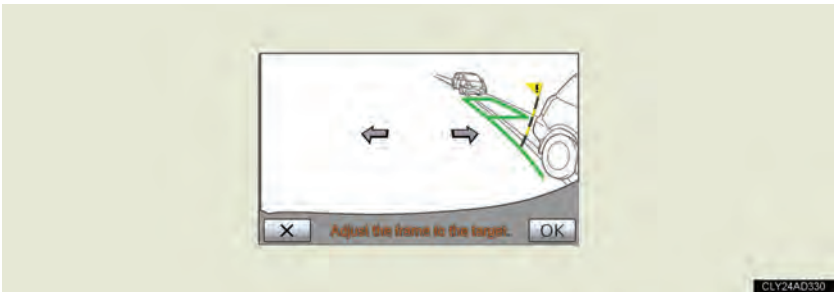
- You can also move the green frame by touching the screen (area other than the arrows).
- There are tricks to align the green frame. (→P. 269)
- If the frame is displayed in red, you cannot use the parallel parking assist mode to park in that location. (→P. 277)
- When the green frame is displayed, if you begin backing up without touching "OK", the message "Parking position has not been set." appears. If you continue to back up, you will hear a warning tone and the system will be disabled.
- If the frame is red, there will be no guidance even if you begin backing up.
- If the orientation of the frame is opposite to that of the target parking space, touch .
- There may be times when, due to image distortion, the green frame does not match the parking space lines on the road surface. In this case, use the warning flag and extended green line to set the target parking position.
- You may adjust the target parking position even after starting the parallel parking assist mode.

STEP 3



Position yourself as you would when backing up normally, and rest your hands on the steering wheel without applying any pressure. Check your surroundings and behind the vehicle for safety, and slowly back up, using the brake pedal to control the vehicle's speed.

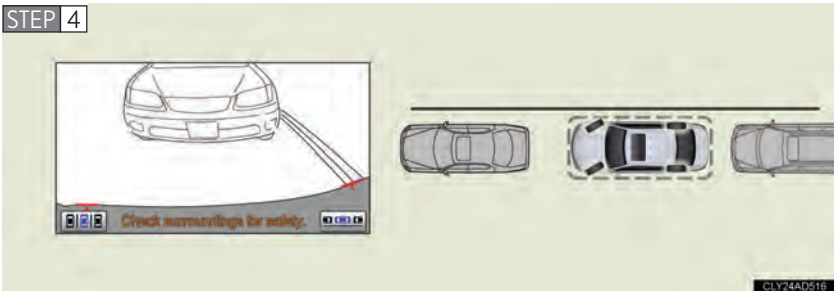
If you touch “X”, assistance is canceled.



You can change the target parking position by touching ←□→. If you are backing up, or have already moved close to the target parking position, ←□→ will turn gray, and you will be unable to change the target.

Touch the arrows to move the target parking position, and then touch “OK”.

You can only move the target parking position left or right, and the warning flag will not move even if you adjust the target parking position.



Once the vehicle is mostly within the target parking position, voice guidance will inform you to finish the assist mode.

For safety, voice guidance is given slightly before the target parking position. Furthermore, at that point system control will finish, so grip the steering wheel firmly, and finish parking in the desired position, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.

Check in front and behind the vehicle visually and check with the mirrors while backing up.

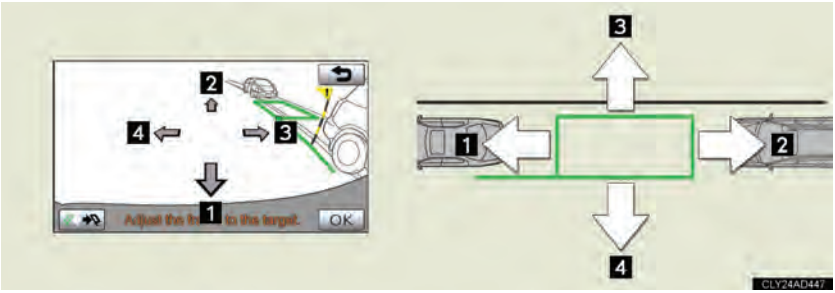
Tips for setting the target parking position

Useful information for setting the target parking position (green frame)

● Aligning the green frame

There are two ways to align the green frame with the parking space, either using the arrows on the screen, or by touching the screen at points other than the arrows.

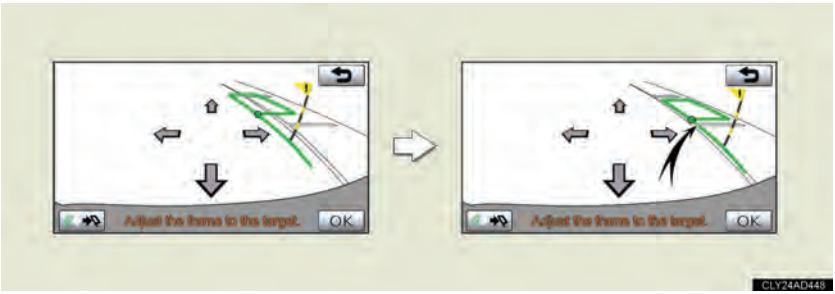
▶ Using the arrows on the screen:



By touching the arrows displayed on the screen, you can move the green frame.

Adjusting the left-right alignment first will make subsequent alignment easier.

▶ Directly touching the target point:



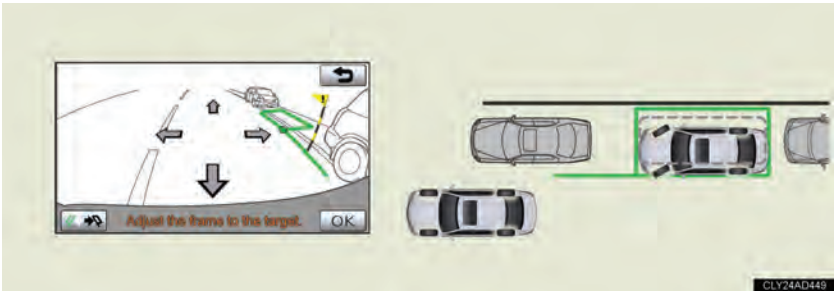
By touching the point you wish to move the frame to, you can move the green frame.

Touch the front edge of the place you wish to move.

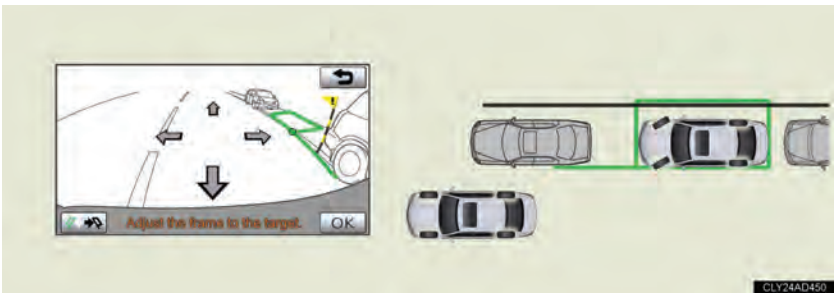
If you touch the following areas, the green frame will not move:

- The area surrounding the arrows.
- The area near the lower button on the screen.
- Areas too far away to park in the range of 34.4 ft. (10.5 m) or more behind the current position, and/or 16.4 ft. (5.0 m) or more either left or right from the current position.

● If there is a slope in the road



The assisted parking position will move left or right of the set target parking position.



In this case, if you align the warning flag with the rear of the forward parked vehicle, and the extended green line with the lower edge of the parked vehicle's rear wheel when setting the target parking position, the left side of your vehicle will be roughly in line with the left side of the front parked vehicle once assisted parking is complete. If you are parallel parking on the opposite side of the road, left and right will be reversed.

What to do when this sort of message is displayed

Message	Cause	What to do
! Parking position cannot be set.	Not in an area where system use is possible.	Change the vehicle's position, referring to the help function.
! Check APGS. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	There is a malfunction in the system.	Have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.
! Use on flat surface.	• The vehicle has rolled forward on a sloped road. • The vehicle does not move even if you take your foot off the brake pedal. • You have depressed the accelerator pedal during the assist mode.	Do not attempt to use the system in those sorts of conditions. Use the system for flat parking spaces.
! System cannot guide under current conditions.	If the message is displayed only when the system is operating, it is likely that the tires are worn, or tire inflation pressure is low.	Check tires for wear and pressure.
	If the message is displayed constantly, there is most likely a malfunction.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF, then to IGNITION ON mode. If the message is still displayed, have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.
	The vehicle has skidded or the tires have been locked.	Do not attempt to use the system on a slippery road such as snowy road.

Message	Cause	What to do
! APGS not available now.	The system has temporarily overheated.	Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to OFF, then to IGNITION ON mode. Wait a few minutes before use.
	The engine speed is 1000 rpm or above.	Do not use the system when the engine speed is 1000 rpm or above.
	There is a malfunction in the voice guidance system.	Have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.
	The engine has not been started.	Start the engine.
! Release parking brake.	The parking brake has been applied.	Release the parking brake.
! Too much force applied to the steering wheel.	You are exerting too much pressure on the steering wheel.	Loosen your grip on the steering wheel.
Steering position is not straight. Turn the steering wheel to LEFT (or RIGHT).	The steering wheel and tires are not straight.	Turn the steering wheel until tires are straight.

Message	Cause	What to do
Steer to left (or right) until the frame becomes green.	It is possible to begin to park if you turn the steering wheel in the direction indicated.	Turn the steering wheel in the direction indicated until the frame turns green (the message "Too much force applied to the steering wheel." is displayed). Turn the wheel slightly more than necessary to overcome tire resistance. Once you have turned the steering wheel, you can no longer change the target parking position. Be sure to align the frame before turning the steering wheel.
! Parking position has not been set.	You have begun to back up without touching "OK".	Stop the vehicle and touch "OK".
! Speed is too fast.	The speed at which you are backing up is too fast.	Using the brake pedal, back up at a speed that does not cause the warning chime to sound. The system will be disabled if you back up too quickly.
! Guidance canceled by user operation.	You have turned the steering wheel during the assist mode.	The system has been disabled. You will need to restart from the beginning.
! Accelerator pedal has been depressed.	You have depressed the accelerator pedal when setting the target parking position.	Do not depress the accelerator pedal.

Message	Cause	What to do
! Guidance unavailable.	Some sort of malfunction has occurred within the system.	Have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.
! System not ready.	-	Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.
! Depress the brake pedal.	"OK" is touched while the brake hold system is on.	Depress the brake pedal and touch "OK".
! Clean Park Sonar.	The sensors may be affected by extreme cold or covered by foreign matter.	Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. Wash with a mild cleanser and rinse if necessary. If the message is still displayed, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

Message and voice guidance

In the parking assist function, voice guidance accompanies the following messages displayed during parking position setting and steering wheel control. (Voice guidance may not be given depending on the reason the message was displayed.)

Message	Voice Guidance (Warning tone)	
	During setting	During steering wheel control
! Check APGS. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	(One chime)	(Two beeps) The guidance has been canceled.
! System cannot assist under current conditions.	-	(Two beeps) The guidance has been canceled.
! APGS not available now.	(One chime)	(Two beeps) The guidance has been canceled.
! Release parking brake.	(One chime)	(Two beeps) The guidance has been canceled.
! Parking position has not been set.	(One chime)	-
! Speed is too fast.	-	(Several beeps and then two beeps) The guidance has been canceled.
! Guidance canceled by user operation.	-	(Two beeps) The guidance has been canceled.

For the adjustment of the volume

- ▶ Without navigation system: →P. 333
- ▶ With navigation system: Refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.

When a red frame is displayed in the parking assist function

If the frame turns red and the message "Adjust the frame to the target." is displayed while setting the target parking position, you cannot use the parking assist function.

In this situation, move the target parking position, or move the position of the vehicle.

The frame may be displayed in red, depending on the location and angle of the vehicle when "R" position is selected.

Furthermore, even if the frame is displayed in green, if you move the frame to a location unsuitable for parking using the parking assist function, the frame will change to red.

● Help function

If you touch "OK", the reason the frame is displayed in red will be displayed. Move the vehicle appropriately, referring to the screen.

STEP 1 Touch "OK".

STEP 2 Move the vehicle in accordance with the message displayed.

See the following items for information on the messages displayed.If you move the frame to a position acceptable to the assist mode, a chime will sound.

STEP 3 If you have moved the vehicle forwards, place the shift lever in "R" position.

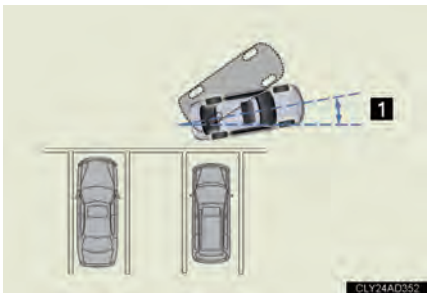
STEP 4 Check that the frame is green, and if that position is acceptable, touch "OK".

● Displayed message and vehicle position for parking assist mode



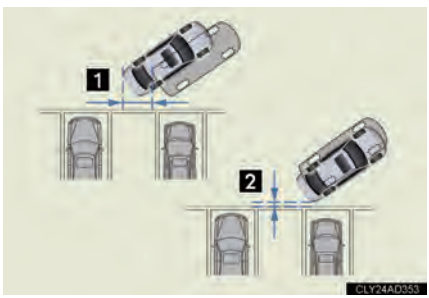
1 Too far

If the vehicle is too far from the parking space, the message "Start from a position nearer to the target parking area." will be displayed.



1 Angle too small

If the orientation of the vehicle is incorrect, the message "Start with larger vehicle heading angle." will be displayed.

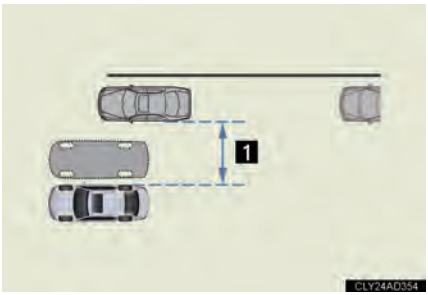


1 Near the front of the parking space

2 Too close

If the vehicle is near the front of the parking space, or too close, the message "Start from a position farther from the target parking area." will be displayed.

● Displayed message and vehicle position for parallel parking assist mode



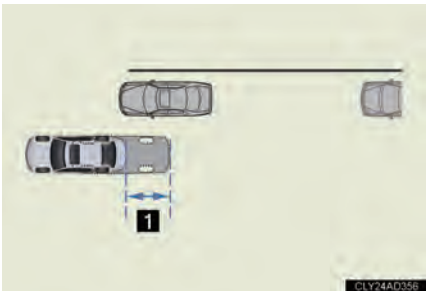
1 Too far

If the vehicle is too far from other parked vehicles, the message "Start from a position nearer to adjacent vehicle." will be displayed.



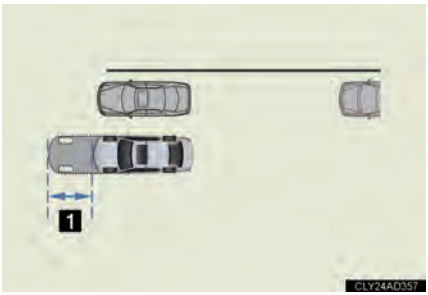
1 Too close

If the vehicle is too close to other parked vehicles, the message "Start from a position farther from adjacent vehicle." will be displayed.



1 Too far forward

If the vehicle is too far forward, the message "Start after moving slightly backward." will be displayed.



1 Too far back

If the vehicle is too far back, the message "Start after moving slightly forward." will be displayed.

Initializing the system



Make sure to initialize the system in the following situations.

- The battery is disconnected and reconnected.
- The system initialization in progress screen is displayed when the shift lever is moved to "R" position (due to low battery etc.).

The help screen appears when "?" is touched. Make a correction using the following method in accordance with the display.

When the vehicle is stopped, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left, then all the way to the right. (It does not matter in which direction — right or left — you turn first.)

When the screen returns to the original display, correction is complete.

If the above screen remains, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

Disabling the system

Even if the shift lever is in "R" position, if you push any of the switches around the screen, such as "SETUP" or "INFO/PHONE", the screen will switch to that mode.

When in the parking assist mode or parallel parking assist mode, in the following case the voice guidance will say "The guidance has been canceled.", a message will be displayed, and the system will be disabled. (→P. 272)

After the following operations:

- Moving the steering wheel
- Using the accelerator
- Moving the shift lever out of "R" position
- Applying the parking brake
- Switching the screen display

In the following situations:

- If the vehicle slips forward or stops after taking your foot off the brake pedal
- If the backing speed is too fast
- If normal assistance cannot be rendered due to worn tires or low tire inflation pressure
- If the target parking position has not been confirmed on the target parking position setting screen before backing up
- Any warnings displayed on the screen are not acknowledged before backing up
- If there is a system malfunction
- If the system temperature protection function operates
- If a hands-free phone call is received

If the system is disabled while backing up, grip the steering wheel firmly and depress the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a halt. The system has been completely disabled, so you may either start again from the beginning, or if you wish to finish parking manually, be sure to operate the steering wheel as you would normally.

■ **Notes for the pre-support function**

- If the detected parking space is too small, guidance will not start.
- To allow the pre-support system to activate accurately, move the vehicle as slowly as possible (at a speed that will allow the vehicle to stopped suddenly).
- The function cannot be used if the shift position is in "P" or "R" position, or if the vehicle speed is greater than 9 mph (15 km/h).
- In order to identify parking spaces and detect parked vehicles using the sensors on both sides of the front bumper, guidance cannot be given if a space is not detected.
- Parking space guidance and searching continues until the vehicle speed is greater than 9 mph (15 km/h) or until the function is turned off by pushing the pre-support switch.
- Perpendicular parking: The pre-support function can only be used for perpendicular parking when a vehicle is parked beside the target parking space on the side closest to your vehicle as it approaches.
  Parallel parking: The pre-support function can only be used for parallel parking when vehicles are parked both in front of and behind the target parking space.

■ **Detecting white lines in parking assist mode (perpendicular parking)**

If there are no vehicles parked on either side of the target parking space when your vehicle stops, an approximate parking space location is identified, and the white lines in that location are detected. For this reason, stopping in front of the parking space will make the detection of target parking space's white lines easier.

Successful detection of the parking space's white lines may not be possible, depending on the shape of the line.

In the following circumstances, detection of the parking space lines on the road surface may not be possible:

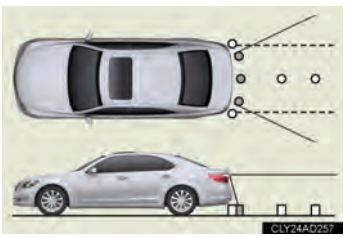
- The lines are faded or dirty, making them unclear.
- The road surface is of a light color which does not contrast well with the white lines.
- The parking space lines are a color other than white (yellow etc.).
- The area is dark, for example at night or in a covered parking lot.

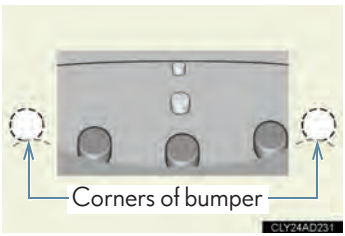
- During or after rain, when the road surface is wet and reflects light, or puddles have formed.
- The sun is shining directly on the camera, for example early morning or late afternoon.
- The parking space is covered with snow or de-icing agent.
- There are markings or maintenance marks on the road surface.
- The color or brightness of the road surface is not uniform.
- Hot or cold water has splashed on the camera, and the lens is fogged.
- There are dirt or water droplets on the lens.

Intuitive parking assist

When the Intuitive parking assist are turned on and an obstacle is detected in front of or behind your vehicle, a warning appears on the top right of the screen. (→P. 228)

Area displayed on screen





The area covered by the camera is limited. Objects which are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.

Advanced parking guidance system camera



In the following cases, it may become difficult to see the images on the screen, even when the system is functioning correctly:

- The vehicle is in a dark area, such as at night.
- The temperature near the lens is extremely high or low.
- Water droplets are on the camera lens or humidity is high, such as when it rains.
- Foreign matter, such as snow or mud, adheres to the camera lens.
- The camera has scratches or dirt on it.
- The sun or headlights are shining directly into the camera lens.



If a bright light, such as sunlight reflected off the vehicle body, is picked up by the camera, a smear effect* characteristic to the camera may occur.

*: Smear effect — A phenomenon that occurs when a bright light is picked up by the camera; when transmitted by the camera, the light source appears to have a vertical streak above and below it.

If you install the antenna of a wireless device close to the camera, the screen image may be affected by the electromagnetic waves, and the system may not function correctly. Install an antenna away from the camera.

The method for adjusting the picture quality of the advanced parking guidance system is the same as that for the screen.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When using the system

- Be sure to check that the vehicle can actually park in the target space before beginning operation.
- Depending on the circumstances of the vehicle (number of passengers, amount of luggage, etc.), the position of the green frame displayed on the screen may change. Be sure to check visually behind and all around the vehicle before proceeding.
- Never depend on the system entirely when backing up. Always make sure your intended path is clear.
  Use caution, just as you would when backing up any vehicle.
- When using the parking assist mode and parallel parking assist mode
  - When backing up, be sure to check your surroundings and behind the vehicle for safety, and back up slowly, depressing the brake pedal to control vehicle speed.
  - If you seem likely to hit nearby vehicles, obstacles or people, depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, and then disable the system by touching "X" on the screen.
  - If there is a problem, stop the vehicle and disable the system by touching "X" on the screen.
  - Keep clothing such as neckties, scarves and long sleeves away from the steering wheel, as they may become entangled. Also, keep children away from the steering wheel.
  - If you have long fingernails, be careful not to injure yourself when the steering wheel moves.

⚠ CAUTION

How to use the camera

- Never back up while looking only at the screen. The image on the screen is different from actual conditions. Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces will differ from actual distances. If you back up while looking only at the screen, you may hit a vehicle, a person or an object. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually and with mirrors before proceeding.
- If the back of the vehicle is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change. Be sure to have the camera's position and mounting angle checked by your Lexus dealer.
- If the camera is subjected to a collision, or the camera orientation confirmation lines are not in line with the bumper, it is likely that the camera position or angle of installation has become crooked. Contact your Lexus dealer.
- Use your own eyes to confirm the vehicle's surroundings, as the displayed image may become faint or dark, and moving images will be distorted, or not entirely visible when the outside temperature is low. When backing up, be sure to check behind and all around the vehicle visually and with mirror before proceeding.
- Do not use the system when the trunk is not completely closed.
- If the image may be hard to see due to dirt, direct sunlight, shadow or snow on the camera lens.
- If the camera lens becomes dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. If water droplets, snow, or mud adhere to the lens, rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If the lens is extremely dirty, wash it with a mild cleanser and rinse.
- If you scrape the camera cover, or scrub it with a hard brush or an abrasive agent, you may scratch the cover, leading to poor picture quality.
- Do not allow organic solvent, car wax, window cleaner or glass coat to adhere to the camera. If this happens, wipe it off as soon as possible.
- As the camera has a water proof construction, do not detach, disassemble or modify it. This may cause incorrect operation.

⚠ CAUTION

- If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.
- When the camera is used under fluorescent lights, sodium lights, or mercury lights, the lights and the illuminated areas may appear to flicker.
- When washing the vehicle, do not apply intensive bursts of water to the camera or camera area. Doing so may result in the camera malfunctioning.

■ Conditions which may affect the sensor

- Do not attach any accessories within the detection range of the sensors.
- A sensor may not operate properly in the following situations:
  - There is ice, snow or mud on the sensor. (When it is removed, the normal operation will return.)
  - The sensor is frozen. (When the sensor warms up, it will return to normal.) At low temperatures in particular, sensors that are frozen may not detect a parked vehicle.
  - When the vehicle is tilted.
  - In extreme hot or cold weather.
  - When driving on bumpy roads, slopes, gravelled roads or grass.
  - Devices issuing ultrasonic waves are operated around your vehicle, such as a horn from another vehicle, motorcycle engine, air braking sound from heavy-duty vehicles.
  - When rain or water is splashed over the vehicle.
  - When a radio antenna or fender pole is mounted on your vehicle.
  - The sensor approaches too close to a parked vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Conditions which may affect the system

- If the temperature changes rapidly, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, the system may not operate normally.
- Do not use the system in the following conditions:
  - Outside of parking areas
  - In unprepared parking area such as gravel or sand
  - On slippery or icy roads, or in snow
  - When using tire chains or emergency tires.
  - On roads that are not flat or straight, such as curves or slopes.
  - If the asphalt is melted due to harsh sunlight
  - If there are a large number of vehicles or pedestrians passing
  - In areas unsuitable for parking (overly small parking space, cliff etc.)
- Tire conditions
  - The tires are extremely worn, or the tire inflation pressure is low
  - Tires have received a strong impact, such as bumping against a curb, resulting in improper wheel alignment
  - Do not use tires other than those installed by the manufacturer, as the system may not function correctly. Furthermore, if you change the tires, there may be errors in the positions of the lines and frames displayed on the screen. If you wish to change your tires, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ When using the parallel parking assist mode

- Be sure to stop the vehicle parallel to the road or shoulder. If the vehicle is not parallel, the assist location will be very near the shoulder. If it looks like the vehicle will hit or mount the shoulder, depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, and touch "X" on the screen to deactivate the system.
- Always check that there are no obstacles in the green frame or between your vehicle and the parking space, and that the warning flag and extended green line do not overlap any parked vehicles or walls.
- If there are obstacles in the green frame or between your vehicle and the parking space, or the warning flag or extended green line overlaps a parked vehicle or wall, there is a danger of collision. In this case, do not use the parallel parking assist mode. The same applies if the green frame overlaps the shoulder.
- The warning flag is only a guide. Be sure to directly check your surroundings and behind the vehicle for safety, and back up carefully.
- If the road surface has level variations or a gradient between the starting position and target parking position, it will not be possible to correctly set the location, which may cause the parking position to be misaligned or crooked. In this case, do not use the parallel parking assist mode.
- When the vehicle in front of the empty space is parked on the shoulder or is not parallel with the road, parallel parking assist mode cannot be used.
- If the parked vehicle is narrow, or parked close to the shoulder, the assisted parking position may be quite close to the shoulder. If the vehicle seems likely to hit or mount the shoulder, depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, and disable the system by touching "X".

NOTICE

■ When using the parking assist mode (perpendicular parking)

- Always check that there are no obstacles in the green frame or between your vehicle and the parking space, and that the warning flag does not overlap any parked vehicles or walls.
- If there are obstacles in the green frame or between your vehicle and the parking space, or the warning flag overlaps a parked vehicle or wall, there is a danger of collision. In this case, do not use the parking assist mode.
- The warning flag is only a guide. Be sure to directly check your surroundings and behind the vehicle for safety, and back up carefully.
- If the road surface has level variations or a gradient between the starting position and target parking position, it will not be possible to correctly set the location, which may cause the parking position to be misaligned or crooked. In this case, do not use the parking assist mode.
- If the red area which denotes an area unsuitable for parking overlaps with the lines of the parking space, you will be unable to park, as the parking space is judged as being an area unsuitable for parking. Progress to a position where the parking space lines do not overlap with such an area.

Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed, when the system detects a panic stop situation

VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

TRAC (Traction Control)

Maintains drive power and prevents any of the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

Hill-start assist control

Prevents the vehicle from rolling backwards when starting on an incline or slippery slope

EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

VGRS (Variable Gear Ratio Steering) (if equipped)

Adjusts the wheel turning angle in accordance with the vehicle speed and steering wheel movement

VDIM (Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management)

Provides integrated control of the ABS, brake assist, TRAC, VSC, hill-start assist control, EPS, and VGRS (if equipped) systems
Maintains vehicle stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling the brakes and engine output, steering assist, and if equipped with VGRS, steering ratio

Pre-Collision System (if equipped)

→P. 297

When the VSC/TRAC/hill-start assist control systems are operating



If the vehicle is in danger of slipping, rolling backwards when starting on an incline, or any of the drive wheels spin, the indicator flashes to indicate that the VSC/TRAC/hill-start assist control systems have been engaged.

A buzzer (intermittent) sounds to indicate that VSC is operating.

The stop lights and high mounted stoplight turn on when the hill-start assist control system is operating.

The slip indicator light flashes as well when ABS is operating.

Disabling TRAC and/or VSC

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, TRAC and VSC may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. You may need to turn the system off to enable you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.



● Turning off TRAC

Quickly press and release the switch to turn off TRAC.

A message will be displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRAC has been disabled.

Press the switch again to turn the system back on.

● Turning off TRAC and VSC

Press and hold the switch for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped to turn off TRAC and VSC.

The VSC off indicator light will come on, and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRAC has been disabled.

Press the switch again to turn the system back on.

■ **Automatic reactivation of TRAC and VSC**

Turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF after turning off the TRAC and VSC systems will automatically re-enable them.

■ **Automatic TRAC reactivation**

If only the TRAC system is turned off, the TRAC system will turn on when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Automatic TRAC/VSC reactivation**

If the TRAC/VSC systems are turned off, the systems will not turn on even when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, VSC, TRAC, hill-start assist control and VGRS systems**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
- The steering wheel may be moved slightly or a sound may be heard when the engine is started or stopped. None of these indicate that a malfunction has occurred.

■ **Hill-start assist control is operational when**

- Without paddle shift switches: The shift lever is in the "D" or "S" position.
  With paddle shift switches: The shift lever is in the "D" or "M" position.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

■ **EPS operation sound**

When the steering wheel operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ **Conditions affecting VGRS operations**

In the following situations, the center position of the steering wheel may change. However, the position will return to normal after the conditions are improved.

- When the steering wheel has been operated quickly or operated for an extended period of time while the vehicle is stopped or is moving very slowly
- When the steering wheel has been held fully to the left or right
- When the battery is low or the voltage temporarily drops
- After the engine is started at lower than -22°F (-30°C).

■ **Reduced effectiveness of EPS**

The effectiveness of EPS is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

■ **If the slip indicator comes on**

It may indicate a malfunction in the VSC, TRAC and hill start assist control function. (→P. 714)

⚠ CAUTION

■ **The ABS does not operate effectively when**

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded.
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on a wet or slick road.

■ **Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions**

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven roads

⚠ CAUTION

■ TRAC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRAC system is operating.
Do not drive the vehicle in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ If hill-start assist control does not operate effectively

Do not overly rely on the hill-start assist control. The hill start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered in ice.

■ When the VSC is activated

The slip indicator light flashes and a warning buzzer sounds. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes and a buzzer sounds.

■ When TRAC and VSC are off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are systems to ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn off TRAC and VSC unless necessary.

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressure level.

The ABS and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are fitted on the vehicle.
Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ Handling of tires and suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause the system to malfunction.

Pre-Collision System*

When the radar sensor detects possibility of a frontal collision, the pre-collision system such as the brakes and seat belts are automatically engaged to lessen impact and injuries to occupants as well as vehicle damage.

Pre-collision seat belts

If the pre-collision sensor detects that a collision is unavoidable, the pre-collision system will retract the seat belt before the collision occurs.
The same will happen if the driver makes an emergency braking or loses control of the vehicle. (→P. 94)

However, the system will not operate in the event of skidding when the VSC system is disabled.

Pre-collision brake assist

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

Pre-collision braking

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the system warns the driver using a warning light, warning display and buzzer. If the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the brakes are automatically applied to help reduce the collision speed. Pre-collision braking function can be turned on and off using the pre-collision braking off switch. (→P. 298)

Suspension control (If equipped)

When there is a high possibility of a frontal collision, the operation of suspension control helps prevent the front of the vehicle from dropping when the brakes are applied suddenly.

*: If equipped

Driver monitor system (if equipped)

When the system determines that there is a possibility of a collision, and that the driver is not facing forward, PCS warnings are given in advance to warn the driver. If the situation does not improve, pre-collision alert braking will be applied.
(→P. 299)

Steering gear control (VGRS) (with driver monitor system)

When the system determines that a collision is unavoidable, the steering gear ratio is changed to help improve the response to steering input.

Pre-collision alert braking (with driver monitor system)

When the system determines that the driver is not facing forward, and that the possibility of a collision persists, the brakes will be applied briefly to give the driver a sensory warning and encourage them to take preventive measures. Pre-collision alert braking can also be disabled using the pre-collision braking off switch.

Disabling pre-collision braking



1 Pre-collision braking and pre-collision alert braking (if equipped) disabled

2 Pre-collision braking and pre-collision alert braking (if equipped) enabled

The “PCS” warning light turns on when pre-collision braking is disabled.

Radar sensor



Detects vehicles or other obstacles on or near the road ahead and determines whether a collision is imminent based on the position, speed, and heading of the obstacles.

Camera sensor (with driver monitor system)



Detects pedestrians and other three-dimensional objects on or near the road ahead together with the radar sensor while the vehicle is moving. When the headlights are on, near-infrared rays are projected to ensure proper detection performance in the night time.

1 Camera sensors
2 Near-infrared ray transmitters

Driver monitor sensor (with driver monitor system)



Detects the direction the driver is facing. The system determines whether the driver is facing forward.

■ **Obstacles not detected**

The sensor cannot detect plastic obstacles such as pylons. There may also be occasions when the radar sensor cannot detect pedestrians, animals, bicycles, motorcycles, trees, or snowdrifts.

■ **The camera sensor cannot detect obstacles in the following situations.**

- The camera sensor is directly receiving intense light, such as sunlight.
- Visibility is poor because of the bad weather or other reasons.
- The sensor temperature is extremely high.

■ **The pre-collision system is operational when**

- Pre-crash seat belts:

  ▶ Operating conditions A

  - Vehicle speed is above 4 mph (5 km/h).
  - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed at which your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

  ▶ Operating conditions B

  - Vehicle speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The system detects sudden braking or skidding.
  - The front occupants are wearing a seat belt.

- Pre-collision brake assist:

  - Vehicle speed is above 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed at which your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 19 mph (30 km/h).
  - The brake pedal is depressed.

- Pre-collision braking:

  - The pre-collision braking off switch is not pressed.
  - Vehicle speed is above 10 mph (15 km/h).
  - The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 13 mph (20 km/h).

● Suspension control (if equipped):

- Vehicle speed is above 4 mph (5 km/h).
- The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 19 mph (30 km/h).

● Steering gear control (VGRS) (with driver monitor system):

- Vehicle speed is above 19 mph (30 km/h).
- The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 19 mph (30 km/h).

● Pre-collision alert braking (with driver monitor system):

- The pre-collision braking off switch is not pressed.
- The system determines that the driver is not facing forward.
- Vehicle speed is above 10 mph (15 km/h).
- The relative speed difference between your vehicle and another vehicle that is forward of your vehicle, or the speed your vehicle is approaching an obstacle is greater than 13 mph (20 km/h).
- The steering is not being turned.

■ **Conditions that may trigger the system even if there is no possibility of collision**

- When there is an object by the roadside at the entrance to a curve
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve
- When driving over a narrow iron bridge
- When there is a metal object on the road surface
- When there is a metal plate in the road in front of the vehicle on a downhill slope
- When there is a metal object such as a sign board in front of the vehicle on an uphill slope
- When driving on an uneven road surface
- When passing an oncoming vehicle on a left-turn
- When your vehicle rapidly closes on the vehicle in front
- When your vehicle is skidding with the VSC system off
- When a grade separation/interchange, sign, billboard, or other structure appears to be directly in the vehicle's line of travel.
- When climbing a steep hill causes an overhead billboard or other metallic structure to appear directly in the vehicle's line of travel.
- When an extreme change in vehicle height occurs
- When the axis of the radar is out of adjustment
- When passing through certain toll gates

When the system is activated in the situations described above there is also a possibility that the seat belts will retract quickly and the brakes will be applied with a force greater than normal. When the seat belt is locked in the retracted position, stop the vehicle in a safe place, release the seat belt and refasten.

■ **Situations in which the pre-collision system does not function properly**

The system may not function effectively in situations such as the following:

- On roads with sharp bends or uneven surfaces
- On slippery roads such as those covered with ice or snow
- If a vehicle suddenly moves in front of your vehicle, such as at an intersection
- If a vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle, such as when overtaking
- In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms
- When your vehicle is skidding with the VSC system off

■ **When there is a malfunction in the system**

Warning light will flash and/or warning messages will turn on. (→P. 713, 723)

■ **Certification**

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: HYQDNMWR004

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure Information:

This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment.

This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator (antenna) and your body.

This transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Handling the radar sensor

Observe the following to ensure the pre-collision system can function effectively.

- Keep the sensor and front grille clean at all times.
  Clean the sensor and front grille with a soft cloth so you do not mark or damage them.
- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area to a strong impact.
  If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected and adjusted by a Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor, grille or surrounding area.
- Do not modify or paint the sensor and grille.

■ Handling the driver monitor sensor (with driver monitor system)

Observe the following to ensure the driver monitor sensor can function effectively.

Failure to do so may result in a malfunction or may prevent the system from correctly determining the direction the driver is facing.

- Do not disassemble, damage, lift or pull on the sensor.
- Do not touch the sensor while driving.
- Do not wet or spill water on the sensor.
- Do not drop anything on or allow anything to hit against the sensor. Do not subject the sensor to an impact.
- Make sure that there are no scratches, dirt or stickers on the side of the sensor that faces the driver.
- Do not place any objects in front of the side of the sensor that faces the driver or cover the sensor.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Handling the camera sensor (with driver monitor system)

Observe the following to ensure that the PCS functions correctly:

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  PCS effectiveness may be reduced due to the presence of raindrops, condensation, ice or snow on the windshield.
- Do not change the installation position of a camera sensor, or remove and reinstall it. The direction of a camera sensor is precisely adjusted.
- When it is cold, using the heater with air blowing to the feet may allow the upper part of the windshield to fog up. This will have a negative effect on the images. In such a case, use the windshield defogger to provide warm, dry air to the windshield.
- Do not place anything on the dashboard.
  Images reflected on the windshield may reduce the effectiveness of a camera sensor.
- Do not attach a sticker or other items to the windshield near a camera sensor.

■ Determining the direction the driver is facing (with driver monitor system)

The driver monitor function does not operate when the vehicle is stopped.
The direction the driver is facing may not be determined correctly if any of the following conditions exist:

- There is an object between the driver monitor sensor and the driver's face, such as when the sensor is blocked.
- A part of the driver's face is covered.
- The sensor or the driver's face is exposed to intense light such as sunlight.
- The driving posture is improper.

■ Headlights (with driver monitor system)

The near-infrared ray transmitter projects strong energy that is not visible. Although the transmitter normally turns off when the vehicle is stopped, never look into the headlights for your safety.

■ Limitations of the pre-collision system

Do not rely on the pre-collision system. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and checking for any obstacles or other road hazards.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Cautions regarding the assist contents of the system

By means of alarms and brake control, the pre-collision system is intended to assist the driver in avoiding collisions through the process of LOOK-JUDGE-ACT. There are limits to the degree of assistance the system can provide, so please keep in mind the following important points.

- Assisting the driver in watching the road
  The pre-collision system is only able to detect obstacles directly in front of the vehicle, and only within a limited range. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for the driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver in making correct judgment
  When attempting to estimate the likelihood of a collision, the only data available to the pre-collision system is that from obstacles it has detected directly in front of the vehicle. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of collision in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver in taking action
  The pre-collision system's braking assist feature is designed to help reduce the severity of a collision, and so only acts when the system has judged that a collision is unavoidable. This system by itself is not capable of automatically avoiding a collision or bringing the vehicle to a stop safely. For this reason, when encountering a dangerous situation the driver must take direct and immediate action in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

NOTICE

■ **Camera sensor (with driver monitor system)**

Observe the following to ensure that the PCS functions correctly:

- Do not subject the camera sensor to strong impact or force, and do not disassemble the camera sensor.
- Do not scratch the camera lens, or let it get dirty.

■ **Headlights (with driver monitor system)**

Observe the following to ensure proper near-infrared ray projection:

- Keep the headlights clean at all times.
- The detection performance may deteriorate if the high beams are misaligned or the high beam is inoperative.

■ **Precautions for cleaning the driver monitor sensor (with driver monitor system)**

- Gently wipe the sensor with a soft cloth to prevent damage.
- Wipe any excess dirt with a cloth dampened with neutral detergent, all liquids having been wringed out of the cloth. After that, wipe again with a dry cloth.
- Do not use benzene, thinner, glass cleaners, wax, etc.

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible. Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Placing the weight as far forward as possible helps maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.

Capacity and distribution

Cargo capacity depends on the total weight of the occupants.

(Cargo capacity) = (Total load capacity) – (Total weight of occupants)

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit—

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.

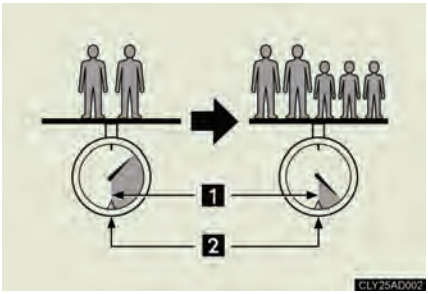
For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400 – 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6)If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing.

Example based on your vehicle



1 Cargo capacity
2 Total load capacity

When 2 people with the combined weight of 366 lb. (166 kg) are riding in your vehicle, which has a total load capacity of 825 lb. (375 kg), the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity will be as follows:

825 lb. – 366 lb. = 459 lb. (375 kg –166 kg = 209 kg)

In this condition, if 3 more passengers with the combined weight of 388 lb. (176 kg) get on, the available cargo and luggage load will be reduced as follows:

459 lb. – 388 lb. = 71 lb. (209 kg – 176 kg = 33 kg)

As shown in the example above, if the number of occupants increases, the cargo and luggage load will be reduced by an amount that equals the increased weight due to the additional occupants. In other words, if an increase in the number of occupants causes an excess of the total load capacity (combined weight of occupants plus cargo and luggage load), you must reduce the cargo and luggage on your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Things that must not be carried in the trunk

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations as the item may get under the brake or accelerator pedal and prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, block the driver's vision, or hit the driver or passengers, causing an accident.
  - Driver's feet
  - Front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - Package tray
  - Instrument panel
  - Dashboard
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may shift and injure someone during sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

■ Capacity and distribution

- Do not exceed the maximum axle weight rating or the total vehicle weight rating.
- Even if the total load of occupant's weight and the cargo load is less than the total load capacity, do not apply the load unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

Vehicle load limits

Vehicle load limits include total load capacity, seating capacity, towing capacity and cargo capacity.

Total load capacity:

▶ 4-seat models
675 lb. (305 kg)
▶ 5-seat models
825 lb. (375 kg)

Total load capacity means the combined weight of occupants, cargo and luggage.

Seating capacity:

▶ 4-seat models
4 occupants (Front 2, Rear 2)
▶ 5-seat models
5 occupants (Front 2, Rear 3)

Seating capacity means the maximum number of occupants whose estimated average weight is 150 lb. (68 kg) per person.

Towing capacity

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle.

Cargo capacity

Cargo capacity may increase or decrease depending on the weight and the number of occupants.

Total load capacity and seating capacity

These details are also described on the tire and loading information label.
(→P. 672)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Overloading the vehicle

Do not overload the vehicle.
It may not only cause damage to the tires, but also degrade steering and braking ability, resulting in an accident.

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the level and specific gravity of battery electrolyte.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the rear tires.

  Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.
- Periodically check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel well or on the brakes.

When driving the vehicle

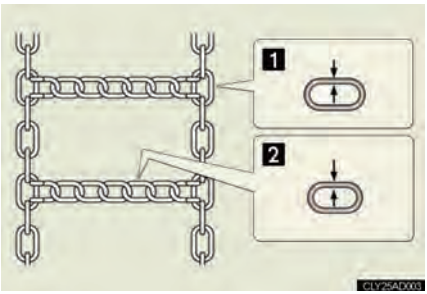
Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to "P" without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

Selecting snow chains

Use the correct snow chain size when mounting the snow chains. Chain size is regulated for each tire size.



1 Side chain
(0.12 in. [3 mm] in diameter)

2 Cross chain
(0.16 in. [4 mm] in diameter)

Regulations on the use of snow chains

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary according to location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.
- Install the chains on the rear tires.
- Retighten the chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).

Snow chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the rear tires only. Do not install tire chains on front tires.
- Install the tire chains on rear tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 1/4 - 1/2 mile (0.5 - 1.0 km).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided in the accompanying instructions.

CAUTION

Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the size specified for your vehicle.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of 75 mph (120 km/h), regardless of the type of snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

Driving with snow chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 30 mph (50 km/h), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turns and braking, as use of chains may adversely affect vehicle handling.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

NOTICE

Repairing or replacing snow tires

Request repairs and obtain replacement of snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire air pressure sensor.

Fitting tire chains

The tire air pressure sensor may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

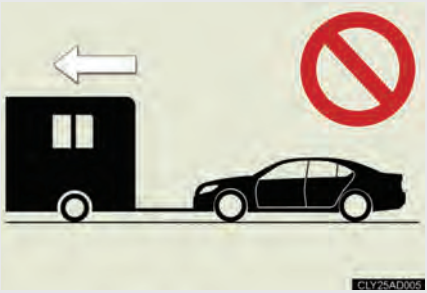
Trailer towing

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your Lexus is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



Dinghy towing

Your vehicle is not designed to be dinghy towed (with 4 wheels on the ground) behind a motor home.



⚠ NOTICE

To avoid serious damage to your vehicle

Do not tow your vehicle with four wheels on the ground.

Interior features 3

3-1. Using the touch screen

Touch screen 322
Set up screen 329
Information screen..... 334

3-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Front air conditioning system (without touch screen) 336
Front air conditioning system (with touch screen) 346
Rear air conditioning system..... 361
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers..... 369
Windshield wiper de-icer 371

3-3. Using the audio system
Audio system 373
Using the radio..... 375
Using the CD player 379
Playing back MP3 and WMA discs..... 385
Optimal use of the audio system 391
Using the AUX port 393
Using the steering wheel audio switches 394
Audio system type..... 396
Using the radio..... 400
Using the CD/DVD player 409
Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs 412
Playing DVD video/audio 417
Playing a video CD 430
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information 434
Listening to Bluetooth® audio..... 444
Listening to a USB memory/iPod..... 456
Optimal use of the audio/video system..... 466
Using the AUX port 468
Using the rear seat audio controls..... 469
Using the steering wheel audio switches 474

3-4. Using the rear seat entertainment system
Rear seat entertainment system features..... 478
Using the radio 487
Using the front DVD player 488
Using the rear DVD player 489
Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs..... 492
Playing a DVD video/audio 493
Playing a video CD..... 503
DVD player and DVD video disc information 507
Using the video mode..... 509
Changing other setting..... 511

3-5. Using the hands-free system (for cellular phone)
Hands-free system (for cellular phone) 513
Using the Bluetooth® phone 519
Setting the hands-free system 533

3-6. Using the interior lights
Interior lights list 562
• Interior lights 563
• Personal lights 564

3-7. Using the storage features
List of storage features 566
• Glove box 568
• Coin holder 569
• Door pockets 569
• Cup holders 570
• Console box 572
• Non smokers boxes 573
• Cool box/auxiliary box 574
• Auxiliary boxes 578

3-8. Other interior features
Sun visors 580
Vanity mirrors 581
Clock 582
Outside temperature display 584
Ashtrays 585
Cigarette lighters 586
Power outlets 588
Heated steering wheel 591
Climate control seats/seat heaters 593
Armrest 597
Retractable table 598
Rear sunshade 600
Rear door sunshades 603
Trunk storage extension 606
Coat hooks 608
Floor mat 609
Trunk features 610
Garage door opener 612
Compass 618
Safety Connect 622

Touch screen

By touching the screen with your finger, you can control the audio system and air conditioning system, and adjust the screen display, etc.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the “Navigation System Owner’s Manual”.



A With navigation system

B Without navigation system

Button	Page
“CLIMATE”	P. 346
“AUDIO”	P. 396/ Navigation System Owner's Manual
“SETUP”	P. 329/ Navigation System Owner's Manual
“DISP”	P. 324/ Navigation System Owner's Manual
“MAP/VOICE”	Navigation System Owner's Manual
“DEST”	Navigation System Owner's Manual
“INFO/PHONE”	P. 334/ Navigation System Owner's Manual

The initial screen



If the “ENGINE START STOP” switch is set to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the initial screen will be displayed for a few seconds as the system starts up.

Adjusting the display

STEP 1 Press “DISP”.

STEP 2 Adjust the display as desired using “-” / “+” / “R” / “G”.

If you do not touch the screen for 20 seconds, the system will return to the previous screen.

▶ With CD mode



▶ With DVD mode



	“R”	“G”
“Color”	Red	Green
	“-”	“+”
“Tone”	Lighter	Darker
“Contrast”	Weaker	Stronger
“Brightness”	Darker	Brighter

■ **To avoid damaging the touch screen**

- Touch the screen lightly with your finger. If there is no response, remove your finger from the screen and try again.
- Remove any dirt on the screen by wiping with a soft cloth. Do not use detergent.

■ **When using the touch screen**

- If the screen is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The screen may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses. Change your angle of viewing, adjust the display on the "Display" screen or remove your sunglasses.

■ **Changing between day mode and night mode**



When the headlights are turned on, the screen dims.
However, the screen can be switched to day mode by touching "Day Mode".

The screen will stay in day mode when the headlights are turned on until "Day Mode" is touched again.
The screen will not be displayed if the instrument panel light control is set to the brightest level.

■ **To turn off the display**

If "Screen Off" is touched, the screen display is turned off, and guidance is by voice only.

■ **Turning on or off the rear display (if equipped)**



Touch "Rear".

Inputting letters and numbers/List screen operation

Letters and numbers can be input via the screen.

To input letters and numbers

▶ Letters and numbers



Enter letters by touching the keys directly.

: Backspace

A–Z : To display letters and numbers

Other : To display symbols

Space : Space

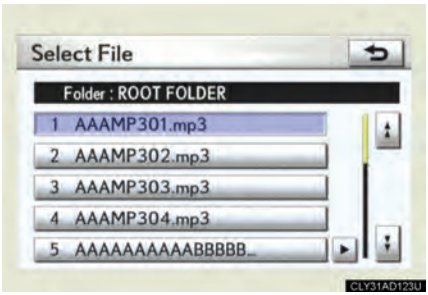
: To enter in lower case

: To enter in upper case

▶ Symbols



List screen operation



When a list is displayed, use the appropriate button to scroll through the list.

: To shift to the next or previous page. Touch or to scroll through the displayed list.

: Shows the displayed screen position.

: If appears to the right of the item name, the complete name is too long for the display. Touch to scroll to the end of the name. Touch to scroll to the beginning of the name.

■ **If you touch** 

The display returns to the previous screen.

■ **Changing the keyboard layout**

Keyboard layout can be changed. →P. 331

■ **Function help**

When "?" appears on the screen, touch "?" to display an explanation of the function.

Set up screen (without navigation system)

You can change the touch screen to your desired settings.

Press “SETUP” to display the “Setup” screen.

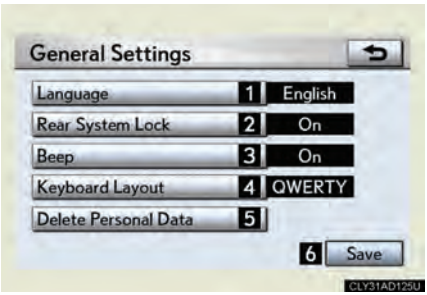


Switch	Page
“General”	P. 330
“Clock”	P. 582
“Voice”	P. 333
“Phone”	P. 533
“Audio”	P. 446
“Vehicle”	P. 234

General settings

This screen is used for various settings such as language selection and setting operation sounds.

Touch "General" on the "Setup" screen.



1. Select language
2. Rear seat entertainment system lock (if equipped)
3. Beep on/off
4. Select keyboard layout
5. Delete personal data
6. Save the settings

   Make sure to save after changing settings.

Rear system lock setting

The operation lock on the rear seat entertainment system can be turned on or off.

Keyboard layout setting

The keyboard layout can be changed.

▶ "ABC" type



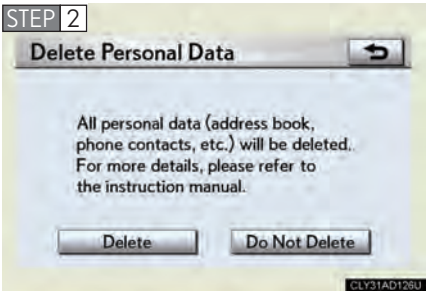
▶ "QWERTY" type



■ Delete personal data

STEP 1 Touch “Delete Personal Data” on the “General Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Touch “Delete”.

Check carefully beforehand, as data cannot be retrieved once deleted.

STEP 3 A confirmation screen will be displayed. Touch “Yes”.

The following personal data can be deleted or turned to their default settings.

- Phonebook data
- Call history data
- Speed dial data
- Voice tag data
- Bluetooth® phone data
- Volume setting
- Details setting

Voice settings

Touch “Voice” on the “Setup” screen.



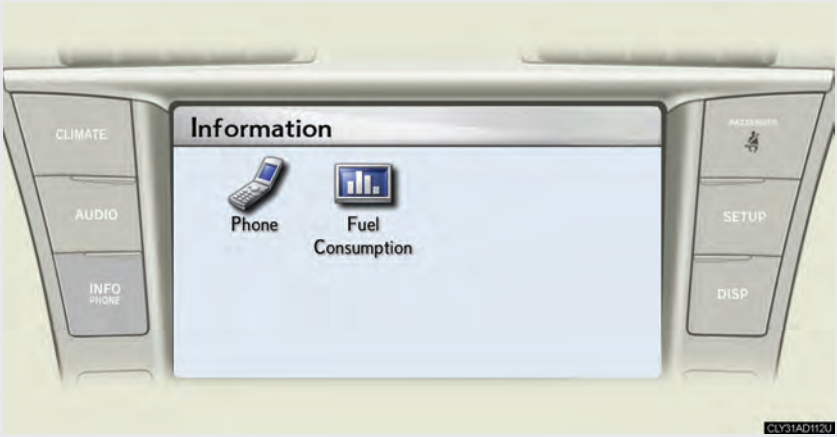
1. Select the voice guidance volume
2. Select the voice recognition talkback
3. Automatic recognition on/off without pressing the talk switch more than once
4. Select voice guidance projection
5. Restore default settings
6. Save the settings

   Make sure to save after changing settings.

Information screen (without navigation system)

"Information" screen can be used to display the fuel consumption information or operate the hands-free system.

Press "INFO/PHONE" to display the "Information" screen.

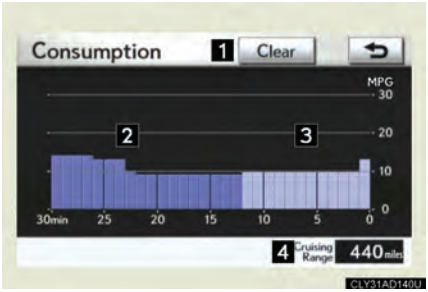


Switch	Page
"Phone"	P. 519
"Fuel Consumption"	P. 335

Fuel consumption

Fuel consumption information from recent resets will be displayed.

Touch "Fuel Consumption" on the "Information" screen.



1 Resetting the consumption data

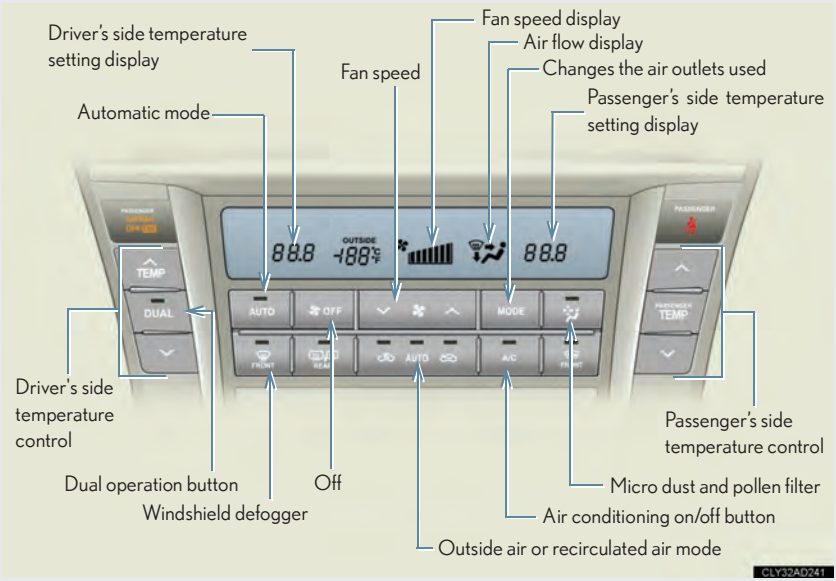
2 Previous fuel consumption per minute

3 Current fuel consumption per minute

4 Cruising range

Average fuel consumption for the past 30 minutes is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the "ENGINE START STOP" switch was last turned to IGNITION ON mode.

Air flow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.



Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Press "AUTO".

➡ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2 Press  to switch to automatic air intake mode.

➡ The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

STEP 3 Press "∧" on "TEMP" or "PASSENGER TEMP" to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be set separately.

Adjusting the settings

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

Press "∧" on "TEMP" or "PASSENGER TEMP" to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between dual and simultaneous modes each time "DUAL" is pressed.

Dual mode (the indicator on "DUAL" is on): The temperature for the left-hand seat and right-hand seat can be adjusted separately. Operating the passenger's side temperature control will enter dual mode.

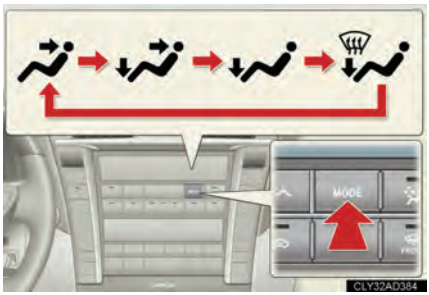
Simultaneous mode (the indicator on "DUAL" is off): Only "∧" and "∨" on "TEMP" (driver's side) can be used to adjust the temperature for all seats.

■ Adjusting the fan speed

Press "∧" (increase) or "∨" (decrease) on .

Press  to turn the fan off.

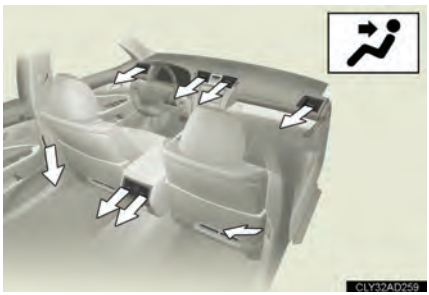
Changing the air outlets



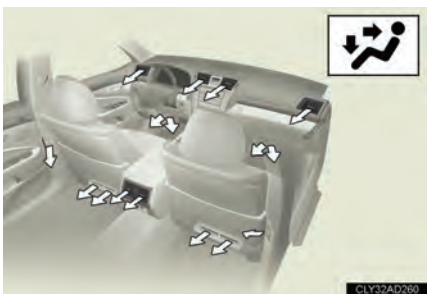
Press “MODE”.

The air outlets switch each time the button is pressed.

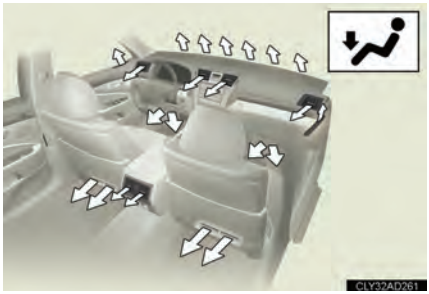
Air flows as shown below according to the mode selected.



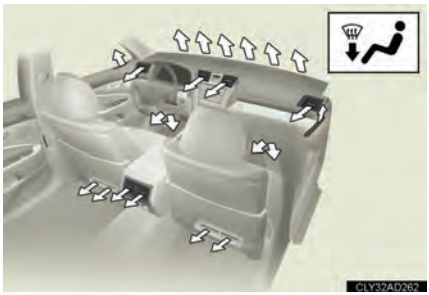
Upper body



Upper body and feet



Feet



Feet and windshield

Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

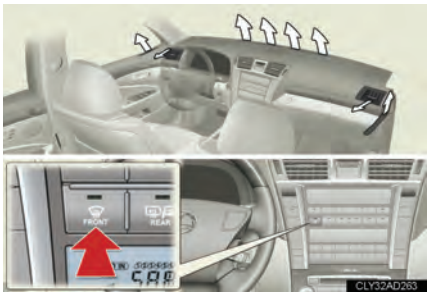
Press 

.

The mode switches between (recycles air inside the vehicle), "AUTO" and (introduces air from outside the vehicle) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the air intake control system is switched to automatic mode, it operates automatically.

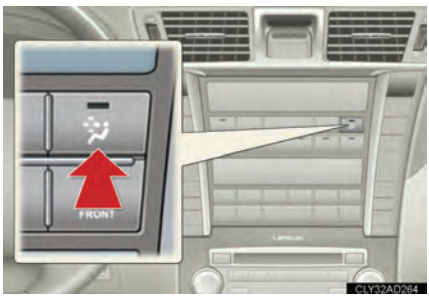
Defogging the windshield



Press .

The air conditioning system operates automatically.

Micro dust and pollen filter



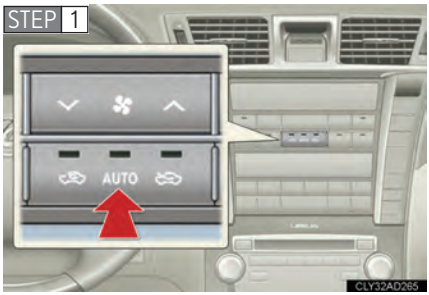
Press .

Outside air mode switches to  (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

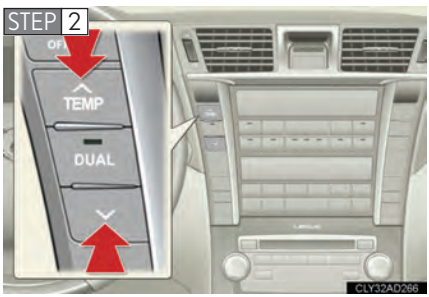
Usually the system will turn off automatically after approximately 1 to 3 minutes.

To stop the operation, press  again.

Adjusting the sensitivity of the air intake control in automatic mode



Press  for 2 or more seconds.

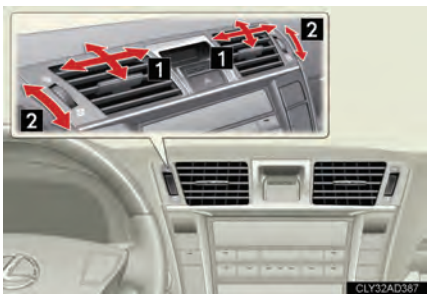


Press "∧" (increase) or "∨" (decrease) on "TEMP".

From -3 (low) to 3 (high) can be set.

Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

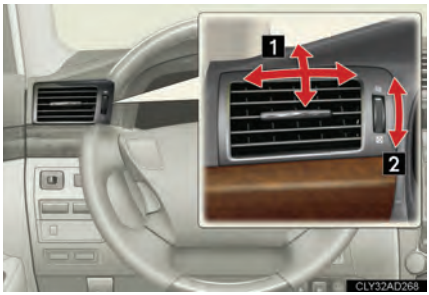
▶ Front center outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

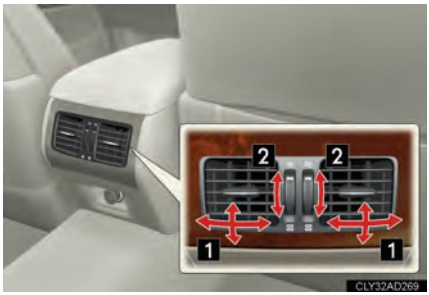
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Front side outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Rear center outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Rear side outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

In Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency:

- Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
- Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected

To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Adjust the fan speed
- Turn off Eco drive mode

■ **Customization**

The air conditioning control of Eco drive mode can be changed to the same setting as that used in normal drive mode. (Customizable features→P. 778)

■ **Using the automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

- Immediately after "AUTO" is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

■ **Using the system in recirculated air mode**

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

■ **Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes**

Recirculated air mode or outside air mode may be automatically switched to in accordance with the temperature setting and the inside temperature.

■ **Window defogger feature**

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

■ **When outside temperature approaches 32°F (0°C)**

The air conditioning system may not operate even when "A/C" is pressed.

■ **Automatic mode for air intake control**

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

■ **Micro dust and pollen filter**

- In order to prevent the windows from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur:
  - Outside air mode does not switch to .
  - The air conditioning system operates automatically.
  - The operation cancels after 1 minute.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press .

■ **Air conditioning odors**

- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **To prevent the windshield from fogging up**

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

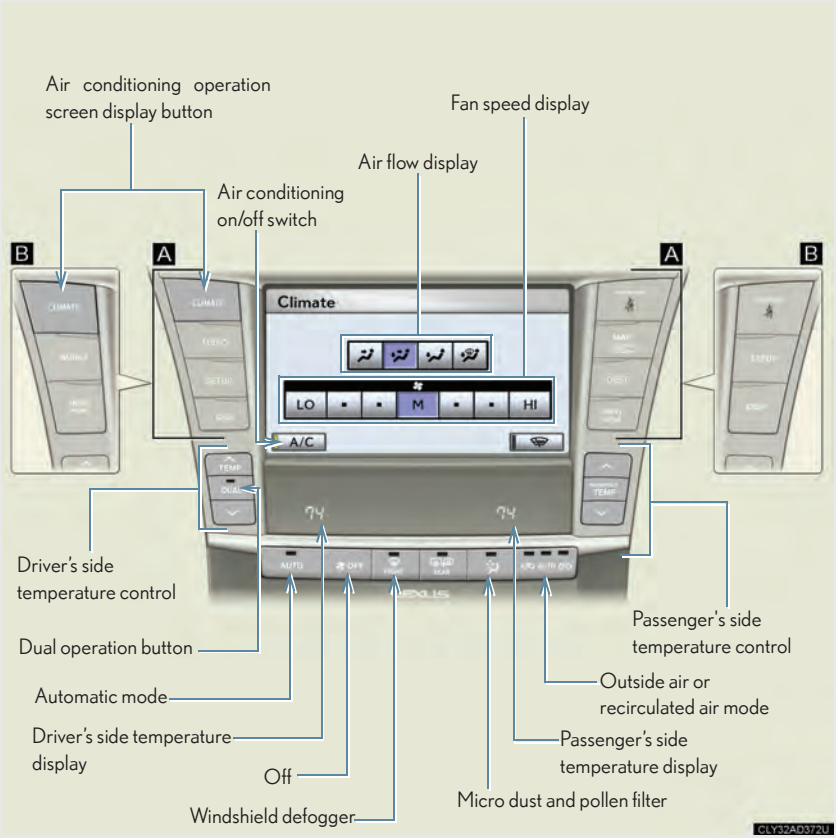
Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Front air conditioning system (with touch screen)

Air flow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Press "CLIMATE" to display the air conditioning operation screen.

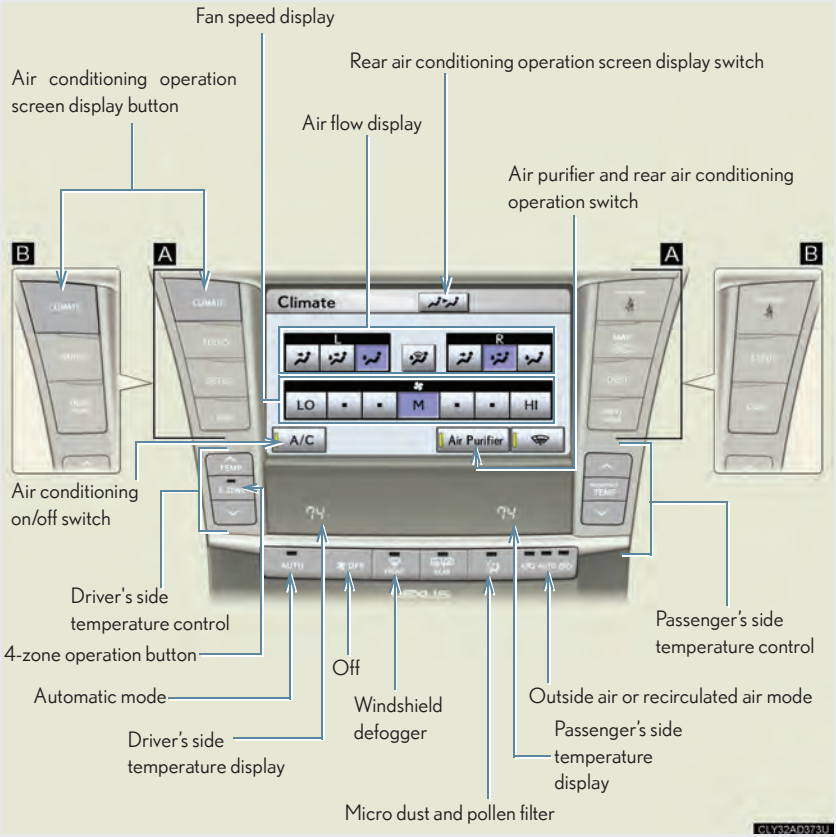
▶ Without rear air conditioning system



A With navigation system

B Without navigation system

▶ With rear air conditioning system

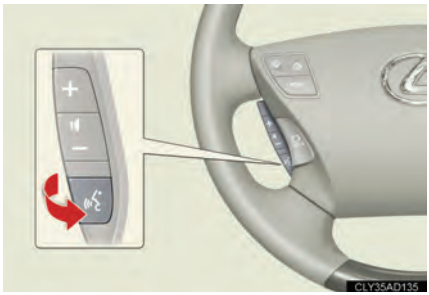


A With navigation system

B Without navigation system

Using the voice command system (with navigation system)

▶ Without paddle shift switches



Pull  to operate the voice command system. (→"Navigation System Owner's Manual")

▶ With paddle shift switches



Press  to operate the voice command system. (→ "Navigation System Owner's Manual")

Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Press "AUTO".

➡ The air conditioning system will begin to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

STEP 2 Press  to switch to automatic air intake mode.

➡ The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

STEP 3 Press "∧" on "TEMP" or "PASSENGER TEMP" to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

The temperature for the driver and passenger seats can be set separately. (without rear air conditioning system)

Air outlets and fan speed for the right-hand and left-hand seats may be set separately depending on the temperature setting. (with rear air conditioning system)

Adjusting the settings

■ Adjusting the temperature setting

▶ Without rear air conditioning system

Press "∧" on "TEMP" or "PASSENGER TEMP" to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between dual and simultaneous modes each time "DUAL" is pressed.

Dual mode (the indicator on "DUAL" is on): The temperature for the left-hand seat and right-hand seat can be adjusted separately. Operating the passenger's side temperature control will enter dual mode.

Simultaneous mode (the indicator on "DUAL" is off): Only "∧" and "∨" on "TEMP" (driver's side) can be used to adjust the temperature for all seats.

▶ With rear air conditioning system

Press "∧" on "TEMP" or "PASSENGER TEMP" to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time "4-ZONE" is pressed.

Individual mode (the indicator on "4-ZONE" is on): The temperature for the driver's, front passenger's and rear seats (→P. 361) can be adjusted separately. Operating the passenger's side temperature control will enter individual mode.

Simultaneous mode (the indicator on "4-ZONE" is off): Only "∧" and "∨" on "TEMP" (driver's side) can be used to adjust the temperature for all seats.

■ Adjusting the fan speed

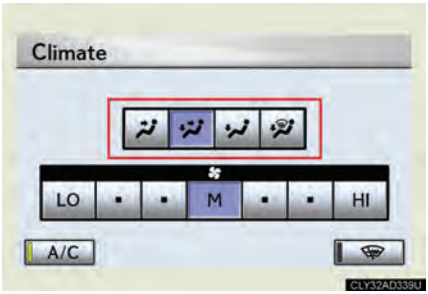
Touch any switch of 

(decrease ↔ increase) on the operation screen.

Press  to turn the fan off.

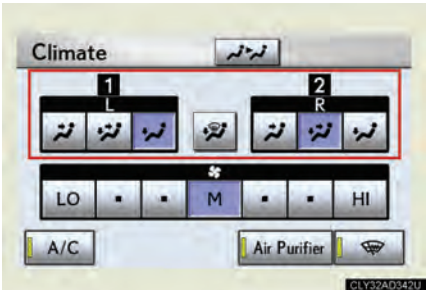
Changing the air outlets

▶ Without rear air conditioning system



Touch any mode on the operation screen.

▶ With rear air conditioning system



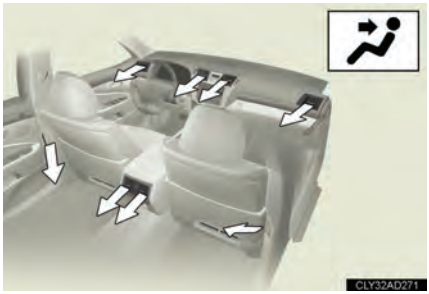
Touch any mode on the operation screen.

1 L: Left-hand front seat

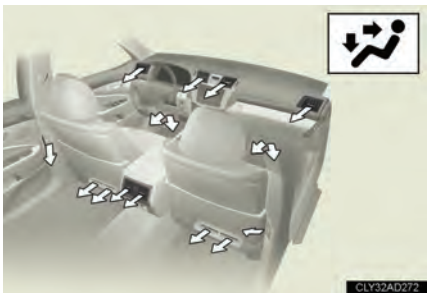
2 R: Right-hand front seat

Different air outlets for the left-hand and right-hand front seats can be chosen.

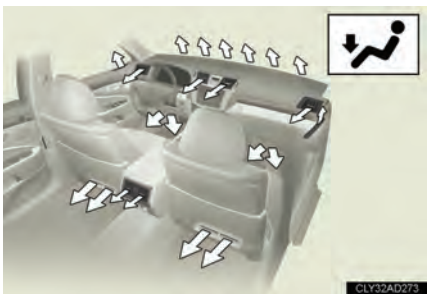
Air flows as shown below according to the mode selected.



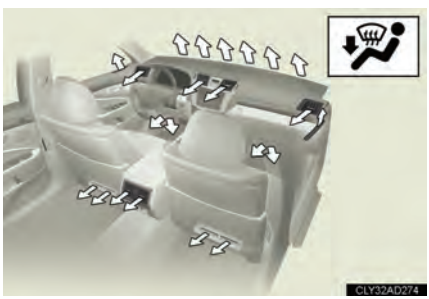
Upper body



Upper body and feet



Feet



Feet and windshield

Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press .

The mode switches between  (recycles air inside the vehicle), "AUTO" and  (introduces air from outside the vehicle) modes each time the button is pressed.

When the air intake control system is switched to automatic mode, it operates automatically.

Turning the air purifier off (with rear air conditioning system)

Touch "Air Purifier" on the operation screen.

The air purifier will turn off when the indicator on the switch goes off. Air will not flow from the roof vents.

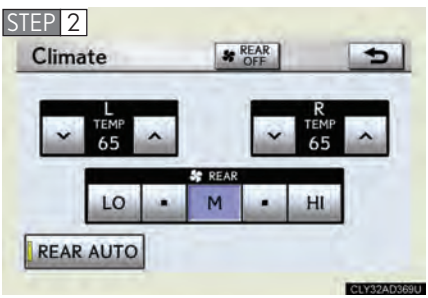
To turn the air purifier on, touch "Air Purifier" again.

Operating the rear air conditioning system on the operation screen (with rear air conditioning system)

Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Touch  on the operation screen.

STEP 2



Touch "REAR AUTO".

➡ The air conditioning system and air purifier will operate, and air outlets and fan speed will be set automatically.

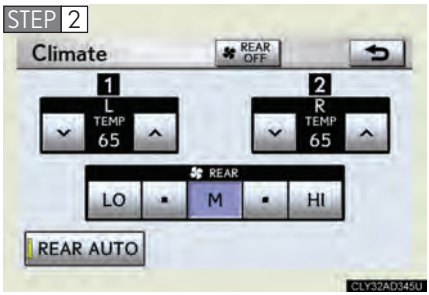
STEP 3 Touch "∧" on "TEMP" to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

Air outlets and fan speed for the right-hand and left-hand seats may be set separately depending on the temperature setting.

Adjusting the temperature setting

STEP 1 Touch  on the operation screen.

STEP 2



Touch "∧" (increase) or "∨" (decrease) on the operation screen. Operating the switch will enter individual mode.

1 L: Left-hand rear seat

2 R: Right-hand rear seat

The air conditioning system switches between individual and simultaneous modes each time "4-ZONE" is pressed.

Adjusting the fan speed (air purifier and cooler from the roof vents)

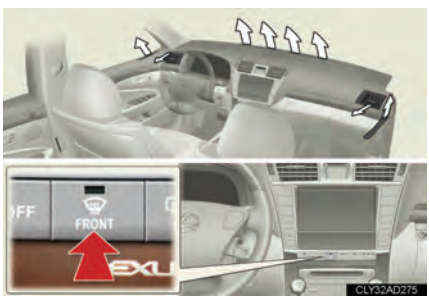
STEP 1 Touch  on the operation screen.

STEP 2 Touch any switch of  (decrease ↔ increase) on the operation screen.

According to the air outlets currently selected, the fan speed of either the cool air from the roof vents or air purifier will be adjusted. (→P. 364)

Touch  on the operation screen to turn the fan off.

Defogging the windshield



Press .

The air conditioning system operates automatically.

Micro dust and pollen filter



Press .

Outside air mode switches to (recirculated air) mode. Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Usually the system will turn off automatically after approximately 1 to 3 minutes.

To stop the operation, press again.

Adjusting the sensitivity of the air intake control in automatic mode

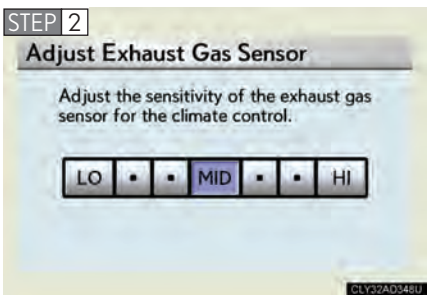
▶ Touch screen with navigation system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

▶ Touch screen without navigation system

STEP 1 Press until the "Adjust Exhaust Gas Sensor" screen appears while the vehicle is stopped.

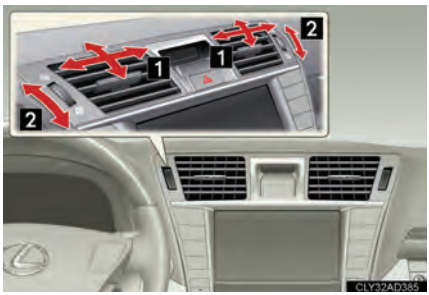
STEP 2



Touch any switch of LO MID HI (lower sensitivity ↔ higher sensitivity) on the operation screen.

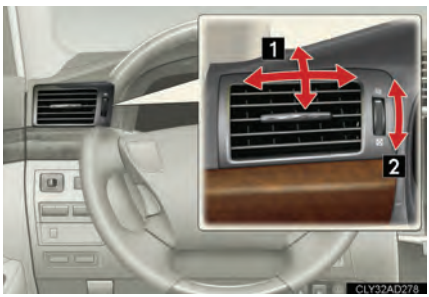
Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

▶ Front center outlets



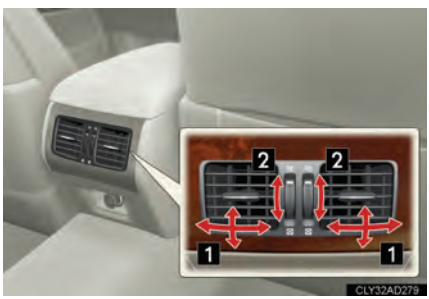
1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Front side outlets



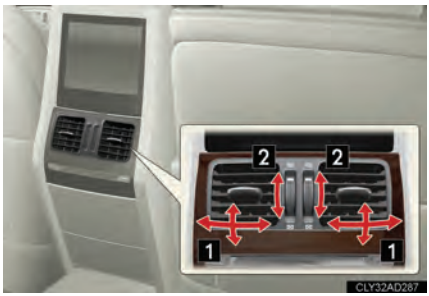
1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Rear center outlets (without rear console display)



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Rear center outlets (with rear console display)



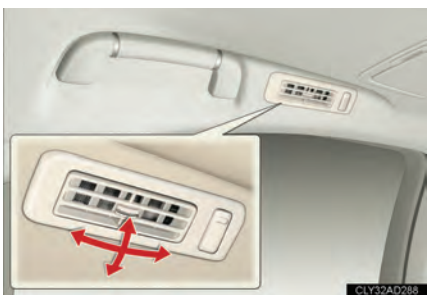
1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Rear side outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Roof side outlets (with rear air conditioning system)



Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

In Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency:

- Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
- Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected

To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Adjust the fan speed
- Turn off Eco drive mode

■ **Customization**

The air conditioning control of Eco drive mode can be changed to the same setting as that used in normal drive mode. (Customizable features→P. 778)

■ **Using the automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically in accordance with the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

- Immediately after "AUTO" is pressed, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow.
- Cool air may flow to the area around the upper body when the heater is on.

■ **Using the system in recirculated air mode**

The windows will fog up more easily if the recirculated air mode is used for an extended period.

■ **Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes**

Recirculated air mode or outside air mode may be automatically switched to in accordance with the temperature setting and the inside temperature.

■ **Window defogger feature**

Recirculated air mode may automatically switch to  (outside air) mode in situations where the windows need to be defogged.

■ **When outside temperature approaches 32°F (0°C)**

The air conditioning system may not operate even when "A/C" is touched.

Automatic mode for air intake control

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the air conditioning is off, and the fan is operating, turning the "AUTO" mode on will activate the air conditioning system.

Micro dust and pollen filter

- In order to prevent the windows from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the following may occur:
  - Outside air mode does not switch to .
  - The air conditioning system operates automatically.
  - The operation cancels after 1 minute.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up. Press .

Air purifier (with rear air conditioning system)

The air purifier will turn on when turning the rear air conditioning system on.

Air conditioning odors

- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

CAUTION

To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

NOTICE

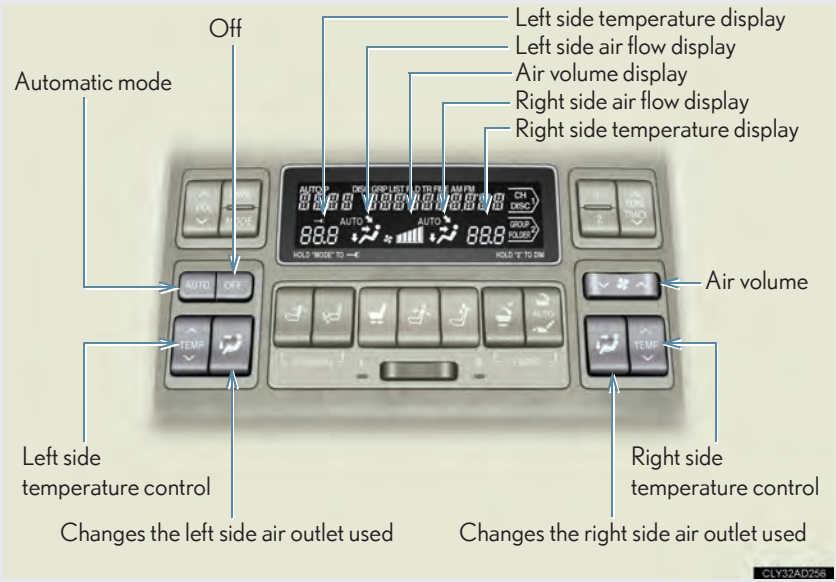
To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Rear air conditioning system*

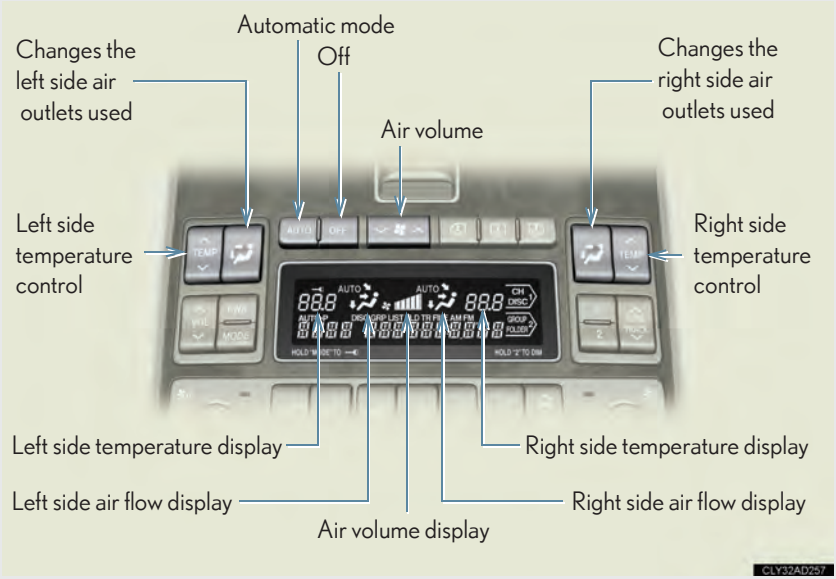
Air flow and outlets are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

▶ 5-seat models



*: If equipped

▶ 4-seat models



Using the automatic mode

STEP 1 Press "AUTO".

➡ The air conditioning system and air purifier will operate, and air outlets and fan speed will be set automatically.

"AUTO" will be displayed on the control panel.

STEP 2 Press "∧" on "TEMP" to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

Air outlets and fan speed for the right-hand and left-hand seats may be set separately depending on the temperature setting.

Adjusting the settings

Adjusting the temperature setting

Press "∧" on "TEMP" to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

Air outlets and fan speed for the right-hand and left-hand seats may be set separately depending on the temperature setting.

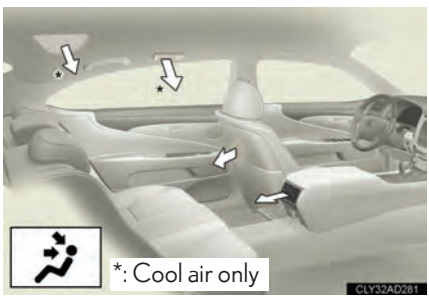
Changing the air outlets

Press .

The air outlets change as follows each time  is pressed.

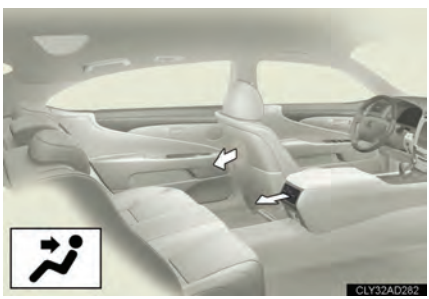
Different air outlets for the right-hand and left-hand rear seats can be chosen.

Air flows as shown below according to the mode selected.



Upper body

When the indicator on "A/C" (on the front operation screen) is on



Upper body

When the indicator on "A/C" (on the front operation screen) is off



Upper body and feet



Feet

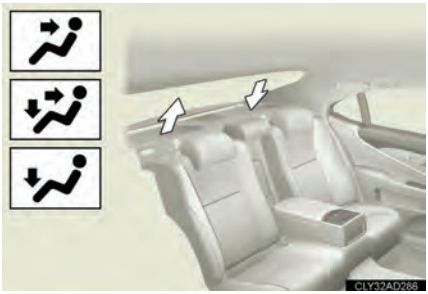
Adjusting the air volume

The volume of cool air or air from the air purifier can be adjusted according to the mode selected.

Press "∧" (increase) or "∨" (decrease) on .



Cool air flows from roof vents.

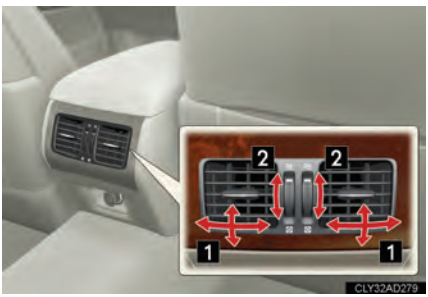


Air purifier operation (air flows from the rear package tray.)

Press “OFF” to turn the fan off.

Adjusting the position and opening and closing the air outlets

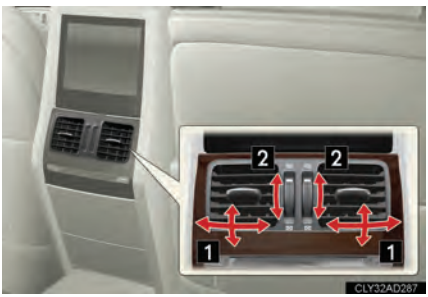
▶ Rear center outlets (without rear console display)



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Rear center outlets (with rear console display)



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

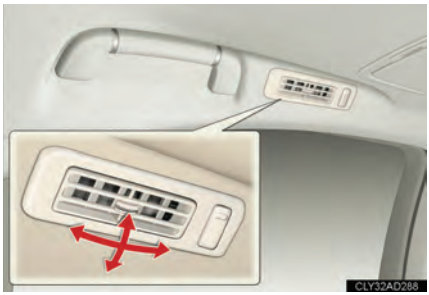
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Rear side outlets



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent.

▶ Roof side outlets



Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

Button lock function

▶ 5-seat models



To prevent inadvertent operation, the buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. Press “MODE” until you hear a beep to lock the buttons. Pressing “MODE” again until you hear a beep will release the lock.

The indicator appears on the display when the buttons are locked.

▶ 4-seat models



Rear control panel illumination off function

▶ 5-seat models



Control panel illumination on the rear armrest can be turned off. Press "2" until you hear a beep to turn the illumination off. Pressing "2" again until you hear a beep will turn the illumination on.

▶ 4-seat models



Replacing the rear air conditioning filter

Replacing the air conditioning filter when using rear air conditioning or air purifier reduces air flow or deodorizing performance. (→P. 678).

⚠ NOTICE

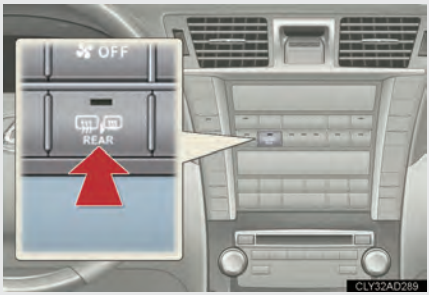
To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers

These features are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

▶ Without touch screen



On/off

Press  to turn on the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers. The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed. Pressing the button again also turns the defoggers off.

▶ With touch screen



On/off

Press  to turn on the rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers. The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed. Pressing the button again also turns the defoggers off.

■ **The defogger can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on

Do not touch the outside surface of the rear view mirrors, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Windshield wiper de-icer*

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

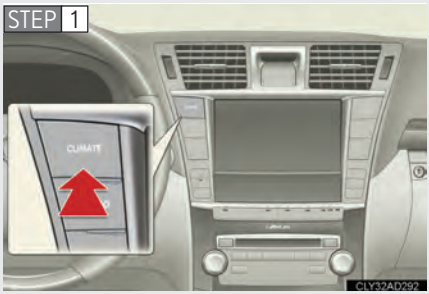
▶ Without touch screen



On/off

Press the button to turn on the windshield wiper de-icer. The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes. Pressing the button again also turns the de-icer off.

▶ With touch screen (without navigation system)



Press "CLIMATE" to display the air conditioning operation screen.
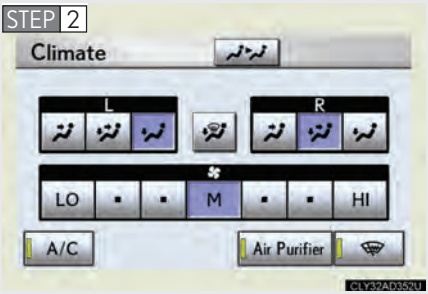
▶ With touch screen (with navigation system)



Press "CLIMATE" to display the air conditioning operation screen.

*: If equipped

STEP 2



Touch  to turn on the windshield wiper de-icer. The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes. Touching the switch again also turns the de-icer off.

■ **The windshield wiper de-icer can be operated when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When the windshield wiper de-icer is on**

Do not touch the glass at the lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars as the surfaces can become very hot and burn you.

CD player with changer and AM/FM radio



Title	Page
Using the radio	P. 375
Using the CD player	P. 379
Playing back MP3 and WMA discs	P. 385
Optimal use of the audio system	P. 391
Using the AUX port	P. 393
Using the steering wheel audio switches	P. 394

Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

⚠ CAUTION

■ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A. and Canada

● Part 15 of the FCC Rules

FCC Warning:
Any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment will void the user's authority to operate this device.

● Laser products

- Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes by yourself.
  This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.
- This product utilizes a laser.
  Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

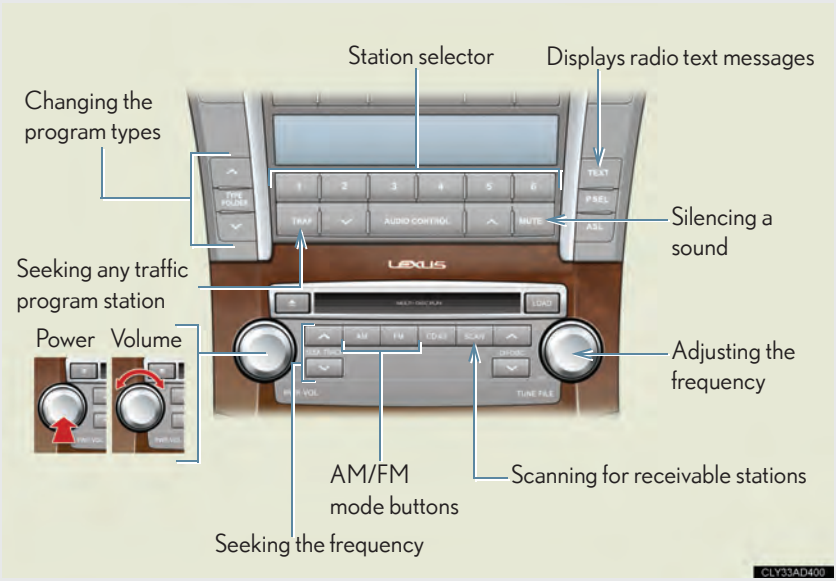
⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

■ To avoid damaging the audio system

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids on the audio system.


Station selector
Displays radio text messages
Changing the program types
Silencing a sound
Seeking any traffic program station
Power
Volume
Adjusting the frequency
AM/FM mode buttons
Scanning for receivable stations
Seeking the frequency
CLY33AD400

Setting station presets

STEP 1 Search for desired stations by turning  or pressing "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK".

STEP 2 Press and hold the button (from "1" to "6") the station is to be set to, and you will hear a beep.

Scanning radio stations

■ Scanning the preset radio stations

STEP 1 Press and hold "SCAN" until you hear a beep.

Preset stations will be played for 5 seconds each.

STEP 2 Press "SCAN" once again, when the desired station is reached.

■ Scanning all radio stations within range

STEP 1 Press "SCAN".

All stations with reception will be played for 5 seconds each.

STEP 2 Press "SCAN" once again, when the desired station is reached.

RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive station identification information and program information (classical, jazz, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

■ Receiving RDS broadcasts

STEP 1 Press "∧" or "∨" on "TYPE FOLDER" during FM reception.

The type of program changes each time the button is pressed.

- "ROCK"
- "EASYLIS" (Easy listening)
- "CLS/JAZZ" (Classical music and Jazz)
- "R & B" (Rhythm and Blues)
- "INFORM" (Information)
- "RELIGION"
- "MISC" (Miscellaneous)
- "ALERT" (Emergency messages)

If the system receives no RDS stations, "NO PTY" appears on the display.

STEP 2 Press "SCAN", or "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK".

The radio seeks or scans for stations by the relevant program type.

■ **Displaying radio station names**

Press “TEXT”.

■ **Displaying radio text messages**

Press “TEXT” twice.

If “MSG” shows in the display, a text message will be displayed.

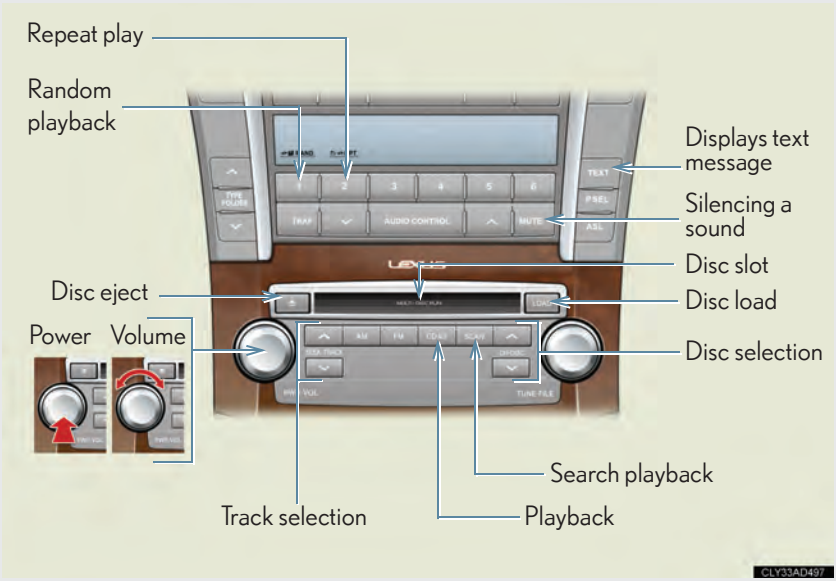
If the text continues past the end of the display, ▶ is displayed. Press and hold “TEXT” until you hear a beep.

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

All preset stations are erased.

■ **Reception sensitivity**

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.



Loading discs

■ Loading a disc

STEP 1 Press “LOAD”.

“WAIT” is shown on the display.

STEP 2 Insert a disc when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green.

The display changes from “WAIT” to “LOAD”.

■ Loading multiple discs

STEP 1 Press and hold “LOAD” until you hear a beep.

“WAIT” is shown on the display.

STEP 2 Insert a disc when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green.

The display changes from “WAIT” to “LOAD”.

The indicator on the slot turns to amber when the disc is inserted.

STEP 3 Insert the next disc when the indicator on the slot turns from amber to green again.

Repeat the procedure for the remaining discs.

To stop the operation, press "CD•AUX".

Ejecting discs

■ Ejecting a disc



STEP 1 To select the disc to be ejected, press "∧" or "∨" on "CH•DISC".

The number of the disc selected is shown on the display.

STEP 2 Press  and remove the disc.

■ Ejecting all discs

Press and hold  until you hear a beep, then remove the disc.

Selecting, fast forwarding, and scanning tracks

■ Selecting a track

Press "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" to select the desired track number.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK".

■ **Scanning a disc**

STEP 1 Press “SCAN”.

The first 10 seconds of each track will be played.

STEP 2 Press the switch once again when the desired track is reached.

Selecting a disc

■ **Selecting a disc to play**

To select the desired disc, press “∧” or “∨” on “CH•DISC”.

■ **Scanning loaded discs**

STEP 1 Press and hold “SCAN” until you hear a beep.

The first 10 seconds of the first track on each disc will be played.

STEP 2 Press the switch once again when the desired disc is reached.

Random playback

■ **Current disc**

Press “1” (RAND).

Tracks are played in random order.

■ **All discs**

Press and hold “1” (RAND) until you hear a beep.

Tracks on all loaded discs are played in random order.

Repeating a track or a disc

■ **Repeating a Track**

Press “2” (RPT).

■ **Repeating a disc**

Press and hold “2” (RPT) until you hear a beep.

Switching the display

Press “TEXT”.

Each time the switch is pressed, the display changes in the order of Track no./Elapsed time → Disc title → Track title.

Canceling random, repeat and scan playback

Press “1” (RAND), “2” (RPT) or “SCAN” again.

When “LOAD”, “ERROR” or “WAIT” is shown on the display

“LOAD”: This indicates that the CD player has completed loading the disc.

“ERROR”: Make sure the label of the displayed disc is facing up, and then reinsert it in the player.

“WAIT”: Operation has stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press “CD•AUX”. Contact your Lexus dealer if the disc still cannot be played back.

Discs that can be used

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



CDs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

CD player protection feature

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

If discs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

Lens cleaners

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

NOTICE

■ **CDs and adapters that cannot be used**

Do not use the following types of CDs or 3 in. (8 cm) CD adapters.
Doing so may damage the CD player and/or the CD insert/eject function.



- CDs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm).



- Low-quality or deformed CDs.



- CDs with a transparent or translucent recording area.



- CDs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off.

⚠ NOTICE

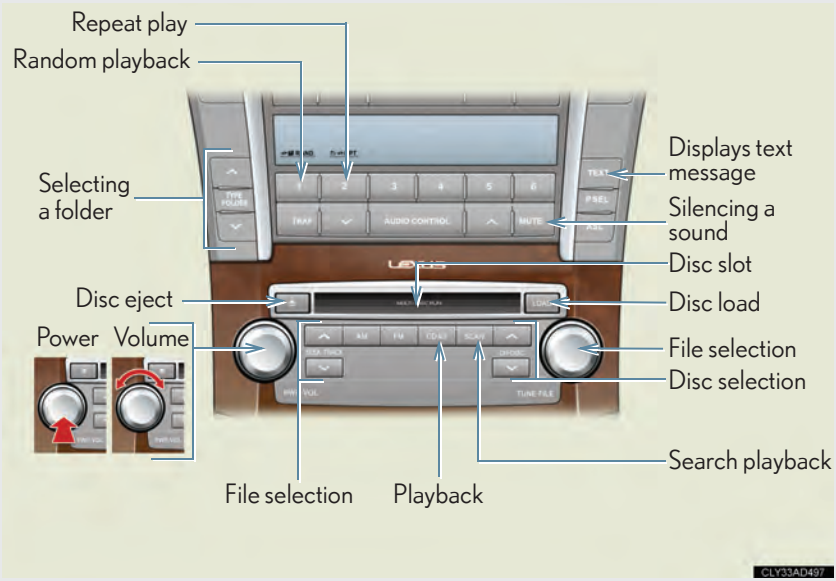
CD player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious damage to the CDs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than CDs into the CD slot.
- Do not apply oil to the CD player.
- Store CDs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the CD player.



- Do not insert more than one CD at a time.



Loading, ejecting and selecting MP3 and WMA discs

→P. 379, 380

Selecting a folder

■ Selecting folders one at a time

Press "∧" or "∨" on "TYPE FOLDER" to select the desired folder.

■ Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder

Press and hold "SCAN" until you hear a beep.
Press the switch once again, when the desired folder is reached.

■ **Returning to the first folder**
Press and hold "∨" on "TYPE FOLDER" until you hear a beep.

Selecting, fast forwarding and scanning files

■ **Selecting one file at a time**

Turn  or press "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" to select the desired file.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK".

■ **Selecting the desired file by cueing the files in the folder**
Press "SCAN".

Press the switch once again, when the desired file is reached.

Repeat play

■ **Repeating a file**
Press "2" (RPT).

■ **Repeating all of the files in a folder**
Press and hold "2" (RPT) until you hear a beep.

Random playback

■ **Playing files from a particular folder in random order**
Press "1" (RAND).

■ **Playing all the files on a disc in random order**
Press and hold "1" (RAND) until you hear a beep.

Switching the display

Press “TEXT”.

Each time the switch is pressed, the display changes in the order of the Folder no./File no./Elapsed time → Folder name → File name → Album title (MP3 only) → Track title → Artist name.

■ **Canceling random, repeat and scan playback**

Press “1” (RAND), “2” (RPT) or “SCAN” again.

■ **When “LOAD”, “ERROR” or “WAIT” is shown on the display.**

“LOAD”: This indicates that the CD player has completed loading the disc.

“ERROR”: Make sure the label of the displayed disc is facing up, and then reinsert it in the player.

“WAIT”: Operation has stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Wait for a while and then press “CD•AUX”. Contact your Lexus dealer if the disc still cannot be played back.

“NO MUSIC”: This indicates that MP3 or WMA files are not present on the disc.

■ **CD player protection feature**

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected while the CD player is being used.

■ **If discs are left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods**

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ **Lens cleaners**

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

■ MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

• Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2

• File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows.

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● Discs containing multi-session recordings

As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

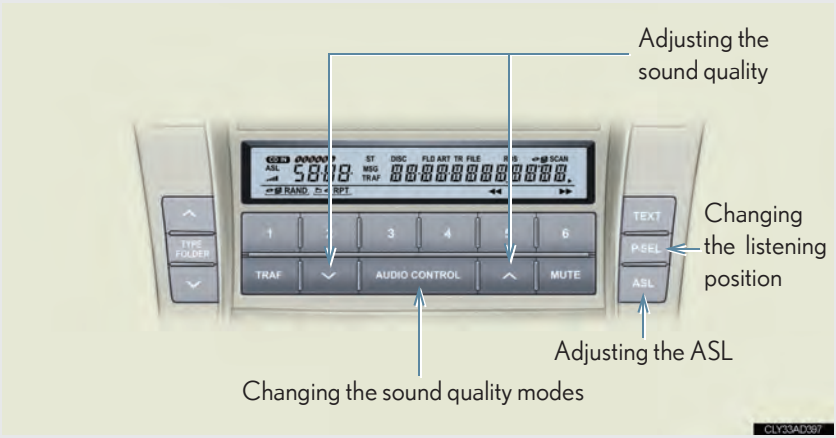
● Playback

- To play MP3 file with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **CDs and adapters that cannot be used**
→P. 383

■ **CD player precautions**
→P. 384



Adjusting the Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL)

Press "ASL".

The ASL switches between on and off modes each time the switch is pressed.

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the noise level as you drive your vehicle.

Changing the listening position

The sound feel setting can be changed to produce the best sound for each listening position.

Press "P•SEL" (position selector) to change the setting.

The display changes as follows each time the button is pressed.

Display	Listening position
“DRIVER”	Position best suited to the driver’s seat
“FRONT”	Position best suited to the driver’s and front passenger’s seats
“REAR”	Position best suited to the rear seats
“ALL”	Position best suited to all seats

Adjusting sound quality and volume balance

Changing sound quality modes

Press “AUDIO CONTROL”.

Pressing the button changes the sound mode in the following order.

“BAS”→“MID”→“TRE”→“FAd”→“BAL”

Adjusting sound quality

Press “∧” or “∨” to adjust the level.

Sound quality mode	Mode displayed	Level	Press ∨	Press ∧
Bass*	“BAS”	-5 to 5	Low	High
Mid-range*	“MID”	-5 to 5		
Treble*	“TRE”	-5 to 5		
Front/rear volume balance	“FAd”	F7 to R7	Shifts to rear	Shifts to front
Left/right volume balance	“BAL”	L7 to R7	Shifts to left	Shifts to right

*: The sound quality level is adjusted individually in each AM·FM or CD mode.

Using the AUX port

This port can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.

STEP 1



Open the cover and connect the portable audio device.

STEP 2 Press "CD•AUX".

■ **Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system**

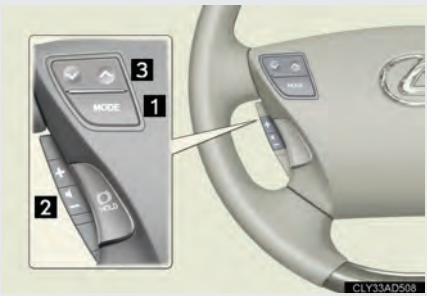
The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

■ **When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet**

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

Using the steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.



1 Turns the power on, selects audio source
2 Volume
3 Radio mode: Selects radio stations
CD mode: Selects tracks, files (MP3 and WMA) and discs

Turning on the power

Press "MODE" when the audio system is turned off.

The audio system can be turned off by holding until you hear a beep.

Changing the audio source

Press "MODE" when the audio system is turned on. The audio source changes as follows each time the switch is pressed. If no discs are inserted in the player, or if the external device is not connected, that mode will be skipped.

FM1→FM2→CD player→AUX→AM

Adjusting the volume

Pull "+" to increase the volume and "-" to decrease the volume.

Hold up the switch to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

Selecting a radio station

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select the radio mode.

STEP 2 Press "∧" or "∨" on  to select a radio station.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on  until you hear a beep.

Selecting a track/file

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select the CD mode.

STEP 2 Press "∧" or "∨" on  to select the desired track/file.

Selecting a disc

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select the CD mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on  until you hear a beep.

Canceling automatic selection of a radio station

Press the same switch.

CAUTION

To reduce the risk of an accident

Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

CD and (optional) DVD player with changer, and AM/FM radio

Press "AUDIO" to display the audio control screen.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

▶ Type A (DVD player with changer, and AM/FM radio)



▶ Type B (DVD player with changer, and AM/FM radio)



▶ Type C (CD player with changer, and AM/FM radio)



The audio control screen may differ slightly depending on the types of audio equipped.

CD player: Plays audio CDs, CD text, MP3 discs and WMA discs.

DVD player: Plays audio CDs, CD text, video CDs, MP3 discs, WMA discs, DVD video discs and DVD audio discs.

Title	Page
Using the radio	P. 400
Using the CD/DVD player	P. 409
Playing an audio CD and MP3/WMA discs	P. 412
Playing DVD video/audio	P. 417
Playing a video CD	P. 430
CD/DVD player and DVD video disc information	P. 434
Listening to Bluetooth® audio	P. 444
Listening to a USB memory/iPod	P. 456
Optimal use of the audio/video system	P. 466
Using the AUX port	P. 468
Using the rear seat audio controls	P. 469
Using the steering wheel audio switches	P. 474

Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

⚠ CAUTION

■ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A. and Canada

● Part 15 of the FCC Rules

FCC Warning:
Any unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment will void the user's authority to operate this device.

● Laser products

- Do not take this unit apart or attempt to make any changes by yourself.
  This is an intricate unit that uses a laser pickup to retrieve information from the surface of compact discs. The laser is carefully shielded so that its rays remain inside the cabinet. Therefore, never try to disassemble the player or alter any of its parts since you may be exposed to laser rays and dangerous voltages.
- This product utilizes a laser.
  Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

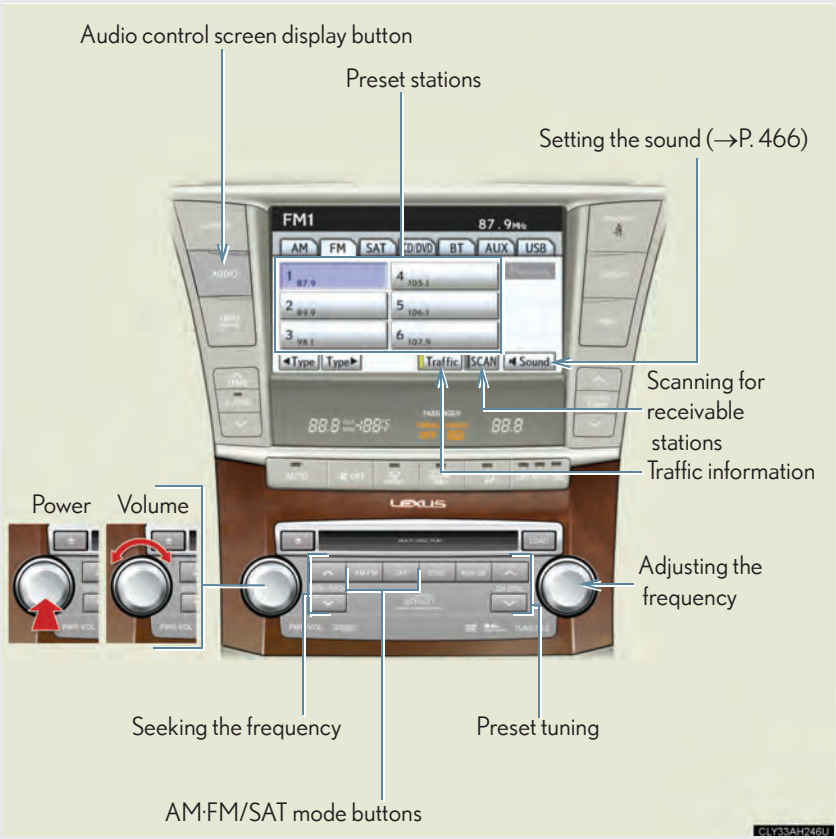
■ To avoid damaging the audio system

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids on the audio system.

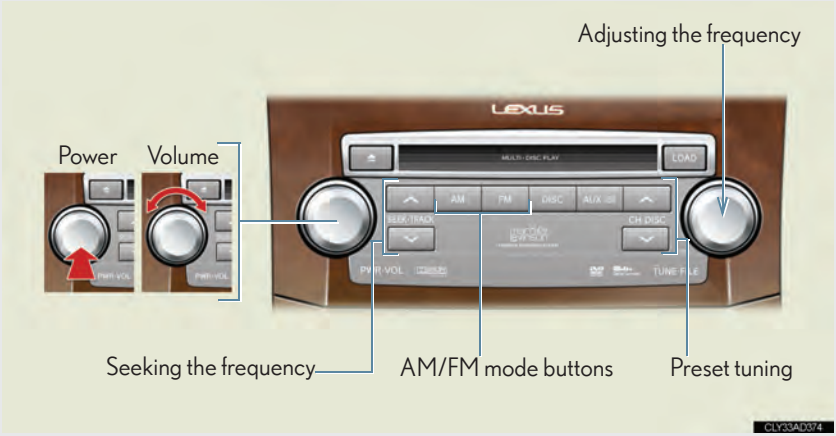
Type A and C: Press “AM•FM” or “SAT” and touch each tabs on the audio control screen to choose either an AM, FM band or SAT.

Type B: Press “AM” or “FM” and touch each tabs on the audio control screen to choose either an AM or FM band.

▶ Type A and C



▶ Type B



The audio control screen may differ slightly depending on the types of audio equipped.

Setting station presets

STEP 1 Search for desired stations by turning  or pressing "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK".

STEP 2 Touch and hold one of the preset stations (1 - 6) until you hear a beep.

Scanning radio stations (excluding XM® Satellite Radio)

■ Scanning the preset radio stations

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen until "P.SCAN" appears.

Preset stations will be played for a few seconds each.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired station is reached.

■ Scanning all radio stations within range

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen.

"SCAN" appears on the screen and all stations within range will be played for a few seconds each.

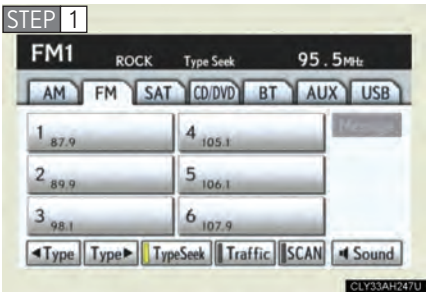
STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired station is reached.

RDS (Radio Data System) (type A and C)

This feature allows your radio to receive station identification information and program information (classical, jazz, etc.) from radio stations which broadcast this information.

Receiving RDS broadcasts

STEP 1



Touch "◀Type" or "Type▶" on the screen.

The type of program changes each time the button is pressed.

- "ROCK"
- "EASYLIS" (Easy listening)
- "CLS/JAZZ" (Classical music and Jazz)
- "R & B" (Rhythm and Blues)
- "INFORM" (Information)
- "RELIGION"
- "MISC" (Miscellaneous)
- "ALERT" (Emergency messages)

If the system receives no RDS stations, "NO - PTY" appears on the display.

When a program is set, "Type Seek" appears.

STEP 2 Touch "Type Seek" on the screen or press "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK".

The radio seeks or scans for stations by the relevant program type.

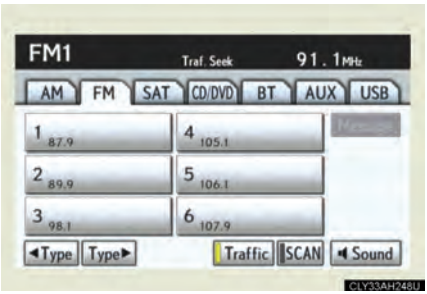
If no radio station of that type is found, "Nothing" appears on the screen.

Displaying radio text messages

If "Message" appears on the screen, a text message may be displayed. While the vehicle is stopped, touch "Message" to display the text message.

When you touch "Message Off", the display returns.

Traffic announcement



Touch "Traffic" on the screen.

"Traf.Seek" appears on the display, and the radio will start seeking any station broadcasting traffic program information.

If no traffic program station is found, "Nothing" appears on the display.

XM® Satellite Radio (type A and C)

Receiving XM® Satellite Radio

STEP 1 Press "SAT" or touch "SAT" tab on the screen.

The screen changes as follows each time "SAT" is pressed or touched.

"SAT1" → "SAT2" → "SAT3"

STEP 2 Turn  to select the desired channel in the all categories or press "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" to select the desired channel in the current category.

Setting XM® Satellite Radio channel presets

Select the desired channel. Touch and hold one of the preset stations (1 - 6) until you hear a beep.

Changing the channel category

Touch "◀ Type" or "Type ▶" on the screen.

Scanning XM® Satellite Radio channels

● Scanning channels in the current category

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen.
"SCAN" appears on the screen.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired channel is reached.

● Scanning preset channels

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen until "P.SCAN" appears.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired channel is reached.

Displaying the title and artist name



Touch "Text" on the screen.

The screen will show up to 16 characters.
Touch "Text" once again to return to the previous screen.

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

All preset stations are erased.

■ **Reception sensitivity**

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted inside the rear window. To maintain clear radio reception, do not attach metallic window tinting or other metallic objects to the antenna wire mounted inside the rear window.

■ **XM® Satellite Radio**

An XM® Satellite Radio is a tuner designed exclusively to receive broadcasts provided under a separate subscription. Availability is limited to the 48 contiguous states and 10 Canadian provinces.

- XM® subscriptions
  For detailed information about XM® Satellite Radio or to subscribe:
  U.S.A. —
  Visit on the web at www.xmradio.com or call 1-877-515-3987.
  Canada —
  Visit on the web at www.xmradio.ca or call 1-877-515-3987.
- Radio ID
  You will need the radio ID when activating XM® service or reporting a problem. Select "CH000" using , and the receiver's 8-character ID number will appear.
- Satellite tuner
  The tuner supports only Audio Services (Music and Talk) and the accompanying Text Information of XM® Satellite Radio.

■ **If the satellite radio does not operate normally**

If a problem occurs with the XM® tuner, a message will appear on the display. Refer to the table below to identify the problem, and take the suggested corrective action.

"ANTENNA"	The XM® antenna is not connected. Check whether the XM® antenna cable is attached securely.
	There is a short-circuit in the antenna or the surrounding antenna cable. See a Lexus certified dealer.
"UNAUTH"	You have not subscribed to the XM® Satellite Radio. The radio is being updated with the latest encryption code. Contact the XM® Satellite Radio for subscription information. When a contract is canceled, you can choose the "CH000" and all free-to-air channels.
	The premium channel you selected is not authorized. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel. If you want to listen to the premium channel, contact the XM® Satellite Radio.
"NO SIGNAL"	The XM® signal is too weak at the current location. Wait until your vehicle reaches a location with a stronger signal.
"LOADING"	The unit is acquiring audio or program information. Wait until the unit has received the information.
"OFF AIR"	The channel you selected is not broadcasting any programming. Select another channel.
"-----"	There is no song/program title or artist name/feature associated with the channel at that time. No action needed.

"CH UNAVL"	The channel you selected is no longer available. Wait for about 2 seconds until the radio returns to the previous channel or "CH001". If it does not change automatically, select another channel.

Contact the XM® Listener Care Center at 1-877-515-3987.

■ **Certifications for the radio tuner**

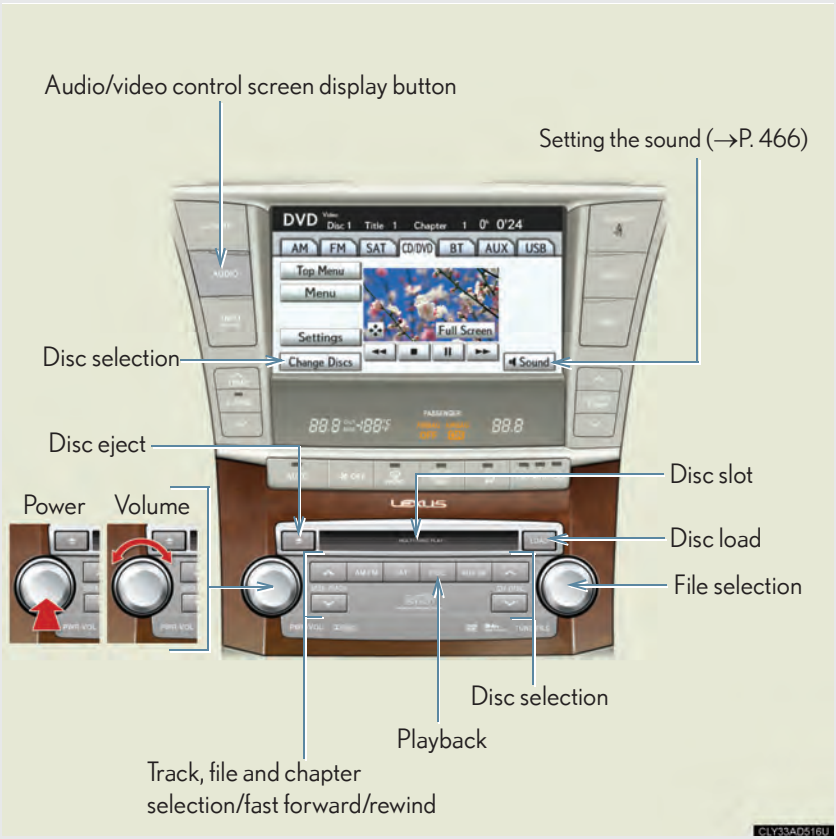
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by trying one or more of the following:

- Reorienting or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increasing the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connecting the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consulting the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

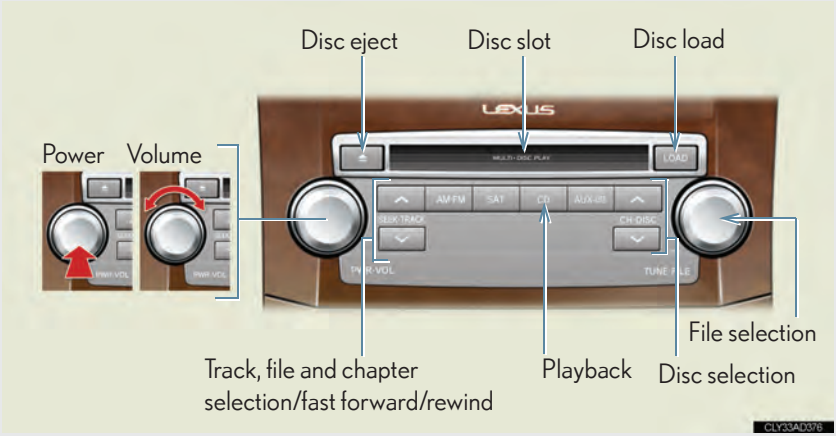
Using the CD/DVD* player

▶ Type A and B



*: If equipped

▶ Type C



The audio control screen may differ slightly depending on the types of audio equipped.

Loading discs

■ Loading a single disc

STEP 1 Press “LOAD”.

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the disc slot door opens.

■ Loading multiple discs

STEP 1 Press and hold “LOAD” until you hear a beep.

STEP 2 When the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, insert a disc after the disc slot door opens.

STEP 3 After inserting a disc, wait until the indicator changes from flashing amber to green, then insert the next disc after the disc slot door has opened.

STEP 4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 until you have inserted all discs.

To cancel the operation, press the “LOAD”, “DISC” or “CD”. If you do not insert a disc within 15 seconds, loading will be canceled automatically.

Ejecting discs

■ Ejecting a disc

STEP 1 Select the disc to be ejected.

STEP 2 Press ⏏ and remove the disc.

■ Ejecting all discs

Press and hold ⏏ until you hear a beep, then remove the discs.

Selecting a disc

■ To select a disc

Press "∧" or "∨" on "CH•DISC".

■ Selecting a disc from the disc list

STEP 1 Touch "Change Discs" on the screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired disc.

Insert a disc or press "DISC" or "CD" or touch "CD/DVD" tab or "CD" tab on the audio control screen with a disc inserted.

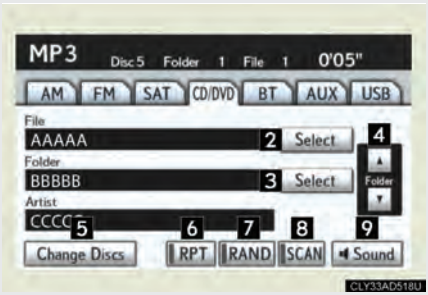
■ Control icon screen

▶ CD mode



1 Selecting a track
2 Selecting a file
3 4 Selecting a folder
5 Selecting a disc (→P. 411)
6 Repeat play
7 Random playback
8 Search playback
9 Setting the sound (→P. 466)

▶ MP3/WMA mode



The audio control screen may differ slightly depending on the types of audio equipped.

Selecting, fast forwarding and scanning tracks

■ Selecting a track

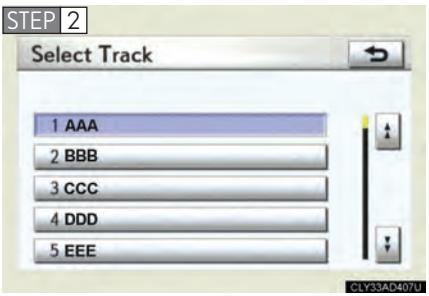
Press "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" to select the desired track number.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" until you hear a beep.

■ Selecting a track from the track list

STEP 1 Touch "Select" of "Track" on the screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired track number.

 or : changes the list by 5 track groups

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

■ Scanning a disc

STEP 1 Touch "SCAN" on the screen.

"SCAN" appears on the screen.

The first 10 seconds of each track will be played.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired track is reached.

■ Scanning loaded discs

STEP 1 Touch and hold "SCAN" on the screen until "D.SCAN" appears.

The first 10 seconds of the first track on each disc will be played.

STEP 2 Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired disc is reached.

Selecting a folder

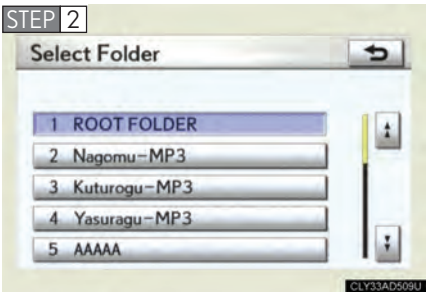
■ Selecting a folder

Touch "Folder ▲" or "▼" on the screen to select the next/previous folder.

■ Selecting a folder from the folder list

STEP 1 Touch "Select" of "Folder" on the screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired folder number.

▲▲ or ▼▼: changes the list by 5 folder groups

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

■ Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder

Touch and hold "SCAN" on the screen until "FLD.SCAN" appears. Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired folder is reached.

Selecting, fast forwarding and scanning files

Selecting one file at a time

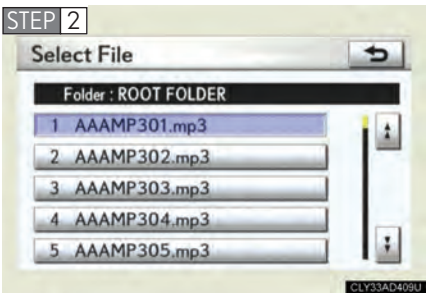
Turn  or press "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" to select the desired file.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" until you hear a beep.

Selecting a file from the file list

STEP 1 Touch "Select" of "File" on the screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired file number.

 or : changes the list by 5 file groups

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

Selecting a desired file by cueing the files in the folder

Touch "SCAN" on the screen.

Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired file is reached.

Random playback

▶ Audio CD

Current disc

Touch "RAND" on the screen.

Tracks are played in random order.

All discs

Touch and hold "RAND" on the screen until "D.RAND" appears.

Tracks on all loaded discs are played in random order.

▶ MP3/WMA disc

■ **Playing files from a particular folder in random order**
Touch "RAND" on the screen.

■ **Playing all the files on a disc in random order**
Touch and hold "RAND" on the screen until "FLD.RAND" appears.

Repeating a track or a disc

▶ Audio CD

■ **Repeating a track**
Touch "RPT" on the screen.

■ **Repeating a disc**
Touch and hold "RPT" on the screen until "D.RPT" appears.

▶ MP3/WMA disc

■ **Repeating a file**
Touch "RPT" on the screen.

■ **Repeating all of the files in a folder**
Touch and hold "RPT" on the screen until "FLD.RPT" appears.

■ **Canceling scan, random and repeat playback**

Touch "SCAN", "RAND", or "RPT" on the screen once again.

■ **Displaying the title and artist name**

If a CD-TEXT disc is inserted, the titles of the disc and track will be displayed. Up to 32 letters can be displayed.

■ **Error messages**

→P. 434

Playing DVD video/audio*

For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.

When a DVD video disc or DVD audio disc is inserted while driving, the main story will automatically be played. However, some discs may not be played automatically.

Insert a disc or press "DISC" or touch "CD/DVD" tab on the audio control screen with a disc inserted.

*: If equipped

Control icon screen

Touch any part of the screen if no icons are shown while watching a video, and the following screen appears.

▶ DVD video mode



▶ DVD audio mode



1 2 Menu screen appears
3 Settings screen appears (→P. 419)
4 Selecting a disc (→P. 411)
5 Display menu control key (→P. 420)
6 Returns to the full screen (only when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied)
7 Rewind
8 Stop
9 Pause
Touch ▶ to play
10 Fast forward
11 Setting the sound (→P. 466)

If ⃠ appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

The audio control screen may differ slightly depending on the types of audio equipped.

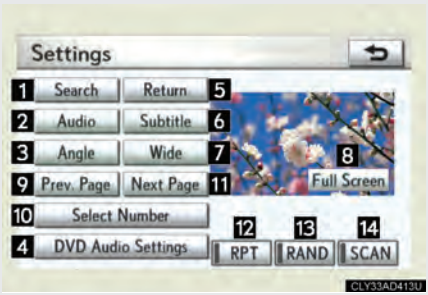
Settings screen

Touch "Settings" on the control icon screen, the following screen appears.

▶ DVD video mode



▶ DVD audio mode



1 Search by title/group number
2 Change audio language/ audio format
3 Change angle
4 Change initial setting
5 Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there
6 Change subtitle language
7 Change screen size
8 Returns to the full screen (only when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied)
9 Return to previous page
10 Select menu number
11 Go to next page
12 Repeat play
13 Random playback
14 Search playback

If appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

Fast forwarding/rewinding a disc

Touch and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀ on the control icon screen or press and hold "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" until you hear a beep.

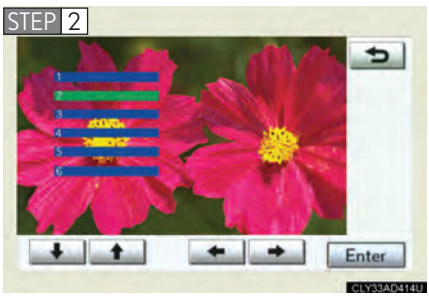
Slow playback

Touch ❚❚ and then touch ▶▶ on the control icon screen. Video is played slowly while you are touching ▶▶ .

Using the DVD menu

STEP 1 Touch "Menu" or "Top Menu" on the control icon screen.
Touch ✥ if the menu control key does not appear on the menu screen.

STEP 2



Touch menu item on the screen or touch ↓, ↑, ← or → to select a menu item and then touch "Enter" to select.

Note that specific items or the operating method differs from one DVD to another. Refer to the manual that comes with the DVD disc. (The above image is an example.)

Searching a desired screen

Searching by title (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Touch "Search" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired title number and then touch "OK".

Searching by group (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Touch "Search" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired group number and then touch "OK".

Playing a bonus group (DVD audio mode, if the DVD has bonus options)

STEP 1 Touch "Search" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired bonus group number and then touch "OK".

Searching by chapter/track

Press "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK·TRACK" to select the desired chapter/track.

Selecting a menu number (DVD audio mode)

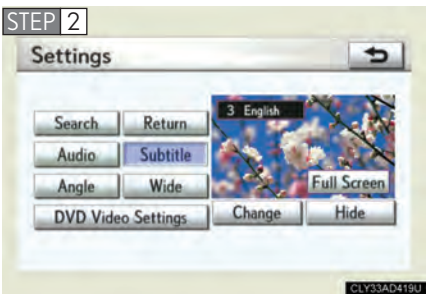
STEP 1 Touch "Select Number" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired menu number and then touch "OK".

Changing the subtitle language

STEP 1 Touch "Subtitle" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2



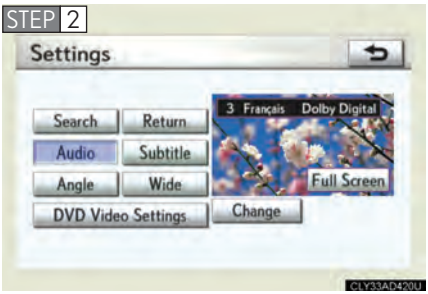
Each time you touch "Change", the next available language is selected.

"Hide": hides the subtitles

Changing the audio language (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Touch "Audio" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2

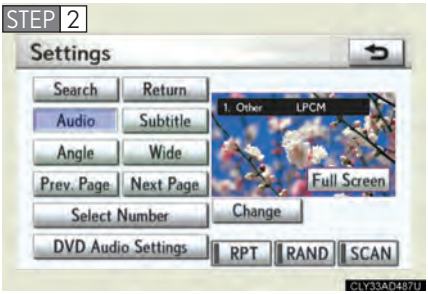


Each time you touch "Change", the next available language is selected.

Changing the audio format (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Touch "Audio" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2

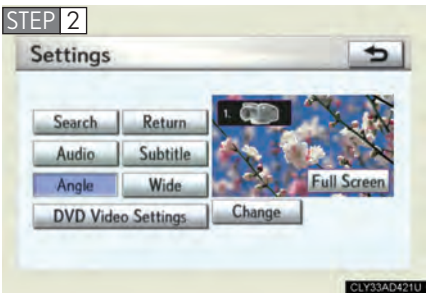


Each time you touch "Change", the next available audio format is selected.

Changing the angle (If the angle option is available)

STEP 1 Touch "Angle" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2

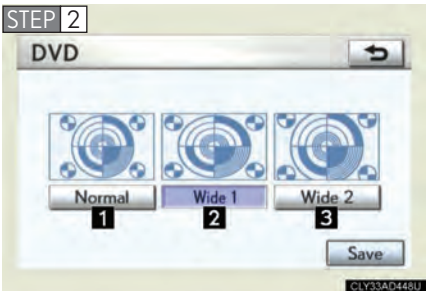


Each time you touch "Change", the next available angle is selected.

Changing screen size

STEP 1 Touch “Wide” on the “Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired switch and then touch “Save”.

1 Displays a 3 : 4 screen, with either side in black

2 Widens the 3 : 4 screen horizontally to fill the screen

3 Widens the 3 : 4 screen vertically and horizontally, in the same ratio, to fill the screen

Changing the page (DVD audio mode)

Touch “Prev. Page” or “Next Page” on the “Settings” screen to change the page.

Repeating a track (DVD audio mode)

Touch “RPT” on the “Settings” screen.

Random playback (DVD audio mode)

Touch “RAND” on the “Settings” screen.

Tracks are played in random order.

Scanning tracks (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Touch “SCAN” on the “Settings” screen.

The first 10 seconds of each track will be played.

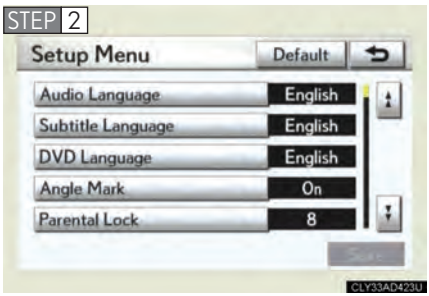
STEP 2 Touch “SCAN” once again when the desired track is reached.

Initial DVD setup

■ Displaying "Setup Menu" screen

STEP 1 Touch "DVD Video Settings" or "DVD Audio Settings" on the "Settings" screen.

STEP 2



After you change the initial settings, touch "Save".

"Default": restores default settings



■ Setting audio language (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Touch "Audio Language" on the "Setup Menu" screen.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 426)

■ Setting subtitle language

STEP 1 Touch "Subtitle Language" on the "Setup Menu" screen.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 426)

■ **Setting menu language**

STEP 1 Touch "DVD Language" on the "Setup Menu" screen.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, touch "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 426)

■ **Setting angle mark**

If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

STEP 1 Touch "Angle Mark" on the "Setup Menu" screen.

STEP 2 Select "On" or "Off".

■ **Setting parental lock (DVD video mode)**

STEP 1 Touch "Parental Lock" on the "Setup Menu" screen.

STEP 2 Input the 4-digit personal code and then touch "OK".

Touch  10 times to reset the personal code.

STEP 3 Select a parental level (1 - 8). (→P. 436)

■ **Setting the auto start**

Discs that are inserted while the vehicle is in motion will automatically start playing.

STEP 1 Touch "Auto Start" on the "Setup Menu" screen.

STEP 2 Select "On" or "Off".

Certain discs may not play if you set to "On".

■ **Setting sound dynamic range (DVD video mode)**

The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

STEP 1 Touch "Sound Dynamic Range" on the "Setup Menu" screen.

STEP 2 Select "MAX", "STD" or "MIN".

Entering a language code

If you touch "Other" on the "Audio Language" screen, "Subtitle Language" screen or "DVD Language" screen, you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code if that language is available.

Input the 4-digit language code and then touch "OK".

● Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
0514	English	0207	Bulgarian	0712	Galician
0618	French	0208	Bihari	0714	Guarani
0405	German	0209	Bislama	0721	Gujarati
0920	Italian	0214	Bengali	0801	Hausa
0519	Spanish	0215	Tibetan	0809	Hindi
2608	Chinese	0218	Breton	0818	Croatian
1412	Dutch	0301	Catalan	0821	Hungarian
1620	Portuguese	0315	Corsican	0825	Armenian
1922	Swedish	0319	Czech	0901	Interlingua
1821	Russian	0325	Welsh	0905	Interlingue
1115	Korean	0401	Danish	0911	Inupiak
0512	Greek	0426	Bhutani	0914	Indonesian
0101	Afar	0515	Esperanto	0919	Icelandic
0102	Abkhazian	0520	Estonian	0923	Hebrew
0106	Afrikaans	0521	Basque	1001	Japanese
0113	Amharic	0601	Persian	1009	Yiddish
0118	Arabic	0609	Finnish	1023	Javanese
0119	Assamese	0610	Fiji	1101	Georgian

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
0125	Aymara	0615	Faroese	1111	Kazakh
0126	Azerbaijani	0625	Frisian	1112	Greenlandic
0201	Bashkir	0701	Irish	1113	Cambodian
0205	Byelorussian	0704	Scots-Gaelic	1114	Kannada
1119	Kashmiri	1415	Norwegian	1914	Shona
1121	Kurdish	1503	Occitan	1915	Somali
1125	Kirghiz	1513	(Afan) Oromo	1917	Albanian
1201	Latin	1518	Oriya	1918	Serbian
1214	Lingala	1601	Panjabi	1919	Siswati
1215	Laothian	1612	Polish	1920	Sesotho
1220	Lithuanian	1619	Pashto, Pushto	1921	Sundanese
1222	Latvian	1721	Quechua	1923	Swahili
1307	Malagasy	1813	Rhaeto-Romance	2001	Tamil
1309	Maori	1814	Kirundi	2005	Telugu
1311	Macedonian	1815	Romanian	2007	Tajik
1312	Malayalam	1823	Kinyarwanda	2008	Thai
1314	Mongolian	1901	Sanskrit	2009	Tigrinya
1315	Moldavian	1904	Sindhi	2011	Turkmen
1318	Marathi	1907	Sangho	2012	Tagalog

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
1319	Malay	1908	Serbo-Croatian	2014	Setswana
1320	Maltese	1909	Sinhalese	2015	Tonga
1325	Burmese	1911	Slovak	2018	Turkish
1401	Nauru	1912	Slovenian	2019	Tsonga
1405	Nepali	1913	Samoan	2020	Tatar
2023	Twi	2209	Vietnamese	2515	Yoruba
2111	Ukrainian	2215	Volapük	2621	Zulu
2118	Urdu	2315	Wolof		
2126	Uzbek	2408	Xhosa		

■ When the menu screen is first displayed



This screen appears after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ When a rear passenger selects "Setup Menu"



To cancel the set up operation from the rear seat, touch "Play".

■ Canceling repeat, random and scan playback

Touch "RPT", "RAND" or "SCAN" on the screen once again.

■ Rear system lock

→P. 367

■ Error messages

If "Region code error" is displayed, check the region code printed on the DVD matches the player's region code.

If a different message is displayed: →P. 434

Playing a video CD*

For safety reasons, you can enjoy the visual contents of discs only when the vehicle is completely stopped with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode and the parking brake applied. While you are driving, only audio contents may be played.

Insert a disc or press "DISC" or touch "CD/DVD" tab on the audio control screen with a disc inserted.

Control icon screen

Touch any part of the screen if no icons are shown while watching a video, and the following screen appears.



1. Settings screen appears (→P. 431)
2. Selecting a disc (→P. 411)
3. Returns to the full screen (only when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied)
4. Rewind
5. Stop
6. Pause
   Touch ▶ to play
7. Fast forward
8. Setting the sound (→P. 466)

If 🚫 appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

The audio control screen may differ slightly depending on the types of audio equipped.

*: If equipped

Settings screen

Touch "Settings" on the control icon screen, the following screen appears.



1. Change sound-multiplex
2. Return to previous page
3. Select menu number (→P. 421)
4. Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there
5. Change screen size (→P. 423)
6. Go to next page
7. Returns to the full screen (only when the vehicle is completely stopped and the parking brake is applied)

If appears on the screen when you touch an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

Selecting a track

Press "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" to select the desired track number.

Fast forwarding/rewinding a video CD

Touch and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀ on the control icon screen or press and hold "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" until you hear a beep.

Slow playback

Touch ❚❚ and then touch ▶▶ on the control icon screen. Video is played slowly while you are touching ▶▶ .

Using the video CD menu

Touch "Return" on the "Settings" screen.

Refer to the manual that comes with the video CD for specific menu items.

Changing the sound-multiplex mode

Touch "Main/Sub" on the "Settings" screen. The mode cycles through each time "Main/Sub" is touched.

"Main" → "Sub" → "Main/Sub"



Changing the page

▶ Disc menu displaying
Touch “Prev. Page” or “Next Page” on the “Settings” screen to change the previous/next page.

▶ While playing the video
Touch “Prev. Page” or “Next Page” on the “Settings” screen to change the previous/next track.

■ **Error messages**

→P. 434

Error messages

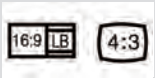
Refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

Message	Cause	Correction Procedures
No disc found.	There is no disc in the player.	Insert a disc.
Check CD X or Check disc X	• The disc X is dirty or damaged. • The disc X is inserted upside down. • The disc X is not playable with the player.	• Clean the disc. • Insert the disc correctly. • Confirm the disc is playable with the player.
CD error or DVD error	• There is a malfunction within the system. • Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player.	• Eject the disc. • Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down.
No music files found.	This indicates that no playable data is included in the disc.	Eject the disc.

DVD video discs

- The DVD player conforms to NTSC color TV formats.
- Region code: Some DVD video discs have a region code indicating the region in which you can use the DVD video disc. If the DVD video disc is not labeled as "ALL" or "1", you cannot use it on this DVD player. If you attempt to play an inappropriate DVD video disc on this player, "Region code error" appears on the screen. Even if the DVD video disc does not have a region code, you may not be able to use it.

■ Symbols shown on DVD video discs

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates NTSC format
	Indicates the number of audio tracks
	Indicates the number of language subtitles
	Indicates the number of angles
	Indicates the screen display ratios available Wide screen: 16:9 Standard: 4:3
	Indicates the disc's region code ALL: in all countries Number: region code

■ **Discs that can be used**

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.

▶ With CD player



▶ With DVD player



CDs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

■ **CD/DVD player protection feature**

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

■ **If discs are left inside the CD/DVD player or in the ejected position for extended periods**

Discs may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ **Lens cleaners**

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD/DVD player.

■ **DVD video disc information**

● DVD video discs
A DVD video disc is a Digital Versatile Disc that holds video. DVD video discs have adopted “MPEG2”, one of the world standards of digital compression technologies. The picture data is compressed by 1/40 on average and stored. Variable rate encoded technology in which the volume of data assigned to the picture is changed depending on the picture format has also been adopted. Audio data is stored using PCM and Dolby digital, which enables higher quality of sound. Furthermore, multi-angle and multi-language features will also help you enjoy the more advanced technology of DVD video.

- Viewer restrictions
  This feature limits what can be viewed in conformity with the level of restrictions of the country. The level of restrictions varies depending on the DVD video disc. Some DVD video discs cannot be played at all, or violent scenes are skipped or replaced with other scenes.

  Level 1: DVD video discs for children can be played.

  Level 2-7: DVD video discs for children and G-rated movies can be played.

  Level 8: All types of DVD video discs can be played.
- Multi-angle option
  You can enjoy the same scene from different angles.
- Multi-language option
  You can select the subtitle and audio languages.
- Region codes
  The region codes are provided on DVD players and DVD discs. If the DVD video disc does not have the same region code as the DVD player, you cannot play the disc on the DVD player. (→P. 434)
- Audio
  This DVD player can play linear PCM, Dolby Digital and MPEG audio format DVDs. Other decoded types cannot be played.
- Title and chapter
  Video and audio programs stored in DVD video discs are divided into parts by title and chapter.

  Title: The largest unit of the video and audio programs stored on DVD video discs. Usually, one movie, one album, or one audio program is assigned as a title.

  Chapter: A title is comprised of one or more chapters.

Sound

● Dolby Digital

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories
"Dolby", "Pro Logic", and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by method claims of certain U. S. patents and other intellectual property rights owned by Macrovision Corporation and other rights owners. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision Corporation, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision Corporation.
Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

● DTS

"DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater System, Inc.

MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
  CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
  MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels (including the root)
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

- Discs containing multi-session recordings

  As the audio system is compatible with multi-sessions, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

- ID3 and WMA tags

  ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

  The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

  WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

- MP3 and WMA playback

  When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

  Discs that contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data cannot be played.

- Extensions

  If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they may be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

⚠ CAUTION

■ DVD video precaution

Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or startled when you change to a different audio source.

Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body or pose a driving hazard. Keep this in mind when you adjust the volume.

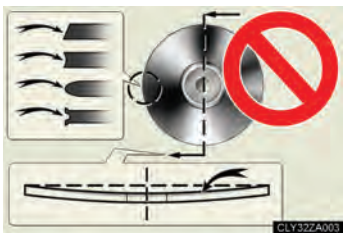
NOTICE

Discs and adapters that cannot be used

Do not use the following types of discs, 3 in. (8 cm) disc adapters or Dual Discs. Doing so may damage the player and/or disc insert/eject function.



- Discs that have a diameter that is not 4.7 in. (12 cm).



- Low-quality or deformed discs.



- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area.



- Discs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off.

NOTICE

Player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.

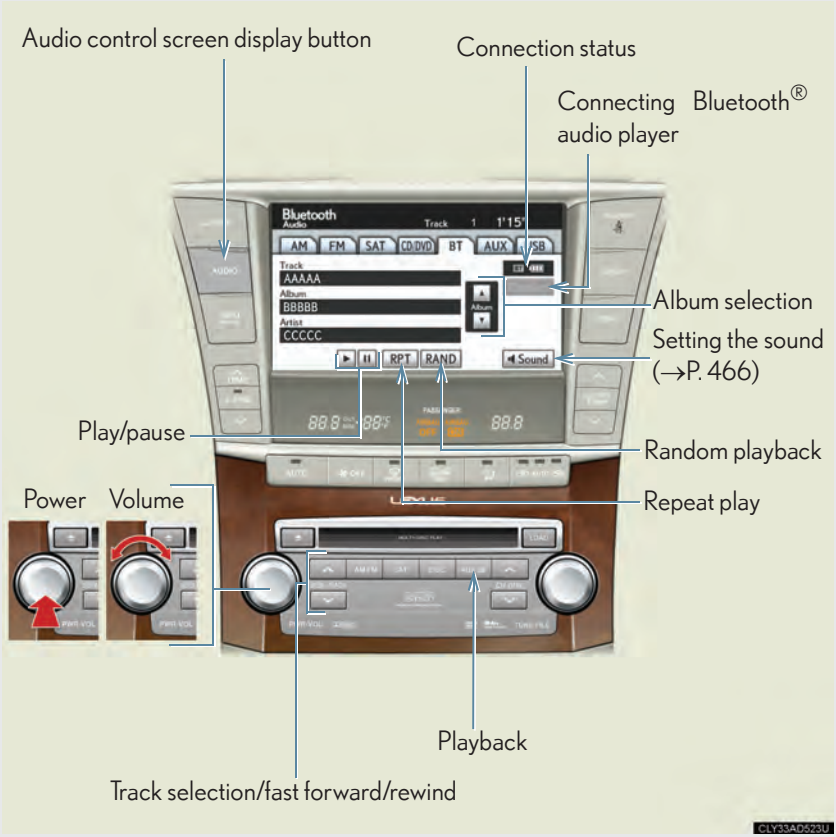


- Do not insert more than one disc at a time.

Listening to Bluetooth® audio

The Bluetooth® audio system enables users to enjoy music played on a portable player from the vehicle speaker via wireless communication.
This audio system supports Bluetooth®, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your portable player does not support Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® audio system will not function.

Press "AUX•USB" until the "BT" tab appears or touch the "BT" tab on the audio control screen.



The audio control screen may differ slightly depending on the types of audio equipped.

Status display

You can check such indicators as signal strength and battery charge on the screen.



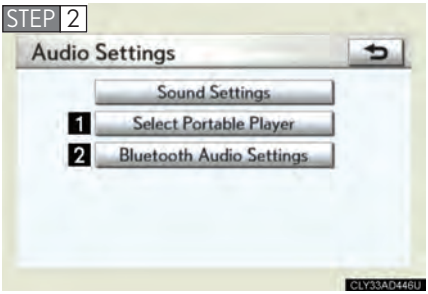
1 Connection status
2 Battery charge

Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Blue: Good Yellow: Bad : Not connected
Battery charge	Full ⟷ Empty

Setting up the Bluetooth® audio system

STEP 1 Press "SETUP".

STEP 2



Touch "Audio" on the "Setup" screen.

1 Select portable player
2 Setting up Bluetooth® audio

Select portable player

STEP 1 Touch "Select Portable Player" on the "Audio Settings" screen.

STEP 2



A portable player can be selected for connection.

Where no player is registered, "Empty" is displayed.

When "Portable Player Info" is touched, the following screen is displayed:



"Device Name" and "Connection Method" can be changed.

● Changing the device name

STEP 1 Touch "Edit" on the "Portable Player Information" screen.

STEP 2 Enter the desired name.

● Changing the connection method



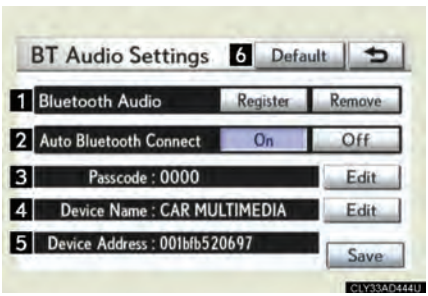
Touch "From Vehicle" or "From Portable Player".

"From Vehicle": Connect the audio system to the portable player.

"From Portable Player": Connect the portable player to the audio system.

Setting up Bluetooth® audio

Touch "Bluetooth* Audio Settings" on the "Audio Settings" screen.



1 Register/remove Bluetooth® audio

2 Automatic connection on/off (→P. 450)

3 Display passcode

4 Display device name

5 Display device address

6 Restore default settings

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

● Registering Bluetooth® audio

STEP 1 Touch “Register” on the “BT Audio Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Enter the passcode into the portable player.

A message is shown if connection has been successful.

If connection fails, a message will be displayed and connection will be re-attempted.

● Removing Bluetooth® audio

STEP 1 Touch “Remove” on the “BT Audio Settings” screen.

STEP 2



Touch the player to remove.

A confirmation message will be displayed, touch “Yes” to remove the player.

● Changing the passcode

STEP 1 Touch "Edit" of "Passcode" on the "BT Audio Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Enter the desired passcode.

The passcode can be between 4 and 8 characters in length, and is set to "0000" by default.

● Changing the device name

STEP 1 Touch "Edit" of "Device Name" on the "BT Audio Settings" screen.

STEP 2 Enter the desired name.

● Restoring the default settings

STEP 1 Touch "Default" on the "BT Audio Settings" screen.

STEP 2 A confirmation message will be displayed, touch "Yes" to restore the default settings.

■ **When setting the connection method to "From Portable Player"**

● Connection methods differ by audio player. Consult your audio player's manual.

● Automatic connection cannot be set to "On".

■ **When using Bluetooth® audio player**

A confirmation message will be displayed if an attempt is made to remove a portable player.

Touch "Yes" to disconnect and remove the player.

Connecting Bluetooth® audio player

To use the Bluetooth® audio system, you need to enter your portable player into the system. Once registered, you can enjoy your music on the vehicle's audio system. (→P. 447)

For the operation procedure for the portable player, consult your player's accompanying instruction manual.

When the connection method is set to "From Vehicle"

▶ When auto connection is "On"

When the portable player is on standby for the connection, it will be automatically connected whenever the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in either ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

▶ When auto connection is "Off"

Manually connect the portable player in accordance with the following procedure.



Touch "Connect".

A message is shown if connection has been successful.

If connection fails, a message will be displayed and connection will be re-attempted.

When the connection method is set to "From Portable Player"

Operate the portable player and connect it to the Bluetooth® audio system.



Touch "Connect".

A message is shown if connection has been successful.

If connection fails, a message will be displayed and connection will be re-attempted.

Playing Bluetooth® audio



Touch ▶ or ⏸ to play/pause.

Some titles may not be displayed depending on the type of portable player.

Selecting a track/album

Selecting a track

Press "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" to select the desired track number.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" until you hear a beep.

Selecting an album



Touch "Album ▲" or "▼" to select the desired album.

Random playback

Touch "RAND" on the screen.

Tracks are played in random order.

Repeating a track

Touch "RPT" on the screen.

■ **When using the Bluetooth® audio system**

- In the following conditions, the system may not function.
  - If the portable player is turned off
  - If the portable player is not connected
  - If the portable player's battery is low
- There may be a delay if phone connection is carried out during Bluetooth® audio play.
- Depending on the type of portable player that is connected to the system, operation may differ slightly and certain functions may not be available.

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

The antenna is built in to the instrument panel. If the portable player is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box, or is touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ **Battery charge/signal status**

This display may not correspond exactly with the portable player, and this system does not have a charging function.

■ **About Bluetooth®**



Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ **Compatible models**

Portable players must correspond to the specifications.

- Bluetooth® specifications:
  Ver. 1.1, or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.2 or higher)
- Profiles:
  - A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0, or higher (Conformed: Ver. 1.2)
  - AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Conformed: Ver. 1.3)

However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable player.

Please go to the website at http://www.lexus.com/ to find approved portable players for this system.

■ **Certification**

→P. 517

■ **Reconnecting the portable player**

If the portable player is disconnected with a poor reception when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system automatically reconnects the portable player.

If you have switched off the portable player yourself, follow the instructions below to reconnect:

- Select the portable player again
- Enter the portable player

■ **Canceling random and repeat playback**

Touch "RAND" or "RPT" on the screen once again.

■ **When transferring ownership of your vehicle**

Be sure to remove the registered portable player from the system.

CAUTION

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure. This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

While driving

Do not use the portable player or connect the Bluetooth® system.

NOTICE

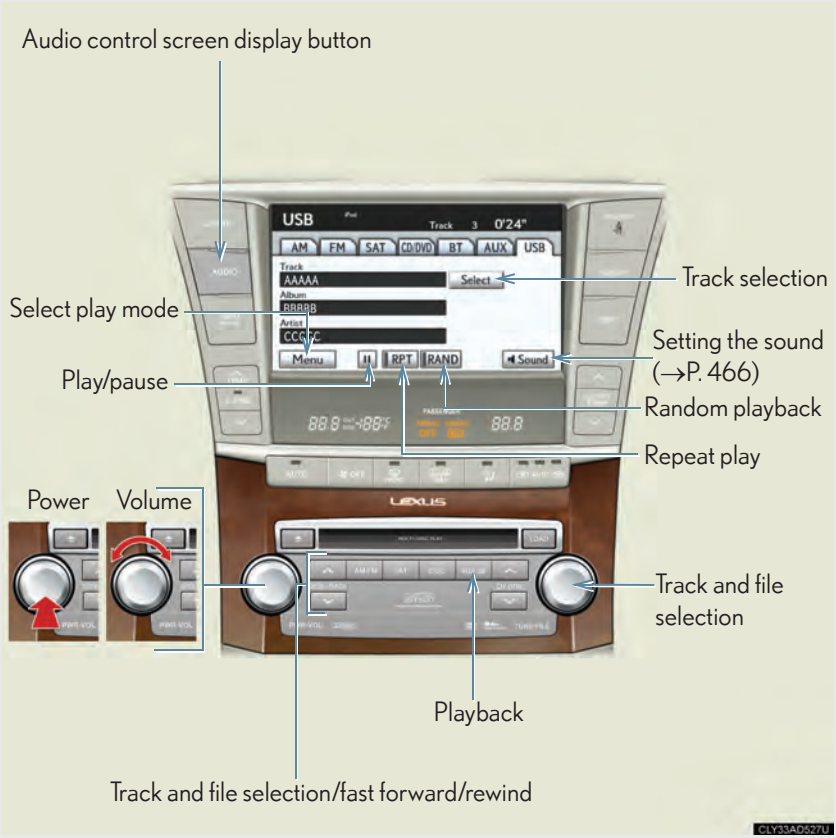
When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your portable player in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the portable player.

Listening to a USB memory/iPod

Connecting a USB memory or iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers.

Press "AUX•USB" until the "USB" tab appears or touch the "USB" tab on the audio control screen.



The above illustration shows an iPod screen.

The audio control screen may differ slightly depending on the types of audio equipped.

Connecting the USB memory/iPod



Open the cover and connect the player using a cable.

Turn on the power of the USB memory or iPod if it is not turned on.

Playing an iPod

Play/pause



Touch ▶ or ❚❚ to play/pause.

Selecting a play mode

STEP 1 Touch "Menu" on the screen.

STEP 2



Select the desired play mode by touching the "Playlists", "Artists", "Albums", "Songs", "Podcasts", "Audiobooks", "Genres" or "Composers" tabs.

Selecting a folder (USB memory)

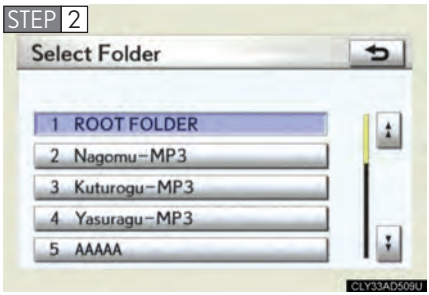
■ Selecting a folder

Touch "Folder ▲" or "▼" on the screen to select the next/previous folder.

■ Selecting a folder from the list

STEP 1 Touch "Select" of "Folder" on the screen.

STEP 2



Touch the desired folder number.

▲▲ or ▼▼: changes the list by 5 folder groups

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving.

■ Selecting the desired folder by cueing the first file of each folder

Touch and hold "SCAN" on the screen until "FLD.SCAN" appears. Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired folder is reached.

Selecting a file/track

■ Selecting one file/track at a time

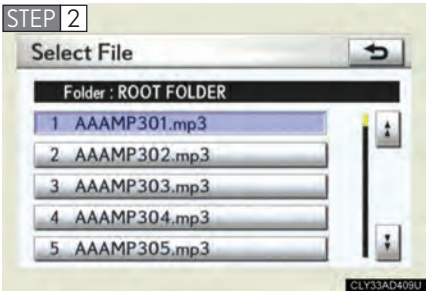
Turn  or press "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" to select the desired file/track.

To fast forward or rewind, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on "SEEK•TRACK" until you hear a beep.

■ **Selecting a file/track from the list**

STEP 1 Touch "Select" of "File"/"Track".

STEP 2



Touch the desired file/track number.

or : changes the list by 5 file/track groups

This function is available only when the vehicle is not moving (USB memory).

■ **Selecting the desired file by cueing the files in the folder (USB memory)**

Touch "SCAN" on the screen.

Touch "SCAN" once again when the desired file is reached.

Random playback

▶ USB memory

■ **Playing files from a particular folder in random order**

Touch "RAND" on the screen.

■ **Playing the all files from a USB memory in random order**

Touch and hold "RAND" on the screen until "FLD.RAND" appears.

▶ iPod

■ **Playing tracks from one playlist or album in random order**

Touch "RAND" on the screen.

■ **Playing tracks all the playlists or albums in random order**

Touch and hold "RAND" on the screen until "A.RAND" appears.

Repeat play

■ Repeating a file/track

Touch “RPT” on the screen.

■ Repeating all of the files in a folder (USB memory)

Touch and hold “RPT” on the screen until “FLD.RPT” appears.

■ Canceling scan, repeat and random playback

Touch “SCAN”, “RPT” or “RAND” on the screen once again.

■ About iPod

- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

■ iPod functions

- When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. If a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve the problem.
- While connected to the system, the iPod cannot be operated with its own controls. It is necessary to use the controls of the vehicle's audio system instead.

■ USB memory functions

- Depending on the USB memory that is connected to the system, the device itself may not be operable and certain functions may not be available. If the device is inoperable or a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve the problem.
- If the USB memory still does not begin operation after being disconnected and reconnected, format the memory.

iPod problems

To resolve most problems encountered when using your iPod, disconnect your iPod from the vehicle iPod connection and reset it. For instructions on how to reset your iPod, refer to your iPod Owner's Manual.

Error messages for iPod

"Connection error.": This indicates a problem in the iPod or its connection.

"There are no files available for playback.": This indicates that there is no music data in the iPod.

"No items available.": This indicates that some available songs are not found in a selected playlist.

Error messages for USB memory

"Connection error.": This indicates a problem in the USB memory or its connection.

"There are no files available for playback.": This indicates that no MP3/WMA files are included in the USB memory.

Compatible models

Model	Generation	Software version
iPod	5th generation	Ver. 1.2.0 or higher
iPod nano	1st generation	Ver. 1.3.0 or higher
	2nd generation	Ver. 1.1.2 or higher
	3rd generation	Ver. 1.0.0 or higher
iPod touch	1st generation	Ver. 1.1.0 or higher
iPod classic	1st generation	Ver. 1.0.0 or higher

Depending on differences between models or software version etc., some models listed above might be incompatible with this system.
iPod 4th generation and earlier models are not compatible with this system.
iPhone, iPod mini, iPod shuffle and iPod photo are not compatible with this system.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum number of lists in device: 9999
- Maximum number of songs in device: 65535
- Maximum number of songs per list: 65535

USB memory

- Compatible devices
  USB memory that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback
- Compatible device formats
  The following device formats can be used:
  - USB communication formats: USB2.0 FS (12 Mbps)
  - File formats: FAT16/32 (Windows)
  - Correspondence class: Mass storage class

  MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

  Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:
  - Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
  - Maximum number of folders in a device: 999 (including the root)
  - Maximum number of files in a device: 65025
  - Maximum number of files per folder: 255
- MP3 and WMA files
  MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.
  Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size using MP3 compression.
  WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.
  This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.
  There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2.5)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
  MPEG2.5: 8, 11.025, 12 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-160 (kbps)
  MPEG2.5: 32-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  HIGH PROFILE 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  HIGH PROFILE 32-320 (kbps, VBR)

● File names
The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● ID3 and WMA tags
ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.
The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)
WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

- When a device containing MP3 or WMA files is connected, all files in the USB memory device are checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend that you do not include any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.
- When the USB device is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB device will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB device will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be skipped (not played).

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **While driving**

Do not connect or disconnect an iPod or USB memory or operate the controls while driving. Doing so may lead to inattention to driving and cause a serious accident.

NOTICE

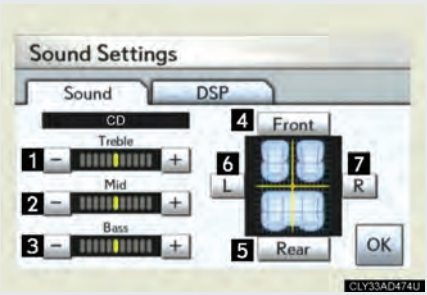
■ To prevent damage to the player or its terminal

- Do not leave your portable player in the vehicle. The temperature inside of the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the player.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the player while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.



Touch "Sound" to adjust the sound settings.

▶ "Sound" tab



1 2 3 Touch "-" and "+" to adjust the treble, mid or bass to a level between -5 to 5.

4 5 Touch "Front" and "Rear" to adjust the front/rear audio balance to a level between F7 and R7.

6 7 Touch "L" and "R" to adjust the left/right audio balance to a level between L7 and R7.

▶ "DSP" tab



1 Surround on/off (with DVD player)
2 Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL) on/off

■ **The sound quality level is adjusted individually**

The treble, mid and bass levels can be adjusted for the each audio mode separately.

■ **About Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL)**

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the vehicle speed, wind noise or other noise.

Using the AUX port

This port can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers.

STEP 1



Open the cover and connect the portable audio device.

STEP 2 Press "AUX•USB" or touch "AUX" tab on the audio control screen.

■ **Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system**

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

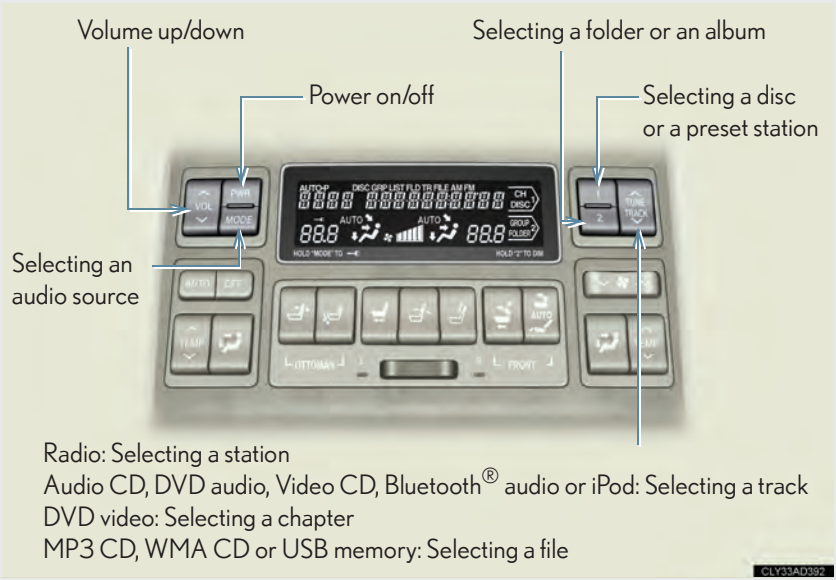
■ **When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet**

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

Using the rear seat audio controls*

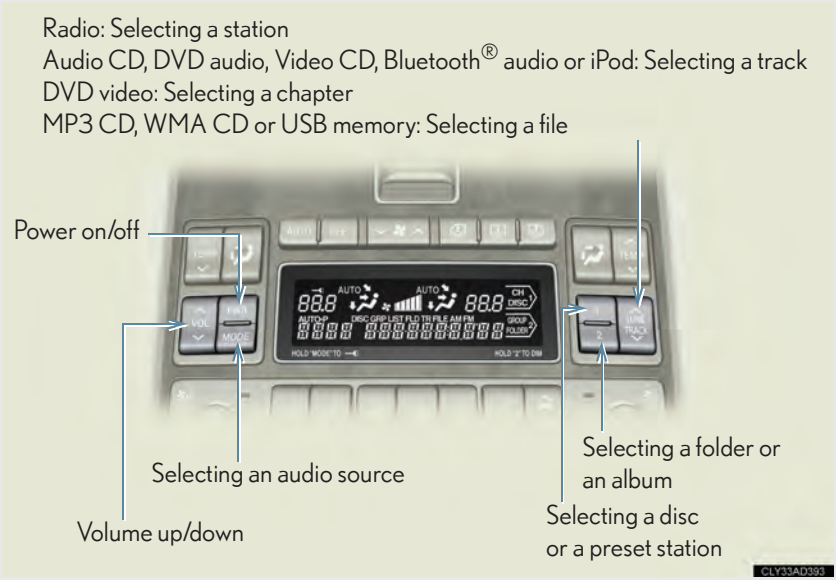
Some front audio features can be controlled from the rear seats.

▶ 5-seat models



*: If equipped

▶ 4-seat models



Turning the power on/off

Press “PWR” to turn the front audio system on.

Pressing the button again turns the system off.

Changing the audio source

Press "MODE" to change the audio source. The audio source changes as follows each time the button is pressed. If no discs are inserted in the player, or if the external device is not connected, that mode will be skipped.

FM1→FM2→DVD player→Bluetooth® audio player→VTR→AUX→iPod or USB memory→AM

Adjusting the volume

Press "∧" on "VOL" to increase the volume and "∨" to decrease the volume.

Press and hold the button to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

Selecting a radio station

■ Select a radio station

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select a frequency band.

STEP 2 Press "∧" or "∨" on "TUNE TRACK" to select a radio station.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold "TUNE TRACK" until you hear a beep.

■ Select a preset station

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select a frequency band.

STEP 2 Press "1" (CH) to select a preset station.

Selecting a track

▶ Audio CD, DVD audio or Video CD

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select the DVD player.

STEP 2 Press "1" (DISC) to select a disc.

STEP 3 Press "∧" or "∨" on "TUNE TRACK" to select a track.

▶ Bluetooth® audio player

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select the Bluetooth® audio player.

STEP 2 Press "2" to select an album.

STEP 3 Press "∧" or "∨" on "TUNE TRACK" to select a track.

▶ iPod

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select the iPod.

STEP 2 Press "∧" or "∨" on "TUNE TRACK" to select a track.

Selecting a chapter (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select the DVD player.

STEP 2 Press "1" (DISC) to select a disc.

STEP 3 Press "∧" or "∨" on "TUNE TRACK" to select a chapter.

Selecting a file

▶ MP3 CD or WMA CD

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select the DVD player.

STEP 2 Press "1" (DISC) to select a disc.

STEP 3 Press "2" (FOLDER) to select a folder.

STEP 4 Press "∧" or "∨" on "TUNE TRACK" to select a file.

▶ USB memory

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select the USB memory.

STEP 2 Press "2" (FOLDER) to select a folder.

STEP 3 Press "∧" or "∨" on "TUNE TRACK" to select a file.

■ **Fast forwarding or rewinding a track, chapter, or file**

Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on "TUNE TRACK".

■ **Button lock function**

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. (→P. 367)

■ **Rear control panel illumination off function**

Control panel illumination on the rear armrest can be turned off. (→P. 368)

■ **When "ERROR", "WAIT" or "NO MUSIC" is shown on the display**

Refer to the following and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

"ERROR": This indicates a trouble either in the disc or inside the player. The disc may be dirty, damaged, or inserted up-side down.

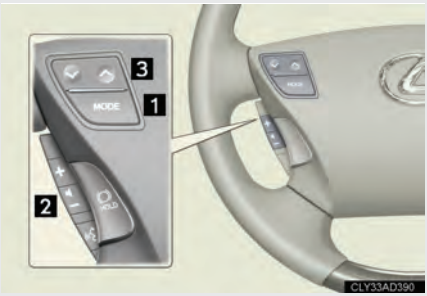
"WAIT": Operation is stopped due to a high temperature inside the player. Eject the disc and allow the player to cool down.

"NO MUSIC": This indicates that an MP3/WMA file is not included in the disc.

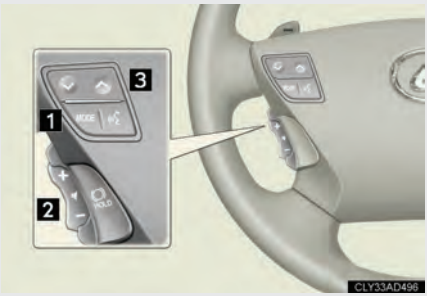
Using the steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.

▶ Without paddle shift switches



▶ With paddle shift switches



1 Turns the power on, selects audio source

2 Volume

3 Radio mode: Selects radio stations

CD mode: Selects tracks, files (MP3 and WMA) and discs

DVD mode: Selects tracks, chapters and discs

Bluetooth® audio player mode:

Selects tracks and albums

iPod mode: Selects tracks

USB memory mode:

Selects files and folders

Turning on the power

Press “MODE” when the audio system is turned off.

The audio system can be turned off by holding until you hear a beep.

Changing the audio source

Press “MODE” when the audio system is turned on. The audio source changes as follows each time the switch is pressed. If no discs are inserted in the player, or if the external device is not connected, that mode will be skipped.

With CD player:
FM1→FM2→SAT1→SAT2→SAT3→CD player→
Bluetooth® audio player→AUX→iPod or USB memory→AM

With DVD player:
Type A:
FM1→FM2→SAT1→SAT2→SAT3→DVD player→
Bluetooth® audio player→VTR→AUX→iPod or USB memory→
AM

Type B:
FM1→FM2→DVD player→Bluetooth® audio player→VTR→
AUX→iPod or USB memory→AM

Adjusting the volume

▶ Without paddle shift switches

Pull "+" to increase the volume and "-" to decrease the volume.

Hold the switch in that position to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

▶ With paddle shift switches

Press "+" to increase the volume and "-" to decrease the volume.

Hold the switch in that position to continue increasing or decreasing the volume.

Selecting a radio station

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select the radio mode.

STEP 2 Press "∧" or "∨" on  to select a radio station.

To scan for receivable stations, press and hold "∧" or "∨" on  until you hear a beep.

Selecting a track/file or chapter

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select the CD, DVD, Bluetooth® audio player, iPod or USB memory mode.

STEP 2 Press "∧" or "∨" on  to select the desired track/file or chapter.

Selecting a disc

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select the CD or DVD mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on  until you hear a beep.

Selecting a folder

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select USB memory mode.
STEP 2 Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on  until you hear a beep.

Selecting an album

STEP 1 Press "MODE" to select Bluetooth® audio player mode.
STEP 2 Press and hold "∧" or "∨" on  until you hear a beep.

Canceling automatic selection of a radio station

Press the same switch.

CAUTION

To reduce the risk of an accident

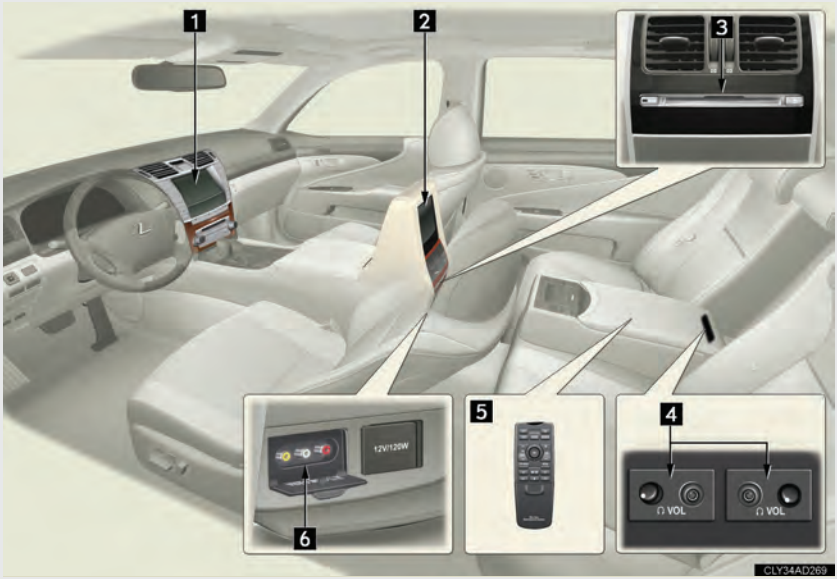
Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

Rear seat entertainment system features* (without navigation system)

The rear seat entertainment system is designed for the rear passengers to enjoy audio and DVD video separately from the front audio system.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

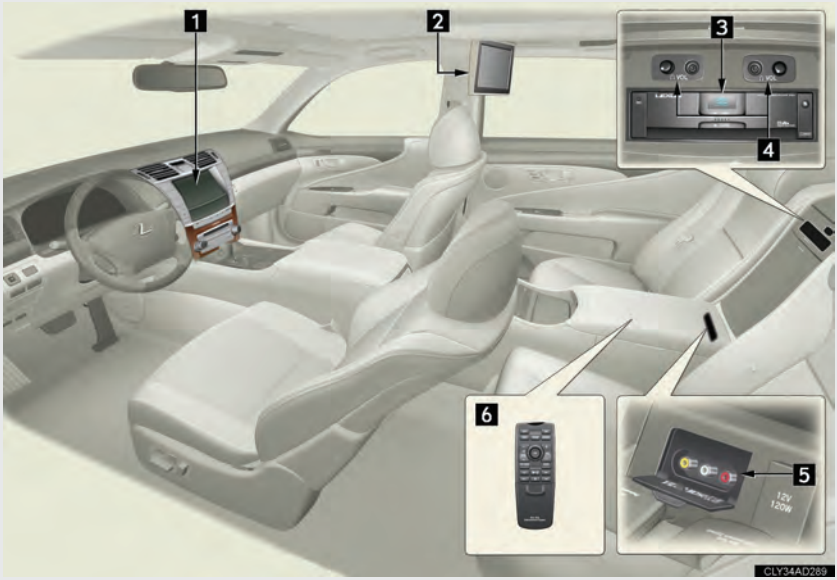
▶ 5-seat models



1 Front audio system
2 Display
3 DVD player
4 Headphone volume control dials and headphone jacks
5 Rear seat entertainment system controller
6 A/V input port

*: If equipped

▶ 4-seat models



1 Front audio system
2 Display
3 DVD player
4 Headphone volume control dials and headphone jacks
5 A/V input port
6 Rear seat entertainment system controller

Rear seat entertainment system controller



To use the buttons under the cover, slide the cover down.

Turning on or off the display (5-seat models)



● On

Press “ON”, “DVD”, “VIDEO”, “SOURCE” or ▶II.

● Off

Press “OFF”.

Turning on or off operations can be performed from the front seat.
(→P. 325)

Opening or closing the display (4-seat models)

Opening or closing the display





● Open

Press OPEN/CLOSE, "ON", "DVD", "VIDEO", "SOURCE" or ▶II.

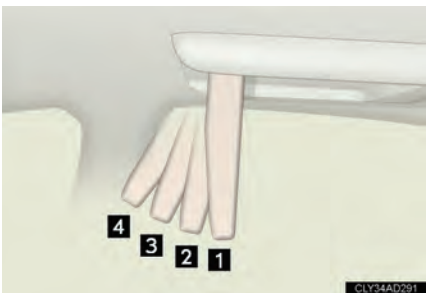
● Close

Press OPEN/CLOSE or "OFF".

If the display is closed with an image shown, the image will automatically turn off. (When you press OPEN/CLOSE, the sound will not be turned off.)

Opening and closing operations can be performed from the front seat. (→P. 325)

Tilting the display

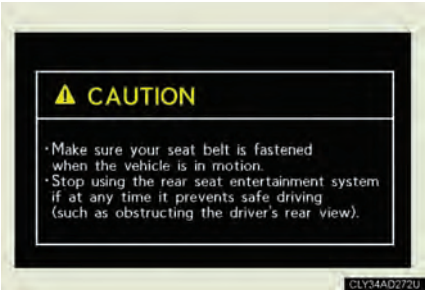


The display angles change as follows each time TILT is pressed.

1 → 2 → 3 → 4 → 1

The display angle is memorized and will be recalled when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode again.

Caution screen



This screen appears for a few seconds when the rear display turns on.

During this time, only OPEN/CLOSE can be operated. (4-seat models)

Headphone jacks

▶ 5-seat models



To listen to the rear audio, use headphone.

1 To use the headphone
Connect it to the jack.

2 To adjust the volume
Turn it clockwise to increase the volume. Turn it counterclockwise to decrease the volume.

▶ 4-seat models



To listen to the rear audio, use headphone.

1 To use the headphone
Connect it to the jack.

2 To adjust the volume
Turn it clockwise to increase the volume. Turn it counterclockwise to decrease the volume.

Changing the source

STEP 1



Press “SOURCE” to display the source screen.

STEP 2



Select an audio source using “ENT”.

Changing the speaker output



To play the rear audio over the speakers in the vehicle, turn “Speaker Output” on.

■ **The rear seat entertainment system can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Jam protection function (4-seat models)**

The display will stop closing and return to its previous position if something gets in the way of it closing.

■ **When appears on the screen**

It indicates that the selected icon cannot be used at this time.

■ **Rear system lock**

→P. 330

■ **Before using the controller (for new vehicle owners)**



An insulating sheet is set to prevent the batteries from being depleted. Remove the insulating sheet before using the remote control.

■ **When the controller batteries are fully depleted**



Remove the depleted batteries and install new batteries.

■ **Headphones**

With some headphones generally available in the market, it may be difficult to catch signals properly. Lexus recommends the use of Lexus genuine wireless headphones.

Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

■ Volume

- Adjust the volume when you connect the headphone to the jack. Loud sounds may have a significant impact on the human body.
- Conversational speech on some DVDs is recorded at a low volume to emphasize the impact of sound effects. If you adjust the volume assuming that the conversations represent the maximum volume level that the DVD will play, you may be startled by louder sound effects or when you change to a different audio source. Be sure to adjust the volume with this in mind.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When the rear seat entertainment system is not used**

Keep the display closed.
In the event of an accident or sudden braking, an occupant may hit the opened display resulting in injury.

■ **To prevent accidents and electric shock**

Do not disassemble or modify the remote control.

■ **When the remote controller is not used**

Stow the remote controller.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

■ **Closing the display (4-seat models)**

Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

NOTICE

Cleaning the display

Wipe the display with a dry soft cloth.
If the screen is wiped with a rough cloth, the surface of the screen may be scratched.

To prevent damage to the remote control

- Keep the remote control away from direct sunlight, high temperature and high humidity.
- Do not drop or knock the remote control against hard objects.
- Do not sit on or place heavy objects on the remote control.

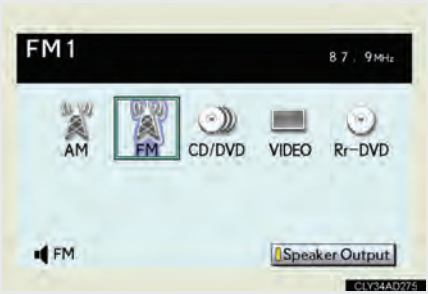
DVD player

Never try to disassemble or oil any part of the DVD player. Do not insert anything other than a disc into the slot.

Closing the display (4-seat models)

Do not close the display using your hand. Doing so may result in a malfunction.

Using the radio



Select radio mode on the source screen.

Selecting a preset station

Press "∧" or "∨" on "CH DISC" until the desired station appears on the screen.

Tuning the station

Press ⏮ or ⏭ until the desired station appears on the screen.

Press and hold ⏮ or ⏭, the stations will be searched automatically.



1 Turning on DVD player mode
2 Selecting a disc

Selecting a disc



Press "∧" or "∨" on "CH DISC" until the desired slot number appears on the screen.

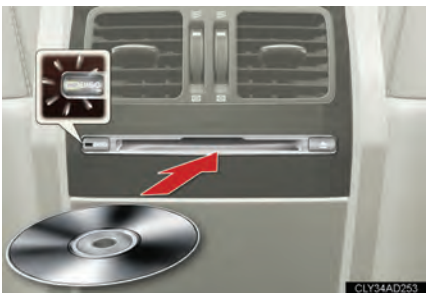
- Audio CD, MP3/WMA discs →P. 492
- DVD video/audio →P. 493
- Video CD →P. 503



Press “DVD” or select “Rr-DVD” on the source screen.

Loading a disc

▶ 5-seat models

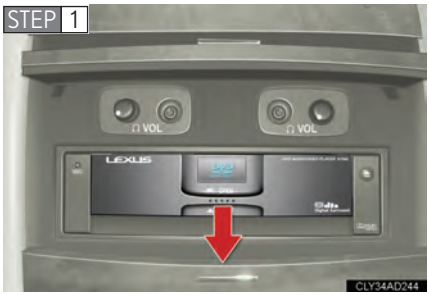


Insert the disc into the slot with the label side up.

The “DISC” indicator light turns on while the disc is loaded.

The player will play the track or chapter, and will repeat it after it reaches the end.

▶ 4-seat models



STEP 1 Open the cover.



STEP 2 Insert the disc into the slot with the label side up.

The "DISC" indicator light turns on while the disc is loaded.

The player will play the track or chapter, and will repeat it after it reaches the end.

STEP 3 Close the cover.

Ejecting a disc

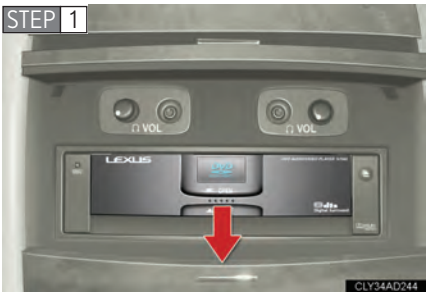
▶ 5-seat models



Press  and remove the disc.

▶ 4-seat models

STEP 1



Open the cover.

STEP 2



Press and remove the disc.

STEP 3 Close the cover.

Playing a disc



- Audio CD, MP3/WMA discs →P. 492
- DVD video/audio →P. 493
- Video CD →P. 503

Selecting a track/file



Press ⏮ or ⏭ until the desired track/file number appears on the screen.

Fast forwarding or rewinding a track/file

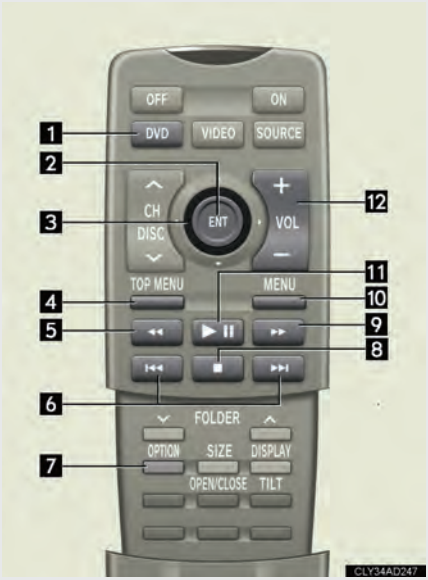
Press and hold ⏩ or ⏪.

Selecting a folder



Press "∧" or "∨" on FOLDER until the desired folder number appears on the screen.

Controller



1. Turning on the DVD mode
2. Inputting the selected icon
3. Selecting an icon
4. Turning on the title selection screen
5. Rewind
6. Selecting a chapter/track
7. Turning on the control icon screen
8. Stop
9. Fast forward
10. Turning on the menu screen
11. Play/pause
12. Volume up/down

Control icon screen

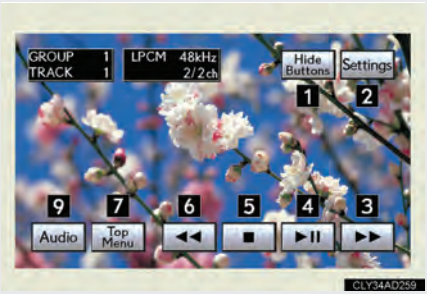
Press OPTION if no icons are shown while watching a DVD video/audio, and the following screen appears.

▶ DVD video mode



1 Hide the buttons
2 Settings screen appears (→P. 495)
3 Fast forward
4 Play/pause
5 Stop
6 Rewind
7 8 Menu screen appears
9 Change audio format

▶ DVD audio mode



If ⃠ appears on the screen when you select an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

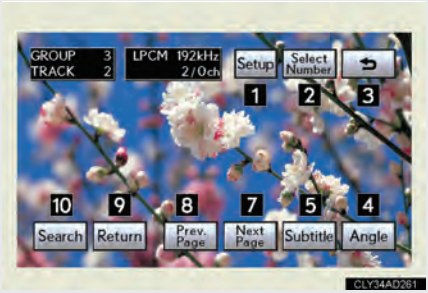
Settings screen

Select “Settings” on the control icon screen, the following screen appears.

▶ DVD video mode



▶ DVD audio mode



1. Change initial setting
2. Select menu number
3. Return to previous screen
4. Change angle
5. Change subtitle language
6. Change audio language/ audio format
7. Go to next page
8. Return to previous page
9. Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there
10. Search by title/group number

Turning on or off the control icons

Press OPTION to turn on the control icons.

Press OPTION once again or select "Hide Buttons" on the control icon screen to turn off the control icon.

Turning on the title selection screen

Press TOP MENU or select "Top Menu" on the control icon screen to turn on the title selection screen. For the operation of the title selection screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

Turning on the menu screen (DVD video mode)

Press MENU or select "Menu" on the control icon screen to turn on the menu screen. For the operation of the menu screen, see the separate manual for the DVD disc.

Fast forwarding/rewinding a disc

Perform either of the following:

- Select ▶▶ or ◀◀ on the control icon screen by pressing and holding "ENT".
- Press and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀.

Slow playback

Perform either of the following:

- Select  and then select . Video is played slowly when you select  by pressing and holding "ENT".
- Press  and then press and hold . Video is played slowly while  is being pressed.

Searching a desired screen

Searching by title (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Select "Search" on the settings screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired title number and then select "OK".

Searching by group (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Select "Search" on the settings screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired group number and then select "OK".

Playing a bonus group (DVD audio mode, if the DVD has bonus options)

STEP 1 Select "Search" on the settings screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired bonus group number and select "OK".

Searching by chapter/track

Press  or  to select the desired chapter/track.

Selecting a menu number (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Select "Select Number" on the settings screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired menu number and select "OK".

Changing the subtitle language

STEP 1 Select “Subtitle” on the settings screen.

STEP 2



Select “Subtitle”.

Each time you press “ENT”, the next available language is selected.

“Hide”: hide the subtitle

Changing the audio language (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Select “Audio” on the settings screen.

STEP 2



Select “Audio”.

Each time you press “ENT”, the next available language is selected.

Changing the audio format (DVD audio mode)

STEP 1 Select "Audio" on the control icon screen.

STEP 2



Select "Audio".

Each time you press "ENT", the next available audio format is selected.

Changing the angle (If the angle option is available)

STEP 1 Select "Angle" on the settings screen.

STEP 2



Select "Angle".

Each time you press "ENT", the next available angle is selected.

Changing the page (DVD audio mode)

Select "Prev. Page" or "Next Page" on the settings screen to change the page.

Initial DVD setup

■ Displaying "Setup Menu" screen

STEP 1 Select "Setup" on the settings screen.

STEP 2



After you change the initial settings, select "OK".

"Default": restores default settings

"Page 2→": goes to Page 2



■ Setting audio language (DVD video mode)

STEP 1 Select "Audio Language" on the "Setup Menu 1" screen.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 501)

■ Setting subtitle language

STEP 1 Select "Subtitle Language" on the "Setup Menu 1" screen.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 501)

■ **Setting menu language**

STEP 1 Select "DVD language" on the "Setup Menu 1" screen.

STEP 2 Select the desired language.

If you cannot find the desired language, select "Other" and input the desired language code. (→P. 501)

■ **Setting angle mark**

If the DVD has angle options, you can turn the angle mark on or off.

STEP 1 Select "Angle Mark" on the "Setup Menu 1" screen.

STEP 2 Select "ON" or "OFF".

■ **Setting parental lock (DVD video mode)**

STEP 1 Select "Parental Lock" on the "Setup Menu 1" screen.

STEP 2 Input the 4-digit personal code and then select "OK".

Select ← 10 times to reset the personal code.

STEP 3 Select a parental level (1 - 8). (→P. 436)

■ **Setting sound dynamic range (DVD video mode)**

The difference between the lowest volume and the highest volume can be adjusted.

STEP 1 Select "Sound Dynamic Range" on the "Setup Menu 2" screen.

STEP 2 Select "MAX", "STD" or "MIN".

■ **Entering a language code**

If you select "Other" on the "Audio Language" screen, "Subtitle Language" screen or "DVD Language" screen, you can select a language by entering the 4-digit language code (→P. 426) if that language is available.

Input the 4-digit language code and then select "OK".

■ When a front passenger selects “Setup Menu”



To cancel the set up operation from the front seat, select “Play”.

■ Rear system lock

→P. 330

■ Error messages

If “Region code error” is displayed, check the region code printed on the DVD matches the player's region code.

If a different message is displayed: →P. 434

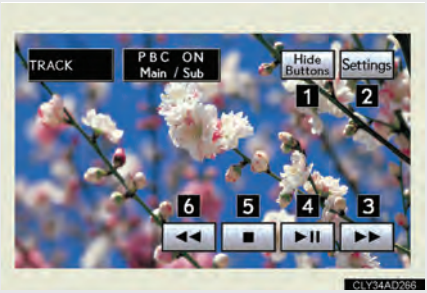
Controller



1 Selecting an icon
2 Inputting the selected icon
3 Rewind
4 Selecting a track
5 Turning on the control icon screen
6 Stop
7 Fast forward
8 Play/pause
9 Volume up/down

Control icon screen

Press OPTION if no icons are shown while watching a video CD, and the following screen appears.

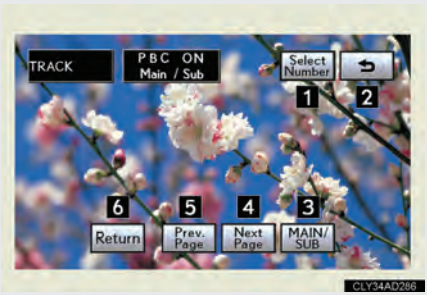


1 Hide the buttons
2 Settings screen appears
3 Fast forward
4 Play/pause
5 Stop
6 Rewind

If appears on the screen when you select an icon, the operation relevant to that control is not permitted.

Settings screen

Select "Settings" on the control icon screen, and the following screen appears.



1 Select menu number
2 Return to previous screen
3 Change sound-multiplex
4 Go to next page
5 Return to previous page
6 Display the predetermined scene and start playing from there

Turning on or off the control icons

Press OPTION to turn on the control icons.

Press OPTION once again or select "Hide Buttons" on the control icon screen to turn off the control icon.

Fast forwarding/rewinding the video CD

Perform either of the following:

- Select ▶▶ or ◀◀ on the control icon screen by pressing and holding "ENT".
- Press and hold ▶▶ or ◀◀.

Slow playback

Perform either of the following:

- Select ▶II and then select ▶▶. Video is played slowly while you select ▶▶ by pressing and holding "ENT".
- Press ▶II and then press and hold ▶▶. Video is played slowly while ▶▶ is being pressed.

Using the video CD menu

Select "Return" on the settings screen.

Refer to the manual that comes with the video CD for specific menu items.

Selecting a desired screen

■ Selecting a menu number

STEP 1 Select “Select Number” on the settings screen.

STEP 2 Input the desired menu number on the screen and select “OK”.

■ Searching manually

Select “Prev. Page” or “Next Page” on the settings screen, or press  or  until the desired screen appears.

Changing the sound-multiplex mode

Select “MAIN/SUB” on the settings screen. The mode cycles through each time “ENT” is pressed.

“Main” → “Sub” → “Main/Sub”



■ Error messages
→P. 434

■ DVD video discs
→P. 434

■ Symbols shown on DVD video discs
→P. 435

■ Discs that can be used
→P. 436

■ DVD player protection feature
→P. 436

■ If discs are left inside the DVD player or in the ejected position for extended periods
→P. 436

■ Lens cleaners
→P. 436

■ DVD video disc information
→P. 436

■ Sound
→P. 438

■ MP3 and WMA files
→P. 438

CAUTION

■ DVD video precaution

→P. 441

NOTICE

■ Discs and adapters that cannot be used

→P. 442

■ Player precautions

→P. 443



Press "VIDEO" to select the video mode.

Before switching to the video mode, connect the audio-video equipment to the A/V input port.

Using the port

▶ 5-seat models



Open the cover.

The A/V input port is composed of 3 input ports.

Yellow: Image input port

White: Left channel audio input port

Red: Right channel audio input port

▶ 4-seat models



Open the cover.

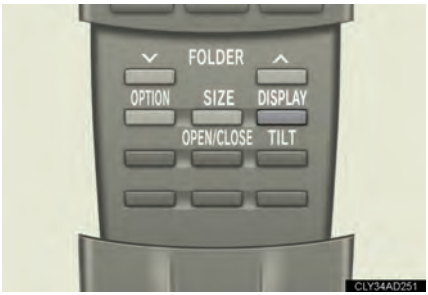
The A/V input port is composed of 3 input ports.

Yellow: Image input port

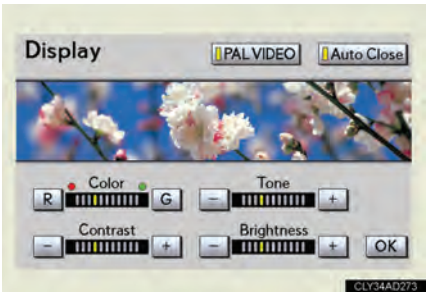
White: Left channel audio input port

Red: Right channel audio input port

Changing the PAL format



Press DISPLAY .



If the video does not appear, turn "PAL VIDEO" on.

A/V input port

The rear seat entertainment system plays videos and sound when audio-video equipment is connected to the A/V input port. For details, refer to the manufacturer's instructions.

Power outlet

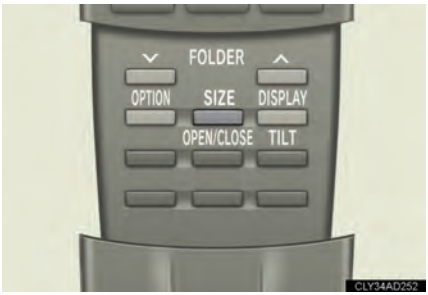
The power outlet is used to connect the audio-video equipment. (→P. 588)

NOTICE

When the A/V input port is not in use

Keep the A/V input port cover closed.
Inserting anything other than an appropriate plug may cause electrical failure or a short circuit.

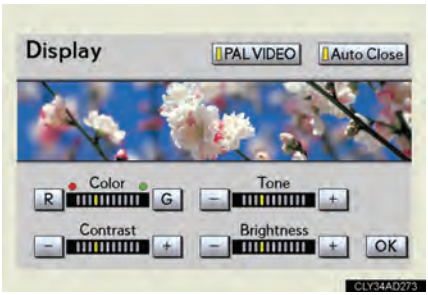
Setting the display mode



Pressing SIZE changes the display modes sequentially as follows:

Normal→Wide 1→Wide 2

Adjusting the screen



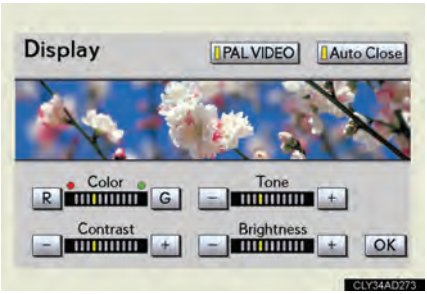
Press DISPLAY.

Select the brightness, contrast, tone or color, and make adjustments.

Press DISPLAY or select "OK".

	"R"	"G"
"Color"	Red	Green
	"-"	"+"
"Tone"	Lighter	Darker
"Contrast"	Weaker	Stronger
"Brightness"	Darker	Brighter

Automatic closing of the rear display (4-seat models)



Press DISPLAY.

If "Auto Close" is on, the display will automatically close when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF.
The display will automatically open when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

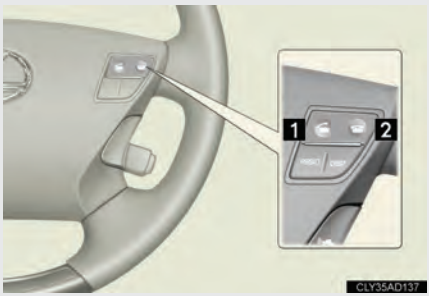
Hands-free system (for cellular phone)*(without navigation system)

The hands-free system is a function that allows you to use your mobile phone without touching it.

This system supports Bluetooth® mobile phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that allows the mobile phone to wirelessly connect to the hands-free system and outgoing/incoming calls.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Telephone switch



1 Sending/Receiving/ "Phone" screen display
2 End call/Refuse call

Microphone



The person you are speaking to can be heard from the driver's side speaker.

To use the hands-free system, you must register a Bluetooth® phone in the system. (→P. 520)

*: If equipped

Status display

You can check such indicators as signal strength and battery charge on the "Phone" screen.



1 Connection status
2 Battery charge
3 Call area
4 Signal strength

Indicators	Conditions
Connection status	Blue: Good Yellow: Bad : Not connected
Battery charge	Full ⟷ Empty
Call area	"Rm": Roaming area "Hm": Home area
Signal strength	Excellent ⟷ Too bad

■ **When using the hands-free system**

- The audio system and voice guidance are muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the incoming call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - When driving on unpaved roads
  - When driving at high speeds
  - If a window is open
  - If the air-conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone
  - If the air-conditioning is set to high
  - There is an effect from the network of the cellular phone

■ **Conditions under which the system will not operate**

- If using a mobile phone that does not support Bluetooth®
- If the mobile phone is turned off
- If you are outside service range
- If the mobile phone is not connected
- If the mobile phone's battery is low

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

The antenna is built into the instrument panel. If the mobile phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ **Battery charge/Signal status**

This display may not correspond exactly with the mobile phone itself.

■ **When using Bluetooth® audio and hands-free system at the same time**

The following problems may occur.

- The Bluetooth® connection may be cut.
- Noise may be heard on the Bluetooth® audio playback.

■ **About the phonebook in this system**

The following data is stored for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

- Phonebook data
- Voice tag
- All of call history
- Speed dial

When you delete the phone, the above-mentioned data is also deleted.

■ **When you release your car**

Be sure to initialize your data. (→P. 332)

■ **About Bluetooth®**



Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ **Compatible models**

This system supports the following service.

- Bluetooth® Specification:
  Ver. 1.1 or higher (Recommended: Ver. 1.2 or higher)
- Profiles:
  - HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (Conformed: Ver. 1.5)
  - OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1
  - PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) Ver. 1.0

If your cellular phone does not support HFP, you cannot enter the Bluetooth® phone, and take OPP or PBAP service individually.

■ Certification

FCC ID: AJDK021
IC ID: 775E-K021
MADE IN JAPAN

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and RSS-Gen and RSS-210 of IC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

⚠ CAUTION

FCC WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Radio Frequency Radiation Exposure. This equipment complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that it deemed to comply without maximum permissive exposure evaluation (MPE). But it is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 7.9 in. (20 cm) and more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

This transmitter must not be co-located or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

While driving

Do not use the mobile phone or connect the Bluetooth® system.

⚠ NOTICE

When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your mobile phone in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the phone.

Using the Bluetooth® phone



1 Device name

2 Bluetooth® connection status

3 Character deletion

4 Make a call

To display the screen shown above, press “INFO/PHONE”, and touch



on the “Information” screen.

Registering a Bluetooth® phone

You can register up to 4 phones in the system.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2



Touch "Yes".

STEP 3



Input the passcode displayed on the screen into your phone.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

If you want to cancel it, select "Cancel".

If a completion message is displayed, registration is complete.

If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

Connecting a Bluetooth® phone

There are two connection methods available-automatic and manual.

▶ Automatic



When you register your phone, auto connection will be activated. Always set it to this mode and leave the Bluetooth® phone on the place where connection can be established.

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will search for a nearby cellular phone you have registered. Next, the system automatically connects with the most recent of the phones connected to in the past. Then, the connection result is displayed.

▶ Manual

When the auto connection has failed or “Handsfree Power” is turned off, you must connect Bluetooth® manually.

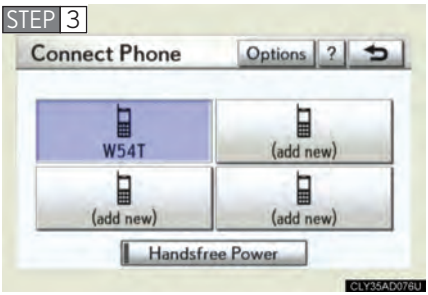
STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2



Touch “Connect Phone”.

STEP 3



Touch “Handsfree Power”, or touch the phone to connect.

STEP 4



The “Connect Bluetooth*” screen is displayed.

If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ **Reconnecting to the Bluetooth® phone**

If the system cannot connect due to poor signal strength with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the system will automatically attempt to reconnect.
If the phone is turned off, the system will not attempt to reconnect. In this case, connection must be made manually, or the phone must be re-selected or re-entered.

■ **Connecting the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing**

- Bluetooth® audio will stop temporarily.
- It may take time to be connect.

Making a call

Once the Bluetooth® phone is registered, you can make a call using the following procedure:

■ Dialing

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2



Input the phone number.

To delete the inputted phone number, touch ←.

To dial the last inputted phone number, touch "Redial".

STEP 3 Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

■ Dialing from the phone book

You can dial a number from the phonebook data imported from your mobile phone. The system has one phonebook for each telephone. Up to 1000 entries may be stored in total for phonebooks. (→P. 540)

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3

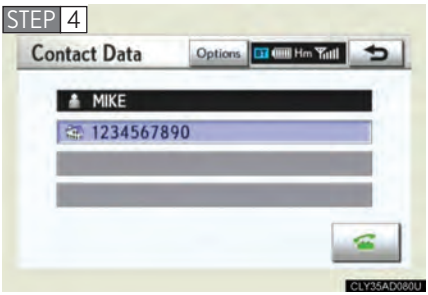


Choose the desired data to call from the list.

If the phonebook is empty, a message will be displayed.

If you want to transfer new contacts from a cellular phone, touch "Yes".

STEP 4



Choose the number and then touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

Calling using speed dial

You can make a call using numbers registered from the phone book. (→P. 548)

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2 Touch "Speed Dials" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3



Select the desired tab and choose the desired number to make a call.

Dialing from history

You can using the call history which has 4 the functions below.

"All": all the numbers below which were memorized

"Missed": calls which you missed

"Incoming": calls which you received

"Outgoing": numbers which you called

You can call using the 5 most recently called numbers shown by "All" while driving.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 519)

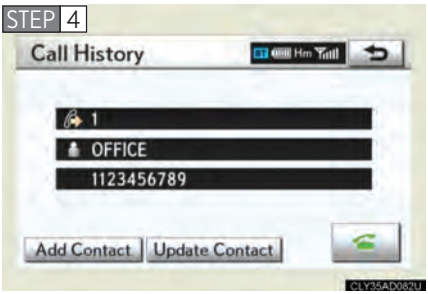
STEP 2 Touch "Call History" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3



Select the desired tab and choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4



Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

Calling using voice recognition

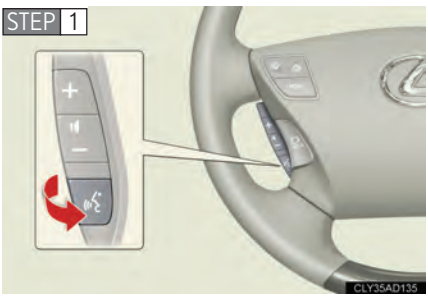
Voice commands can also be used for “Dial by number”, “Dial by name”, “Redial”, “Call back” and “Connect Phone”. The procedure below shows “Dial by name”. Follow similar procedures for the other four operations.

● Dial by name

You can call by giving a voice tag registered in the phonebook. (→P. 554)

▶ Without paddle shift switches

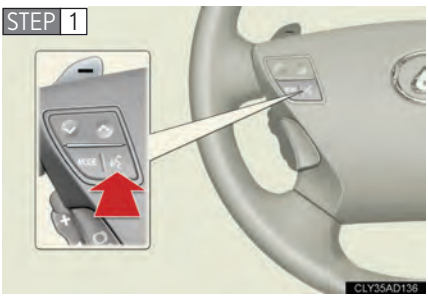
STEP 1



Pull .

▶ With paddle shift switches

STEP 1



Press .

STEP 2 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep, and then say “Dial by name”.

STEP 3 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep, and then say the desired name.

STEP 4 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep, and then say the desired number.

STEP 5 Following the system guidance, wait for the beep and then say "Dial" or press on the steering wheel.

■ **Call history list**

- If you make a call to or receive a call from a number registered in the phone book, the name is displayed in the call history.
- If you make multiple calls to the same number, only the last call made is displayed in the dialled history.
- Calls where the number is unavailable, such as public telephones, are not stored in the call history.

■ **When driving**

The functions "Dialing", "Dialing from the phonebook", and "Dialing from history" (except for call using the 5 most recently called numbers shown by "All" tab) are unavailable.

■ **International calls**

You may not be able to make international calls, depending on the mobile phone in use.

■ **Calling by using the latest call history item**

STEP 1 Press on the steering wheel to display the "Phone" screen.

STEP 2 Press on the steering wheel to display the "Call History" screen.

STEP 3 Press on the steering wheel to select the most recent number in the history.

STEP 4 Touch or press on the steering wheel.

■ **To cancel voice recognition**

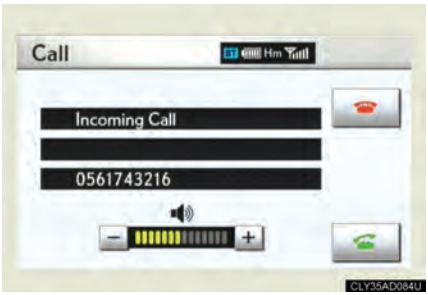
- Pull and hold or press and hold .
- Press on the steering wheel.
- Touch or say "Cancel".

■ **When using voice recognition**

- Commands operable by a voice command are marked with . Say the command displayed on the screen.
- Speak clearly when using the voice recognition, otherwise the system may not correctly recognize your voice. Wind or other noises may also cause the system not to recognize your voice.

Receiving a call

When a call is received, the following screen is displayed together with a sound.



Touch or press on the steering wheel.

■ **To refuse a call**

Touch or press on the steering wheel.

■ **To adjust the ring tone volume**

Touch "-" or "+". You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.

■ **International calls**

Received international calls may not be displayed correctly, depending on the mobile phone in use.

Speaking on the phone

The following screen is displayed when speaking on the phone.



To adjust the receiver volume

Touch "-" or "+". You can also adjust the volume using the steering switches.

To prevent the other party from hearing your voice

Touch "Mute".

Inputting tones

When using phone services such as an answering service or a bank, you can store phone numbers and code numbers in the phone book.

STEP 1 Touch "0-9".

STEP 2



Input the number.

If repeated tone symbols* are stored in the phone book, "Send" and "Exit" are displayed on the right side of the screen.

*: Repeated tone symbols are symbols or numbers displayed as p or w, that come after the phone number.
(e.g. 056133w0123p#1✻)

STEP 3 Confirm the number displayed on the screen, and touch "Send".

If you touch "Exit", this function will end.

■ **To transfer a call**

Touch "Call Transfer".

■ **To hang up**

Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

■ **Call waiting**

When a call is interrupted by a third party while talking, the receiving call message will be displayed.

- To talk with the other party: Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.
- To refuse the call: Touch  or press  on the steering wheel.

Every time you touch  or press  on the steering wheel during call waiting, you will be switched to the other party.

If your cellular phone is not compliable with HFP Ver. 1.5, this function cannot be used.

■ **Transferring calls**

- It is not possible to transfer from hands-free to the mobile phone while driving.
- If you transfer from the mobile phone to hands-free, the hands-free screen will be displayed, and you can operate the system using the screen.
- Transfer method and operation may vary according to the mobile phone used.
- For operation of the mobile phone in use, see the phone's manual.

■ **Call waiting operation**

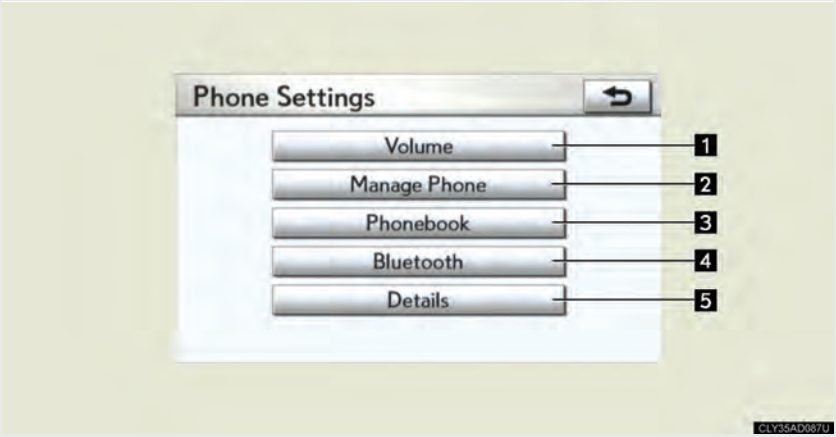
Call waiting operation may differ depending on your phone company and cellular phone.

■ **While driving**

Key input is unavailable.

Setting the hands-free system

You can set the hands-free system to your desired settings.



1 Setting the volume
2 Managing the phone
3 Phonebook settings
4 Bluetooth® settings
5 Details settings

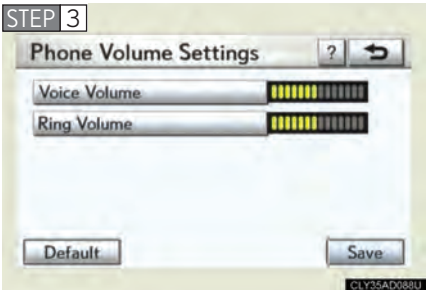
To display the screen shown above, press “SETUP”, touch “Phone” on the “Setup” screen.

Setting the volume

STEP 1 Display the “Phone Settings” screen. (→P. 533)

STEP 2 Touch “Volume” on the “Phone Settings” screen.

STEP 3

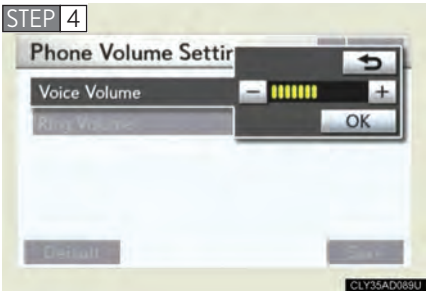


Choose the volume setting switch.

“Voice Volume”: changes the speaker volume

“Ring Volume”: changes the ring volume

STEP 4



Touch “-” or “+” to lower or raise the volume, and then “OK”.

STEP 5 When you complete all settings, touch “Save”.

■ Adaptive volume control

When traveling at 50 mph (80 km/h) or more, the system automatically raises the volume one level.
If the vehicle speed drops to 43 mph (70 km/h), the volume will return to its original level.

■ To return to the default volume settings

Touch “Default”, and then “Yes”.

Managing the phone

■ Registering a Bluetooth® phone

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 533)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "(add new)" to register your cellular phone to the system.

STEP 4



Input the passcode displayed on the screen into your phone.

For the operation of the phone, see the manual that comes with your cellular phone.

If you want to cancel it, select "Cancel".

If a completion message is displayed, registration is complete.

If an error message is displayed, follow the guidance on the screen to try again.

Selecting a Bluetooth® phone

If multiple Bluetooth® phones are registered, follow the procedure below to select the Bluetooth® phone to be used. You may only use one phone at a time.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 533)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Select the phone to be used.

The Bluetooth® mark is displayed when you connect the phone.

If a completion message is displayed, connection is complete.

Editing a Bluetooth®phone

You can see the information of the Bluetooth® phone on the system or edit.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 533)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

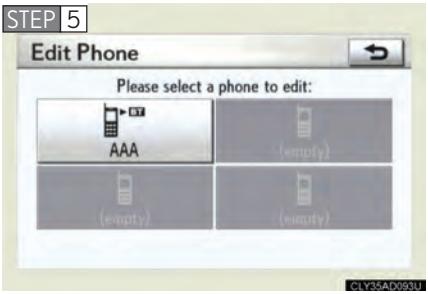
STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Connect Phone" screen.

STEP 4



Touch "Edit Phones".

STEP 5



Select a phone to edit.

STEP 6



Touch "Edit".

STEP 7



Input the device name, and touch "OK".

STEP 8 Confirm the device name, and touch "OK".

■ Removing a Bluetooth® phone

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 533)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Connect Phone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "Remove Phones" on the "Phones" screen.

STEP 5



Select the desired phone. If you want to remove all phones, touch "Select All".

STEP 6 Touch "Delete". A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

■ Registering a Bluetooth® phone in a different way

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 533)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Phone" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Connect Phone" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "New Phone" on the "Phones" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "(empty)" on the "Phone Position" screen.

STEP 6 Follow the steps for "Registering a Bluetooth® phone" from "STEP4". (→P. 535)

■ **When another Bluetooth® device is connected during registering or selecting a phone**

When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to disconnect it, touch "Yes".

■ **When Bluetooth® audio is connected while registering a phone**

When you register your phone, Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when you finish registration. It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.

■ **Connecting the phone while Bluetooth® audio is playing**

Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when you finish connecting the phone. It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.

■ **Setting the "Handsfree Power"**

The mode changes between on and off every time you select "Handsfree Power" on the "Connect Phone" screen. When "Handsfree Power" is on, the Bluetooth® phone is automatically connected when you turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Editing the "Device Name"**

If you change a device name, the name registered in your cellular phone is not changed.

■ **About "Device Address"**

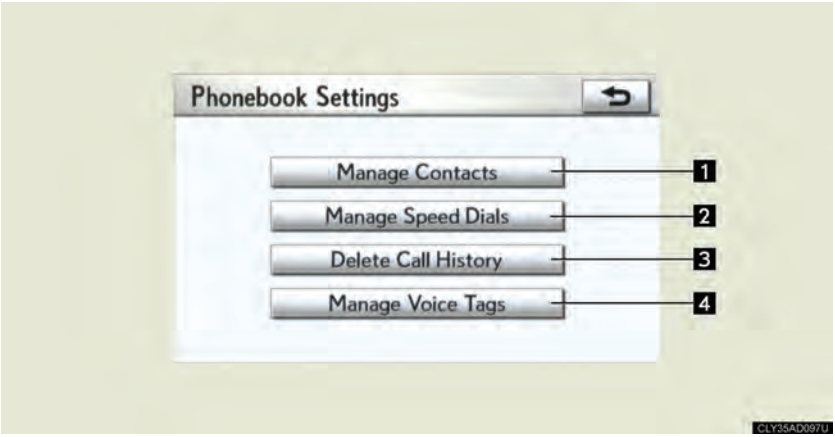
The address peculiar to the system. You cannot be changed. If you have registered two Bluetooth® phones with the same device name and you cannot distinguish one from the other, refer to this address.

■ **When you delete a Bluetooth® phone**

The phonebook data will be deleted at the same time.

Phonebook settings

The phonebook manages a maximum of 4 phonebooks in total. The data for up to 1000 contacts (up to 3 numbers per contact) can be registered in total for phonebooks.



1 Setting the phonebook
2 Speed dials setting
3 Deleting the call history
4 Setting the voice tag

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 533)

STEP 2 Touch "Phonebook" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

Setting the phonebook

● Transferring a phone number

You can transfer the phone numbers in your Bluetooth® phone to the system.

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "Transfer Contacts".

STEP 4



Select "Replace Contacts" or "Add Contacts".

In the case that the phonebook contains phonebook data, this screen is displayed.

STEP 5



Transfer the phonebook data to the system using the Bluetooth® phone.

If you wish to cancel the transfer before it finishes, touch "Cancel".

If the transferring is interrupted midway through the process, the phonebook data transferred until then can be memorized in the system.

STEP 6 In the case that you have selected "Add Contacts", a message is displayed.
If you want to transfer another phonebook, touch "Yes".

● Registering the phonebook data

You can register the phonebook data. Up to 3 numbers per person can be registered.

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Contacts" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

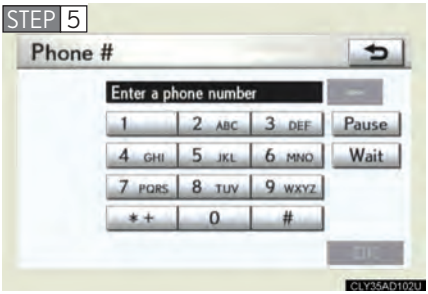
STEP 3 Touch "New Contact" on the "Contacts" screen.

STEP 4



Input the name, and touch "OK".

STEP 5



Input the phone number, and touch "OK".

If you want to use the tone signal after the phone number, input the tone signal too.

STEP 6



Touch the desired phone type.

STEP 7 When two or less numbers in total are registered to this contact, a message is displayed. When you want to add a number to this contact, touch "Yes".

● Editing the phonebook data

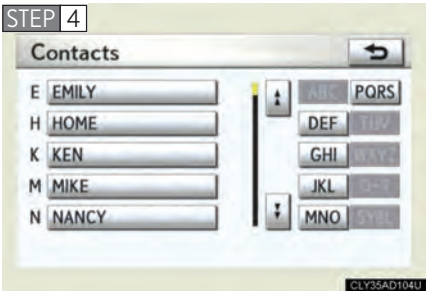
You can register the phone number separately.

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage Contacts” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

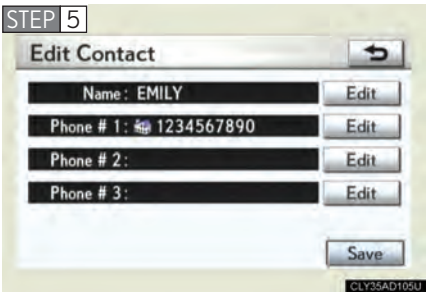
STEP 3 Touch “Edit Contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to edit.

STEP 5



Choose “Edit” for the desired name or number.

STEP 6 Edit the name or number. After editing, touch “Save”.

● Deleting the phonebook data

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage Contacts” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Delete Contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch “Select All”.

STEP 5 Touch “Delete”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

■ **Phonebook data**

Phonebook data is managed for every registered phone. When another phone is connecting, you cannot read the registered data.

■ **Setting the phonebook in a different way (To display the “Contacts” screen)**

STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2 Touch “Contacts” on the “Phone” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Options” on the “Contacts” screen.

STEP 4 Touch “Manage Contacts” on the “Contacts” screen.

■ **When transferring a phone number**

Transfer the phone number while engine is running.

■ **When you have selected "Replace Contacts" to transfer the phone number**

- If your cellular phone does not support PBAP or OPP service, you cannot use this function.
- If your phone supports PBAP service, you can transfer the phonebook data without operating your phone.
- If your phone does not support PBAP service, you must transfer the phonebook data by operating your phone.

■ **When you have selected "Add Contacts" to transfer the phone number**

If your cellular phone does not support OPP service, you cannot use this function. You can transfer the phonebook data only by operating your phone.

■ **When another Bluetooth® device is connected during transferring a phonebook**

When another Bluetooth® device is connected, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to disconnect it, touch "Yes".

■ **Transferring the phone number while Bluetooth® audio is playing**

Bluetooth® audio will disconnect. It will reconnect automatically when data transfer finishes. It will not be reconnected depending on the phone you are using.

■ **Editing the phonebook data in a different way (From "Contact Data" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "Edit Contact" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 6 Follow the steps "Editing the phonebook data" from "STEP5". (→P. 544)

■ **Editing the phonebook data in a different way (From "Call History" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2 Touch "Call History" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Add Contact" or "Update Contact".

STEP 5 If you touch "Add Contact", follow the steps "Editing the phonebook data" from "STEP5". (→P. 544)
If you touch "Update Contact", follow the steps "Editing the phonebook data" from "STEP4". (→P. 544)

■ **Deleting the phonebook data in a different way**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "Delete Contact" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 6 A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

■ Speed dials setting

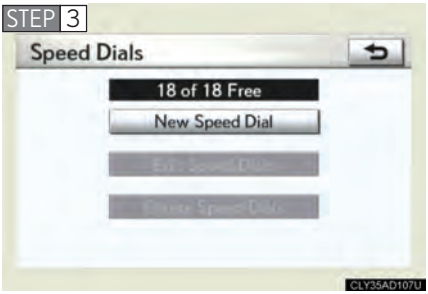
● Registering the speed dial

You can register the desired phone number from phonebook. Up to 18 numbers per phone can be registered.

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 540)

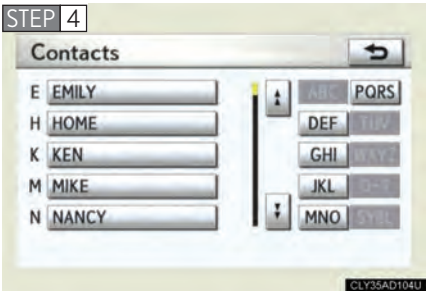
STEP 2 Touch “Manage Speed Dials” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3



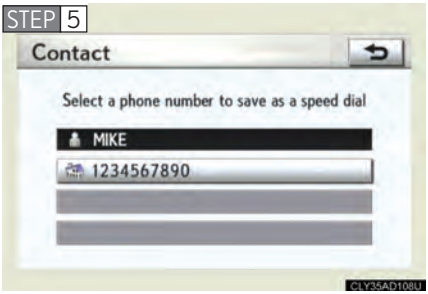
Touch “New Speed Dial”.

STEP 4



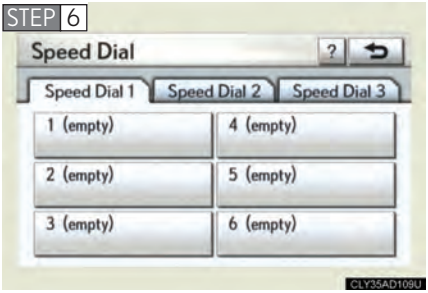
Choose the data to register.

STEP 5



Touch the desired phone number.

STEP 6



Touch the switch you want to register the number in.

STEP 7 If you select a switch you registered before, a confirmation message will be displayed. If you want to replace it, touch "Yes".

● Editing the speed dial

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage Speed Dials” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Edit Speed Dials” on the “Speed Dials” screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to edit.

STEP 5



Touch “Edit”.

STEP 6 Edit the name. After editing, touch “OK” and then “Save”.

● Deleting the speed dial

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch “Manage Speed Dials” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Delete Speed Dials” on the “Speed Dials” screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch “Select All”.

STEP 5 Touch “Delete”. A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch “Yes”.

■ **Setting the speed dials in a different way (To display the "Speed Dial" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2 Touch "Speed Dials" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Speed Dial" screen.

■ **Registering the speed dial in a different way (From "Speed Dial" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2 Touch "Speed Dials" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "(add new)" on the "Speed Dial" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "Yes" to set new speed dial.

STEP 5 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 6 Touch the desired phone number.

STEP 7 Follow the steps "Registering the speed dial" from "STEP6". (→P. 548)

■ **Registering the speed dial in a different way (From "Contact Data" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "Set Speed Dial" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 6 Touch the desired phone number.

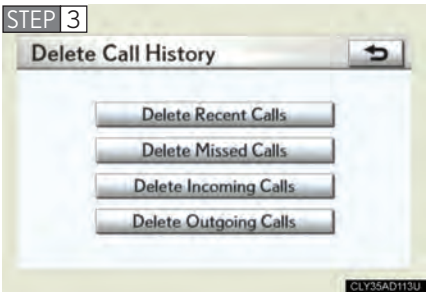
STEP 7 Follow the steps "Registering the speed dial" from "STEP6". (→P. 548)

■ Deleting call history

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 540)

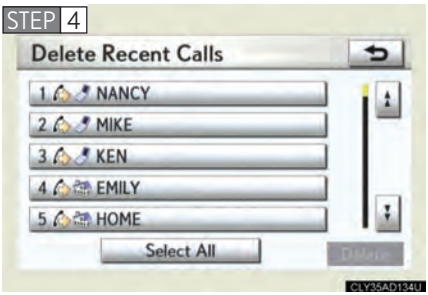
STEP 2 Touch "Delete Call History" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Choose the desired history to delete.

STEP 4



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch "Select All".

STEP 5 Touch "Delete". A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

■ **Deleting call history in a different way**

STEP 1 Display the “Phone” screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2 Touch “Call History” on the “Phone” screen.

STEP 3 Touch “Delete” on the “Call History” screen.

STEP 4 Follow the steps “Deleting call history” from “STEP4”. (→P. 553)

■ Setting the voice tag

● Registering the voice tag

You can register a voice tag. Up to 20 numbers can be registered.

STEP 1 Display the “Phonebook Settings” screen. (→P. 540)

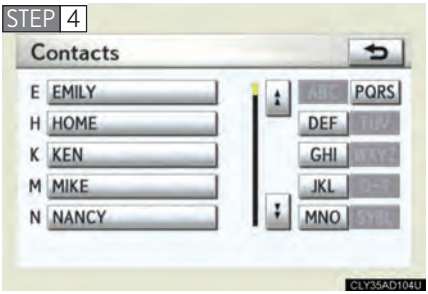
STEP 2 Touch “Manage Voice Tags” on the “Phonebook Settings” screen.

STEP 3



Touch “New Voice Tag”.

STEP 4



Choose the data to register.

STEP 5



Touch "● REC", and record a voice tag.

To play the voice tag, touch "▶ Play".

STEP 6 When you complete the voice tag registration, touch "OK".

● Editing the voice tag

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Voice Tags" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Edit Voice Tags" on the "Voice Tags" screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to edit.

STEP 5 Edit the voice tag. After editing, touch "OK".

● Deleting the voice tag

STEP 1 Display the "Phonebook Settings" screen. (→P. 540)

STEP 2 Touch "Manage Voice Tags" on the "Phonebook Settings" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Delete Voice Tags" on the "Voice Tags" screen.

STEP 4



Choose the data to delete.

You can select multiple data and delete them at the same time.

To delete all data, touch "Select All".

STEP 5 Touch "Delete". A confirmation message will be displayed. If everything is correct, touch "Yes".

■ **Setting the voice tag in a different way (To display the "Voice Tags" screen)**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Touch "Options" on the "Contacts" screen.

STEP 4 Touch "Manage Voice Tags" on the "Contacts" screen.

■ **When using the voice tag**

Do not change the language setting from the language setting used when registering. If they are different, the voice recognition cannot recognize the voice tag that you have registered.

■ **When recording a voice tag**

Do so in a quiet environment.

■ **Registering the voice tag in a different way**

STEP 1 Display the "Phone" screen. (→P. 519)

STEP 2 Touch "Contacts" on the "Phone" screen.

STEP 3 Choose the desired data from the list.

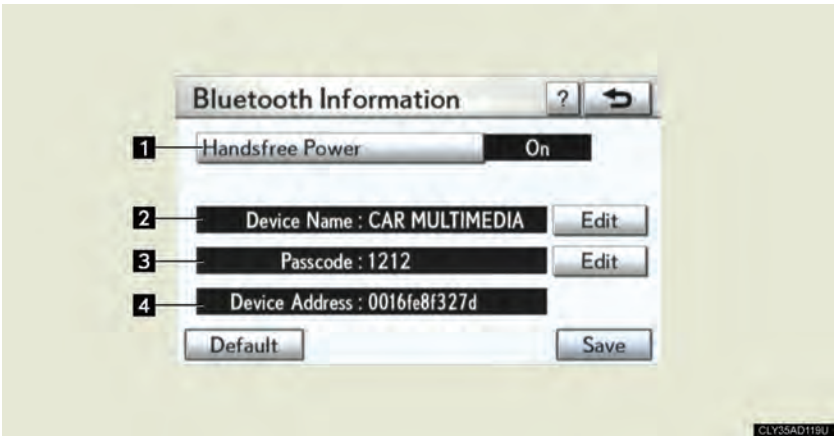
STEP 4 Touch "Options" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 5 Touch "Set Voice Tag" on the "Contact Data" screen.

STEP 6 Follow the steps "Registering the voice tag" from "STEP5". (→P. 554)

Bluetooth® settings

You can confirm and change the Bluetooth® settings.



1 Changing the handsfree connection status

2 Changing the name in the Bluetooth® network

3 Changing the passcode that you registered your cellular phone in the system

4 The address peculiar to the system

You cannot change this address. If the same device name is displayed on the screen of your phone, refer to it.

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Display the "Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 533)

STEP 2 Touch "Bluetooth*" on the "Phone Settings" screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ Changing the handsfree power

The Bluetooth® phone is automatically connected when you turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode. You can change between "On" and "Off".

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth* Information" screen. (→P. 557)

STEP 2 Touch "Handsfree Power" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "On" or "Off", and then "Save".

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ Editing the device name

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth* Information" screen. (→P. 557)

STEP 2 Touch "Edit" of "Device Name" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

STEP 3 Input the device name, and touch "OK".

STEP 4 Touch "Save" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

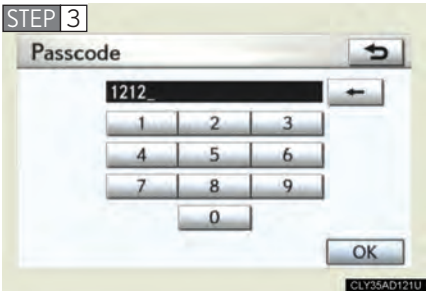
*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ Editing the passcode

STEP 1 Display the "Bluetooth* Information" screen. (→P. 557)

STEP 2 Touch "Edit" of "Passcode" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

STEP 3



Input a passcode, and touch "OK".

STEP 4 Touch "Save" on the "Bluetooth* Information" screen.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG. Inc.

■ While driving

You cannot change "Handsfree Power" mode from "On" to "Off" while driving.

■ About "Device Name"

The device names are common Bluetooth® audio and Bluetooth® phone.

If you change the device name of the phone, the device name of the audio will change at same time. However, passcodes can be set separately.

■ To return to the default Bluetooth® settings

Touch "Default", and then "Yes".

If "Handsfree Power" mode is changed from "Off" to "On", Bluetooth® connection will begin.

Details settings



1 Changing the incoming call display mode

2 Changing the display phone status

To display the screen above, follow the steps below.

STEP 1 Display the “Phone Settings” screen. (→P. 533)

STEP 2 Touch “Details” on the “Phone Settings” screen.

Changing the incoming call display mode

You can select the method of the incoming call display.

STEP 1 Display the "Detailed Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 560)

STEP 2 Touch "Incoming Call Display Mode" on the "Detailed Phone Settings" screen.

STEP 3



Touch "Full Screen" or "Drop Down", and touch "Save".

"Full Screen":
The hands-free screen is displayed when a call is received, and you can operate the system from that screen.

"Drop Down":
A message is displayed at the top of the screen, and you can only operate the system with the steering switches.

Changing the display Phone status

You can set the system to show the status confirmation display when connecting.

STEP 1 Display the "Detailed Phone Settings" screen. (→P. 560)

STEP 2 Touch "Display Phone Status" on the "Detailed Phone Settings" screen.

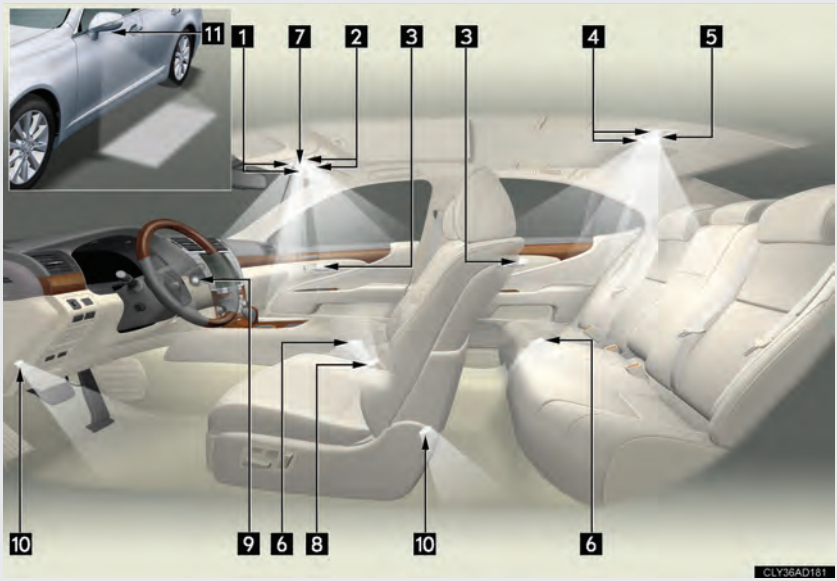
STEP 3 Touch "On" or "Off", and then "Save".

To return to the default detailed Phone settings

Touch "Default", and then "Yes".

Interior lights list

Your Lexus is equipped with the illuminated entry system to assist in entering the vehicle. Owing to the function of the system, the lights shown in the following illustration automatically turn on/off according to the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, whether the doors are opened/closed, and the "ENGINE START STOP" switch mode.



1 Front personal lights (→P. 564)
2 Front interior lights (→P. 563)
3 Inside door handle lighting
4 Rear personal lights (→ P. 564)
5 Rear interior light (→ P. 563)
6 Door courtesy lighting
7 Shift lever lighting (when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode)

8 Seat belt buckle lighting
9 “ENGINE START STOP” switch lighting
10 Footwell lighting
11 Outer foot lights

Interior lights

▶ Front



1 “OFF”
2 Door position on/off
3 “ON”

▶ Rear



On/off

If door position on is selected for the front interior light, the rear interior light is also turned on/off by the opening and closing of a door.

Personal lights

▶ Front



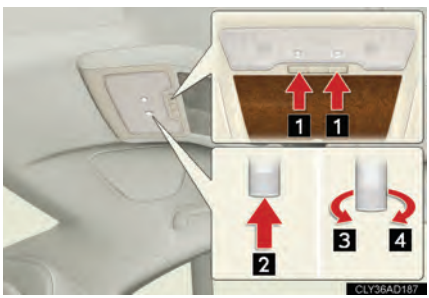
On/off

▶ Rear (without rear seat entertainment system)



On/off

▶ Rear (with rear seat entertainment system)



1 On/off
2 Press the knob to release it, and turn the knob to the desired brightness.
3 Darker
4 Brighter

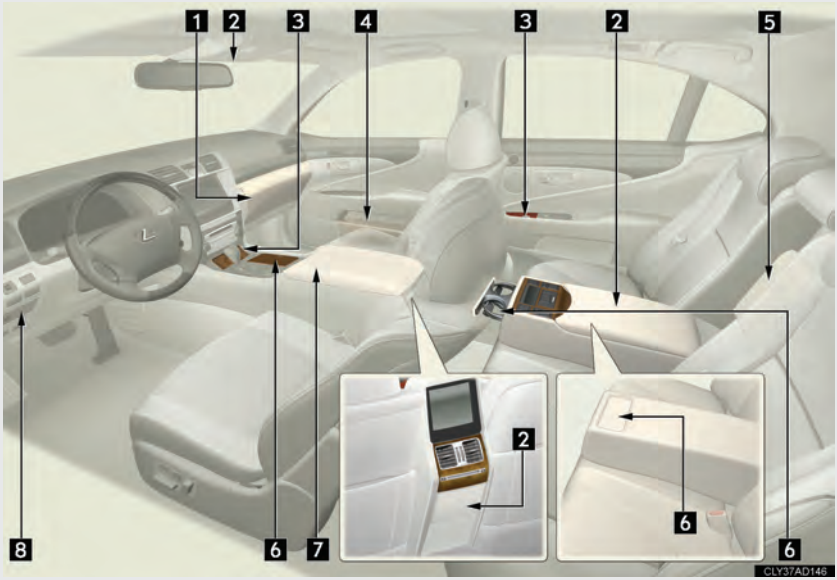
■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

If the interior lights remain on when the door is not fully closed and the front interior light switch (door position on/ off) is on, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ **Customization**

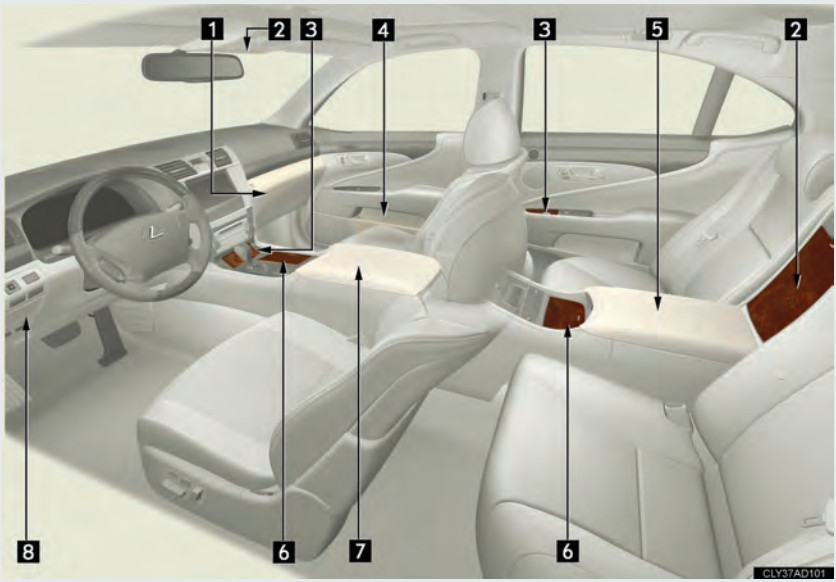
Settings (e.g. The time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 778)

▶ 5-seat models



1 Glove box
2 Auxiliary boxes (if equipped)
3 Non smokers boxes (if equipped)
4 Door pockets
5 Cool box/auxiliary box (if equipped)
6 Cup holders
7 Console box
8 Coin holder

▶ 4-seat models



1 Glove box
2 Auxiliary boxes
3 Non smokers boxes (if equipped)
4 Door pockets
5 Cool box/auxiliary box
6 Cup holders
7 Console box
8 Coin holder

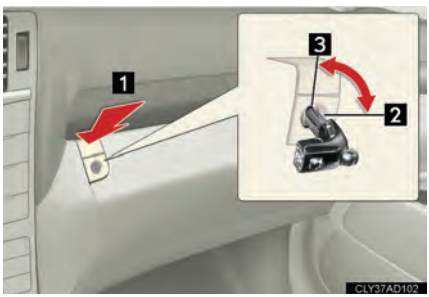
CAUTION

Items that should not be left in the storage spaces

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

Glove box



1 Open (push button)
2 Lock with the mechanical key
3 Unlock with the mechanical key

Trunk opener main switch

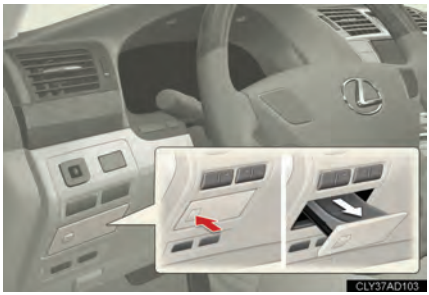
The trunk opener main switch is located in the glove box. (→ P. 58)

CAUTION

Caution while driving

Keep the glove box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Coin holder



Press in the button.

CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the coin holder closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Door pockets (front)



The front door pockets can be opened and closed.

CAUTION

■ Caution while driving

Keep the door pockets closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Cup holders

▶ Front



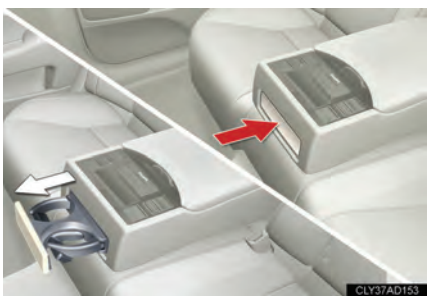
Press down and release the right side of the cup holder lid.

▶ Rear (5-seat models without auxiliary box)



Pull up the cup holder lid.

▶ Rear (5-seat models with auxiliary box)



Press in and release the cup holder.

▶ Rear (4-seat models)



Press in and release the button.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Items unsuitable for the cup holder

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders.
Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

■ When not in use

Keep the cup holders closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Console box

▶ Without rear console display



1 Slide the armrest while pressing the button.
2 Lift the armrest.

▶ With rear console display



1 Press the button.
2 Lift the armrest.

Tray in the console box (without rear console display)



The tray can be raised backward.

Opening and closing assist function (without rear console display)

When the console box is opened or closed partway, this function will apply force in the appropriate direction, helping open or close the console box.

CAUTION

Caution while driving

Keep the console box closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

NOTICE

Tray

Do not insert items exceeding the height of the tray. Doing so may prevent opening and closing of the lid.

Non smokers boxes (if equipped)

▶ Front



Press in the lid.

▶ Rear



Open the lid.

■ **Removing the non smokers box (front)**



Holding the left edge of the non smokers box, pull upward.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Using the non smokers box**

Do not use the non smokers boxes as an ashtray.

■ **Caution while driving**

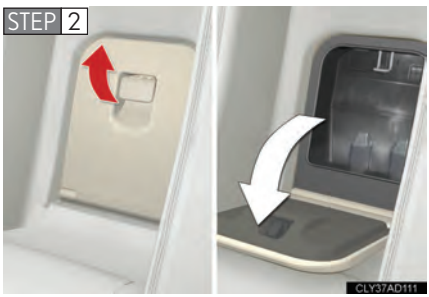
Keep the non smokers boxes closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

Cool box/auxiliary box (if equipped)

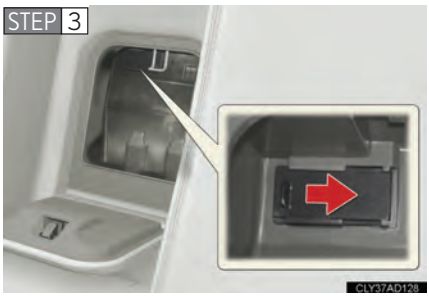
▶ 5-seat models

STEP 1 Pull down the armrest. (→P. 597)

STEP 2

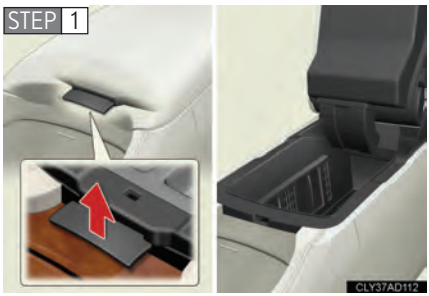


Pull the lever.

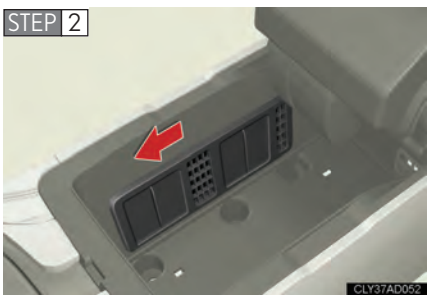


Open the cool air intake lid.

▶ 4-seat models



Pull up the lever to release the lock and lift the lid.



Open the cool air intake lid.

Cool box operating conditions

▶ 5-seat models



- The rear air conditioning system is on.
- is displayed on the rear control panel.

▶ 4-seat models



- The rear air conditioning system is on.
- is displayed on the rear control panel.

Items unsuitable for the cool box

- Drinks in unsealed containers
- Fragile items, perishables or anything with strong odor

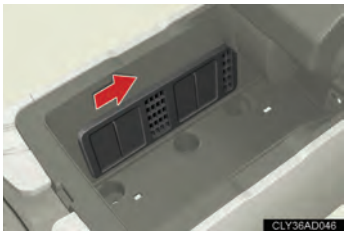
Using a cool box as an auxiliary box

▶ 5-seat models



Close the cool air intake lid to turn off the cool box system.

▶ 4-seat models



Close the cool air intake lid to turn off the cool box system.

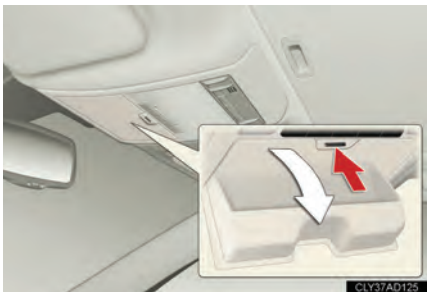
CAUTION

Caution while driving

Always keep the cool box/auxiliary box closed to reduce the chance of injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.

Auxiliary boxes

▶ Overhead



Press in the button.

This box is useful for temporarily storing sunglasses and similar small items.

▶ Rear console (with rear console display)

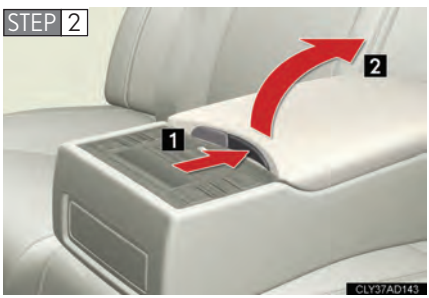


Press in the lid.

▶ Rear seat (if equipped on 5-seat models)

STEP 1 Pull down the armrest. (→P. 597)

STEP 2



1 Press the button.

2 Lift the lid.

The lid cannot be lifted while it is slid back. (→P. 597)

▶ Rear seat (4-seat models)



Press in the lid.

This box is useful for storing DVD discs and headphones.

Tray in the rear console

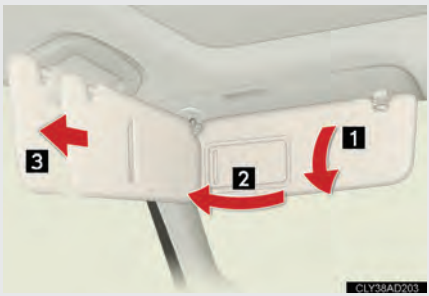


The tray can be removed.

CAUTION

Caution while driving

Do not leave the auxiliary box open while driving.
Items may fall out and cause death or serious injury in case of an accident or sudden stop.



1 Forward position:
Flip down.

2 Side position:
Flip down, unhook, and swing to the side.

3 Side extender:
Place in side position, then slide backward.

▶ Front



Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.

▶ Rear



Press the button to open.

The vanity light turns on.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When not in use**

Keep the rear vanity mirror closed.

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is stopped.

The clock is displayed when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode. Perform the following steps to adjust the clock.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

▶ Without touch screen



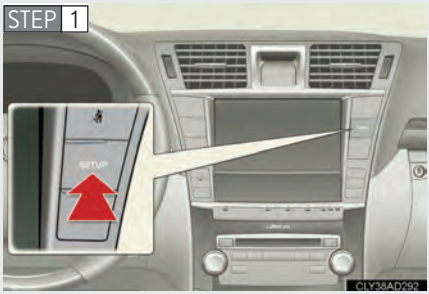
1 Adjusts the hour
2 Adjusts the minutes
3 Rounds to the nearest hour*

*: e.g. 1:00 to 1:29 → 1:00
1:30 to 1:59 → 2:00

▶ With touch screen



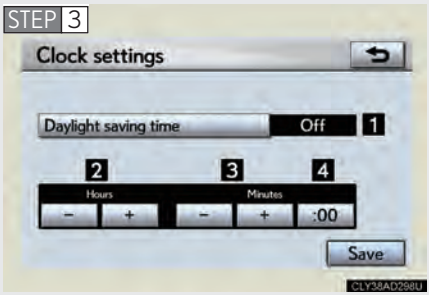
STEP 1



Press “SETUP”.

STEP 2 Touch “Clock” on the “Setup” screen.

STEP 3



1 Turns daylight saving time on/off

2 Adjusts the hour

3 Adjusts the minutes

4 Rounds to the nearest hour*

After setting, touch “Save”.

*: e.g. 1:00 to 1:29 → 1:00
1:30 to 1:59 → 2:00

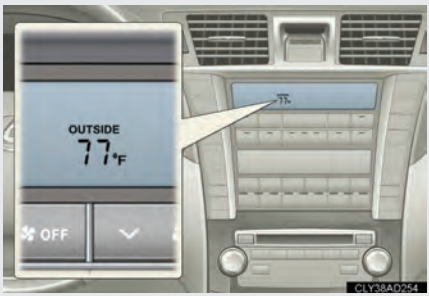
■ **When the battery is disconnected**

The time display will automatically be set to 1:00.

Outside temperature display

The displayed temperature ranges from -40°F (-40°C) up to 122°F (50°C) when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

▶ Without touch screen



▶ With touch screen



■ **When "– –" or "E" is displayed**

The system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

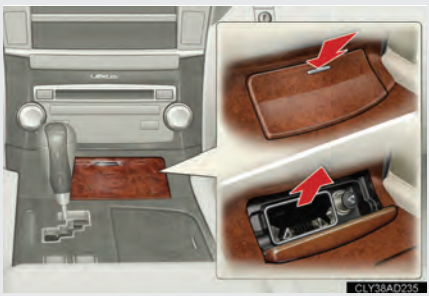
■ **Display**

In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.

- When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 12 mph [20 km/h])
- When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)

Ashtrays*

▶ Front



Push the front part of the lid to open. Push the lid again to close.

To remove, pull the ashtray upwards.

▶ Rear



Open the ashtray lid.

To remove, pull the ashtray upwards.

CAUTION

■ When not in use

Keep the ashtray closed.
Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

■ To prevent fire

- Fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.
- Do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.

*: If equipped

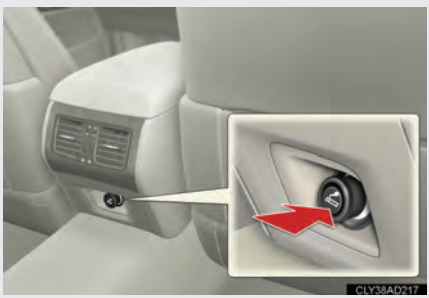
▶ Front



Push the front part of the lid to open, and push the cigarette lighter down.

The cigarette lighter will pop up when it is ready for use.

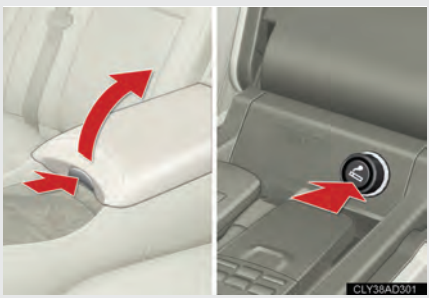
▶ Rear (5-seat models without rear console display)



Push the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter will pop out when it is ready for use.

▶ Rear (4-seat models)



Open the auxiliary box and push the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter will pop out when it is ready for use.

*: If equipped

■ **The cigarette lighter can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **To avoid burns or fires**

- Do not touch the metal parts of the cigarette lighter.
- Do not hold the cigarette lighter down. It could overheat and cause a fire.
- Do not insert anything other than the cigarette lighter into the outlet.

■ **When not in use**

Keep the ashtray closed.
Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

The power outlet can be used for a following component.

12 V: Accessories that run on less than 10 A.
115 VAC: Accessories that use less than 100 W.

12 V

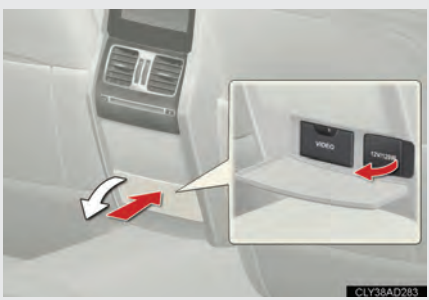
▶ Front



▶ Rear (5-seat models without rear console display)*



▶ Rear (5-seat models with rear console display)*



▶ Rear (4-seat models)*

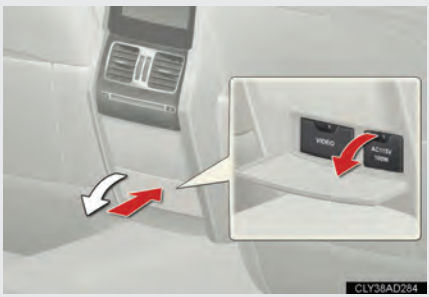


115 VAC

▶ Without rear console display*



▶ With rear console display*



*: If equipped

■ **The power outlet can be used when**

▶ **12 V**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

▶ **115 VAC**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To avoid damaging the power outlet**

Close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.
Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ **To prevent the fuse from being blown**

▶ **12 V**

Do not use an accessory that uses more than 12 V 10 A.

▶ **115 VAC**

Do not use a 115 VAC appliance that requires more than 100 W.

If a 115 VAC appliance that consumes more than 100 W is used, the protection circuit will cut the power supply.

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

■ **Appliances that may not operate properly (115 VAC)**

The following 115 VAC appliances may not operate properly even if their power consumption is under 100 W.

- Appliances with high initial peak wattage
- Measuring devices that process precise data
- Other appliances that require an extremely stable power supply

Heated steering wheel*

The heated steering wheel can be used to heat the leather portion of the steering wheel.



On/off

The indicator light comes on when the heater is operating.

■ **Operating condition**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Timer**

The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

■ **If the indicator light flashes**

Press the button to turn the heated steering wheel off and then press the button again. If the indicator light still flashes, a malfunction may be occurring. Turn the heated steering wheel off and have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*: If equipped

⚠ CAUTION

Burns

Only appropriately qualified and capable non-impaired persons should operate the vehicle. However, care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes into contact with the steering wheel when the heated steering wheel is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

⚠ NOTICE

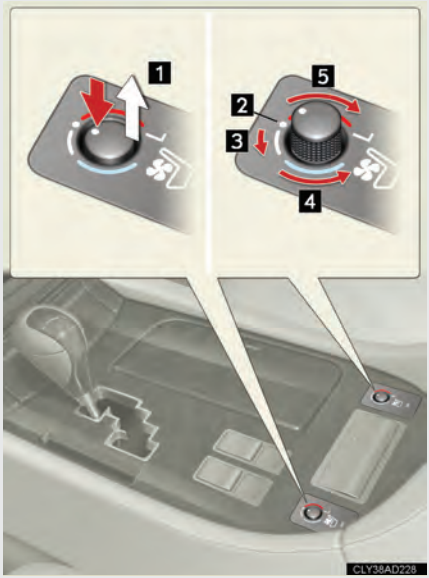
To prevent the battery from being discharged

Turn the switch off when the engine is not running.

Climate control seats/seat heaters*

The temperature of the seats can be adjusted individually.

Front climate control seats



1 Press the knob to release it, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

2 Off

Press the knob to lock it when not in use.

3 Ventilation

4 Cool air

5 Warm air

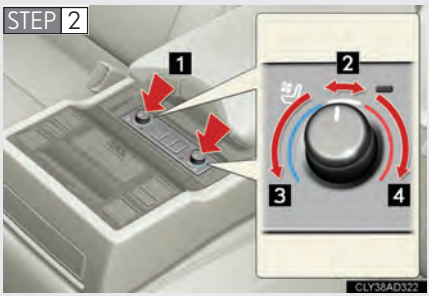
*: If equipped

■ Rear climate control seats

▶ 5-seat models

STEP 1 Slide the armrest lid. (→P. 597)

STEP 2



1 Press the knob to turn the system on, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

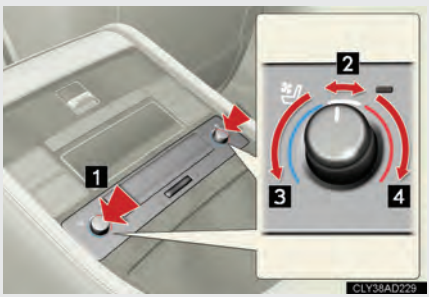
Press the knob again to turn the system off.

2 Ventilation

3 Cool air

4 Warm air

▶ 4-seat models



1 Press the knob to turn the system on, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

Press the knob again to turn the system off.

2 Ventilation

3 Cool air

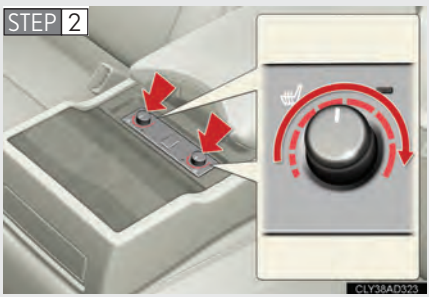
4 Warm air



The rear climate control seats can also be turned on and off from the front seats.

Rear seat heaters

STEP 1 Slide the armrest lid. (→P. 597)



Press the knob to turn the system on, and turn the knob to the desired temperature setting.

The further you turn the knob clockwise, the warmer the seat temperature becomes. Press the knob again to turn the system off.



The rear seat heaters can also be turned on and off from the front seats.

■ **Operating condition**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Replacing the air filters**

Filters are installed in the climate control seats. For replacement of the filters, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Burns/excessive cooling**

- Use caution when seating the following persons in a seat to avoid the possibility of burns or excessive cooling:
  - Babies, small children, elderly persons, sick persons and persons with a physical disability
  - Persons who have sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs which induce sleep, such as sleeping drugs and cold remedies
- Do not cover the seat with anything when using the climate control seat or seat heater. Using the climate control seat or seat heater with a blanket or cushion may increase or decrease the temperature of the seat, resulting in overheating or overcooling.
- Do not use the climate control seat or seat heater more than necessary. Doing so may cool the occupants excessively or may cause minor burns or overheating.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the climate control seat and seat heater**

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects, such as needles and nails, into the seat.

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not leave the system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Armrest (5-seat models)



Pull the armrest down for use.

When operating the switches in the armrest (with auxiliary box)



Press the button to release the lock, and slide the lid back.

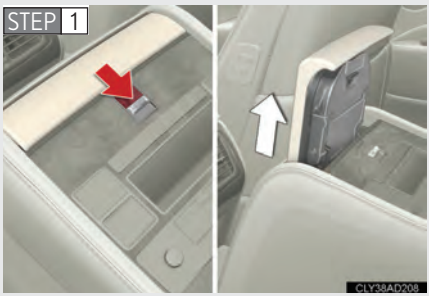
Press the button again for returning the lid.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the armrest

Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

Retractable table (4-seat models)



Slide the lever to raise the table.



Pull the table up and pull down the table.



The position of the table can be changed. Before using the table, make sure that the table is securely locked.

When the table is in use, the front seats will stop if they are going to contact the table. (→P. 68, 86)



When returning the table, pull it up while pulling the lock release lever.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When not in use

To avoid injury, return the table.

■ Caution while driving

Keep the table stowed properly in its place. In the event of an accident, contact with the table may result in death or serious injury.

■ When using the table

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Make sure the table is securely locked.
- Do not lean on the table.
- Do not put anything heavier than 22 lb. (10 kg) on the table.

⚠ NOTICE

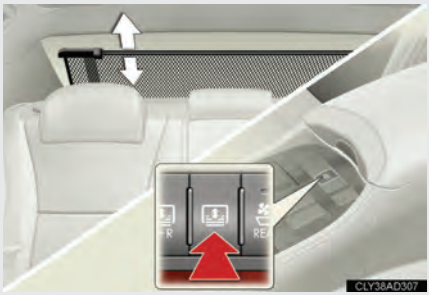
■ To prevent damage to the table

Do not place too much strain on the table.

Rear sunshade*

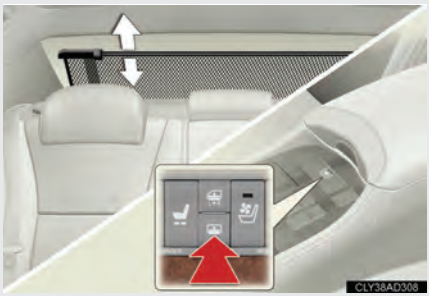
The rear sunshade can be raised and lowered by operating any of the buttons shown below.

▶ From front seat (without rear console display)



Extend/retract

▶ From front seat (with rear console display)

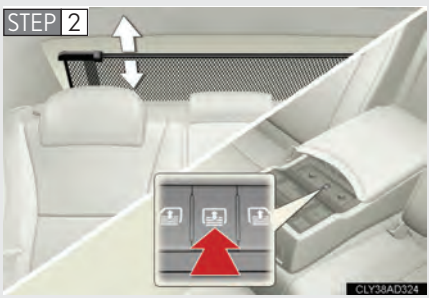


Extend/retract

▶ From rear seat (5-seat models)

STEP 1 Slide the armrest lid. (→P. 597)

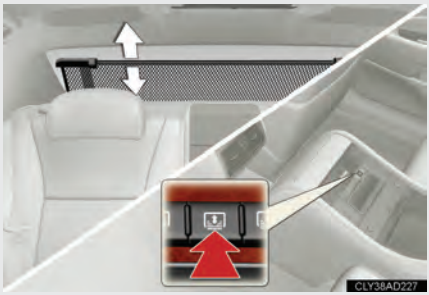
STEP 2



Extend/retract

*: If equipped

▶ From rear seat (4-seat models)



Extend/retract

■ **The rear sunshade can be used when**

The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Operating the rear sunshade after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF**

The rear sunshade can be operated for approximately 60 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF.

■ **Reverse operation feature**

To ensure adequate rear visibility, the rear sunshade automatically lowers when the shift lever is shifted to "R".

However, the rear sunshade is raised again if any of the following occurs:

- The button is pressed again.
- The shift lever is shifted to "P".
- The shift lever is shifted out of "P" and "R", and the vehicle reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h).

If the engine is turned off when the rear sunshade has been lowered due to the reverse operation feature, it will not be raised even when the engine is turned on again and the vehicle reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h). To raise the sunshade again, press the button.

Button lock function

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. (→P. 367)

CAUTION

When the rear sunshade is being raised or lowered

Do not place fingers or other objects in the shade mechanism or in the opening as injury may result.

NOTICE

To prevent the battery from being discharged

Do not operate the rear sunshade when the engine is not running.

To ensure normal operation of the sunshade

Observe the following precautions:

- Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components.
- Do not place objects where they may hinder opening and closing operations.
- Do not attach items to the rear sunshade.
- Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
- Do not operate the rear sunshade continuously for long periods of time.

Rear door sunshades*

The rear door sunshades can be extended and retracted by operating any of the buttons shown below.

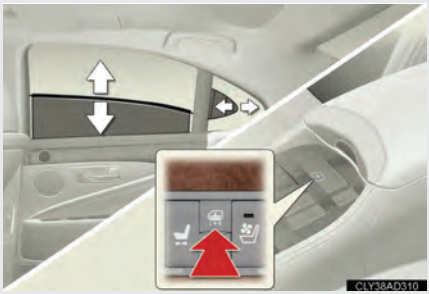
▶ From front seat (without rear console display)



Extend/retract

The rear door sunshades can be extended only when both of left and right rear door sunshades are retracted. Pressing the button with either side retracted will cause both sides to be retracted.

▶ From front seat (with rear console display)



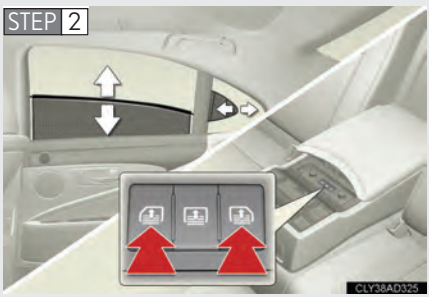
Extend/retract

The rear door sunshades can be extended only when both of left and right rear door sunshades are retracted. Pressing the button with either side retracted will cause both sides to be retracted.

▶ From rear seat (5-seat models)

STEP 1 Slide the armrest lid. (→P. 597)

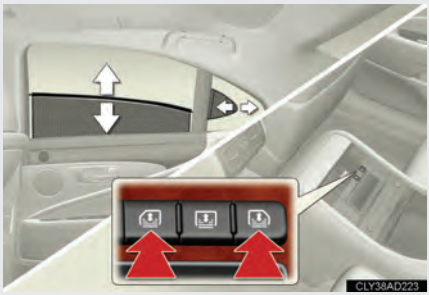
STEP 2



Extend/retract

*: If equipped

▶ From rear seat (4-seat models)



Extend/retract

■ **Operating conditions**

- The "ENGINE START STOP" switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The rear windows are fully closed.
  The rear door sunshades automatically retract when the rear windows are opened.

■ **Operating the rear door sunshades after turning the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF**

The rear door sunshades can be operated for approximately 60 seconds even after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is switched to ACCESSORY mode or turned OFF.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object becomes caught between a rear door sunshade and the window frame, the jam protection function will cause the sunshade to detach from its drive mechanism and retract.

▶ If the jam protection function operates when extending the rear door sunshades

Pressing the button will reconnect the sunshade.
Pressing the button again will allow the sunshades to be operated.
If the sunshade does not operate after the button is pressed, press the button again.

▶ If the jam protection function operates when retracting the rear door sunshades

Press and hold the button to re-extend the rear door sunshades, and continue pressing for more than 5 seconds after the sunshades have fully extended and stopped.

■ **Button lock function**

To prevent inadvertent operation, some buttons on the rear armrest can be locked. (→P. 367)

■ **When reconnecting the battery**

The rear door sunshades will always be retracted the first time the button is pressed.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When the rear door sunshades are being extended or retracted**

Do not place fingers or other objects in the shade mechanism or in the opening as injury may result.

■ **Jam protection function**

Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent the battery from being discharged**

Do not operate the rear door sunshades when the engine is not running.

■ **To ensure normal operation of the sunshades**

Observe the following precautions:

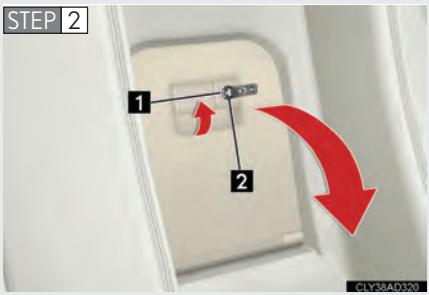
- Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components.
- Do not place objects where they may hinder opening and closing operations.
- Do not attach items to the rear door sunshades.
- Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
- Do not operate the rear door sunshades continuously for long periods of time.

Trunk storage extension*

Long objects can be loaded in the vehicle by utilizing the trunk space and rear seat area.

STEP 1 Pull down the armrest. (→P. 597)

STEP 2



Open the armrest door.

The armrest door can be locked and unlocked using the mechanical key.

1 Lock
2 Unlock

▶ Opening from the cabin

STEP 3



Open the inside trunk door from the cabin, and load baggage or other items.

▶ Opening from the trunk

STEP 3



Open the inside trunk door from the trunk, and load baggage or other items.

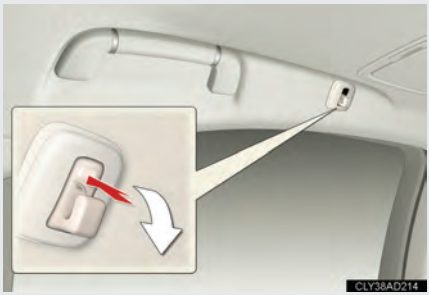
*: If equipped

CAUTION

When not in use

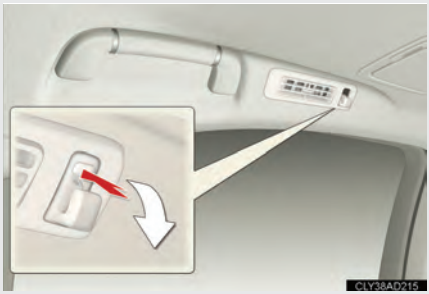
Ensure that the inside trunk door is closed.
In the event of sudden braking, items stored in the trunk may be thrown forward into the cabin, resulting in injury.

▶ Without rear air conditioning system



To use the coat hook, push it on.

▶ With rear air conditioning system



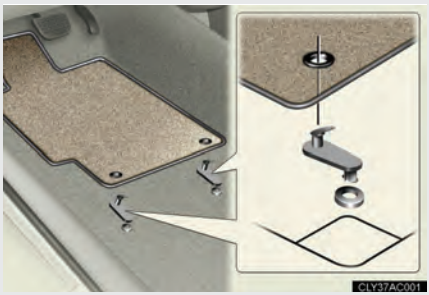
To use the coat hook, push it on.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Items that must not be hung on the hook

Do not hang a coat hanger or other hard or sharp object on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles that cause death or serious injury.

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.



Fix the floor mat in place using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) and the fixing procedure of the floor mat for your vehicle may differ from those shown in the illustration. For details, refer to the floor mat retention clip installation instructions supplied with the clips.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle, leading to a serious accident.

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ Before driving



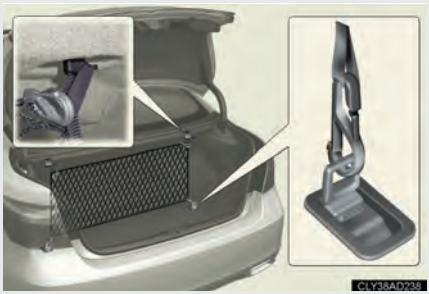
- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in "P", fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

Cargo net

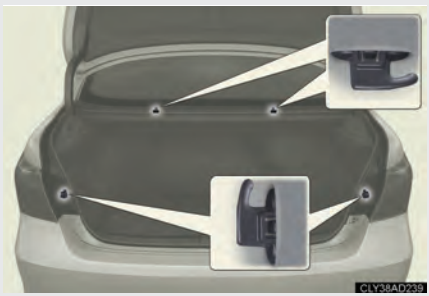


The cargo net is provided for securing loose items on the floor or items inside the trunk.

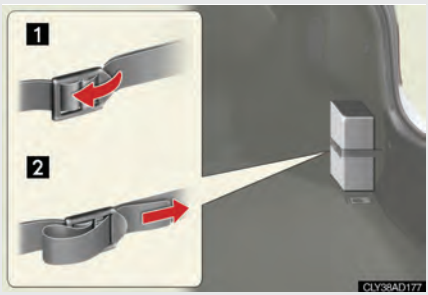
Raise the cargo hooks on the floor. Hook the net on the cargo hooks.



Shopping bag hooks



First-aid kit storage belt



1 Loosen
2 Tighten

CAUTION

When the cargo net is not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks on the floor to their stowed positions.

The garage door opener can be programmed to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, security systems, and other devices.

The garage door opener (HomeLink® Universal Transceiver) is manufactured under license from HomeLink®.

Programming the HomeLink®

The HomeLink® compatible transceiver in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming method below appropriate for the device.



1 Indicator
2 Buttons

Programming the HomeLink® (for U.S.A. owners)



Point the remote control transmitter for the device 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) from the HomeLink® control buttons.

Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in view while programming.

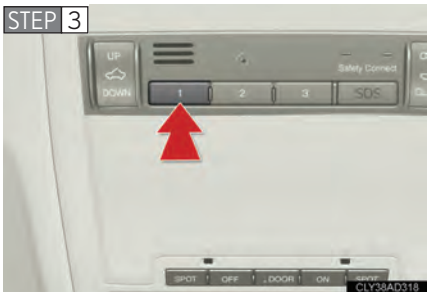
STEP 2



Press and hold one of the HomeLink® buttons and the transmitter button. When the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash, you can release both buttons.

If the HomeLink® indicator light comes on but does not flash, flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and remains lit, the HomeLink® button is already programmed. Use the other buttons or follow the "Reprogramming a HomeLink® button" instructions. (→P. 615)

STEP 3



Test the HomeLink® operation by pressing the newly programmed button.

If a HomeLink® button has been programmed for a garage door, check to see if the garage door opens and closes. If the garage door does not operate, see if your remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink® button. The remote control transmitter is of the rolling code type if the HomeLink® indicator light flashes rapidly for 2 seconds and then remains lit. If your transmitter is of the rolling code type, proceed to the heading "Programming a rolling code system".

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming a Rolling Code system (for U.S.A. owners)**

If your device is Rolling Code equipped, follow the steps under the heading "Programming the HomeLink®" before proceeding with the steps listed below.

STEP 1 Locate the learn button on the ceiling mounted garage door opener motor. The exact location and color of the button may vary by brand of garage door opener motor.

Refer to the operation manual supplied with the garage door opener for the location of the learn button.

STEP 2 Press the learn button.

Following this step, you have 30 seconds in which to initiate step 3 below.

STEP 3 Press and hold the vehicle's programmed HomeLink® button for 2 seconds and release it. Repeat this step once again. The garage door may open.

If the garage door opens, the programming process is complete. If the door does not open, press and release the button a third time. This third press and release will complete the programming process by opening the garage door.

The ceiling mounted garage door opener motor should now recognize the HomeLink® signal and operate the garage door.

STEP 4 Repeat the steps above to program another rolling code system for any of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming an entry gate (for U.S.A. owners)/Programming all devices in the Canadian market**

STEP 1 Place your transmitter 1 to 3 in. (25 to 75 mm) away from the surface of the HomeLink®.

Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in view while programming.

STEP 2 Press and hold the selected HomeLink® button.

STEP 3 Repeatedly press and release (cycle) the device's remote control button for two seconds each until step 4 is completed.

STEP 4 When the indicator light on the HomeLink® compatible transceiver starts to flash rapidly, release the buttons.

STEP 5 Test the operation of the HomeLink® by pressing the newly programmed button. Check to see if the gate/device operates correctly.

STEP 6 Repeat the steps above to program another device for each of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ **Programming other devices**

To program other devices such as home security systems, home door locks or lighting, contact your authorized Lexus dealer for assistance.

■ **Reprogramming a button**

The individual HomeLink® buttons cannot be erased but can be reprogrammed. To reprogram a button, follow the "Reprogramming a HomeLink® button" instructions.

Operating HomeLink®

Press the appropriate HomeLink® button. The HomeLink® indicator light should turn on.

The HomeLink® compatible transceiver in your vehicle continues to send a signal for up to 20 seconds as long as the button is pressed.

Reprogramming a HomeLink® button

Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. After 20 seconds, the HomeLink® indicator light will start flashing slowly. Next, while still pressing and holding the HomeLink® button, press and hold the button on the transmitter until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapid flash.

Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three programs)



Press and hold the 2 outside buttons for 10 seconds until the indicator light flashes.

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink® memory.

Before programming

- Install a new battery in the remote control transmitter.
- The battery side of the remote control transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink® button.

Certification for the garage door opener

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

FCC ID: CB2070NHL4

NOTE:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) this device may not cause interference, and
(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

When support is necessary

Visit on the web at www.homelink.com or call 1-800-355-3515.

CAUTION

When programming a garage door or other remote control device

The garage door on other device may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

Conforming to federal safety standards

Do not use the HomeLink® compatible transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.
This includes any garage door that cannot detect an obstruction object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

Compass*

The compass on the inside rear view mirror indicates the direction in which the vehicle is heading.

Operation



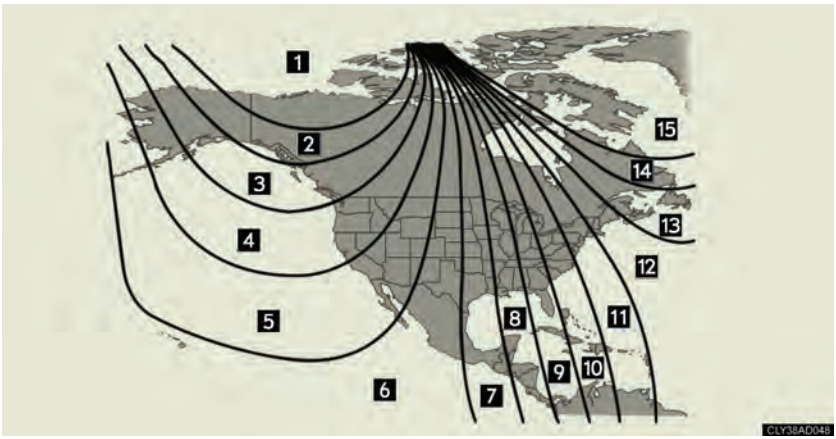
To turn the compass on or off, press and hold "AUTO" for more than 3 seconds.

Displays and directions

Display	Direction
N	North
NE	Northeast
E	East
SE	Southeast
S	South
SW	Southwest
W	West
NW	Northwest

*: If equipped

Calibrating the compass

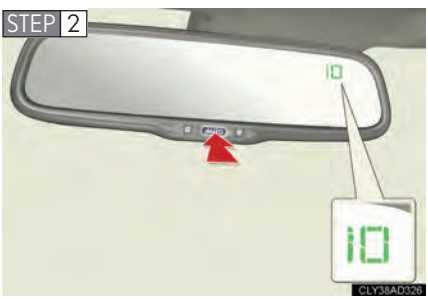


The direction display deviates from the true direction determined by the earth's magnetic field. The amount of deviation varies according to the geographic position of the vehicle.

If you cross over a map boundary shown in illustration, the compass will deviate.
To obtain higher precision or perfect calibration, refer to the following.

Deviation calibration

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle.



STEP 2 Press and hold "AUTO" for 6 seconds.

A number (1 to 15) appears on the compass display.

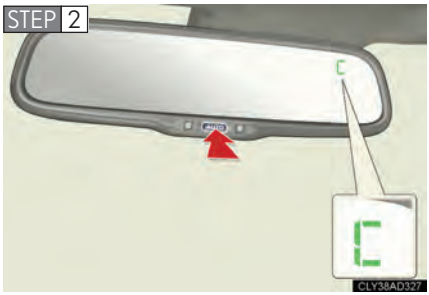
STEP 3 Press "AUTO", and referring to the map above, select the number of the zone where you are.

If the direction is displayed several seconds after adjustment, the calibration is complete.

■ Circling calibration

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle where it is safe to drive in a circle.

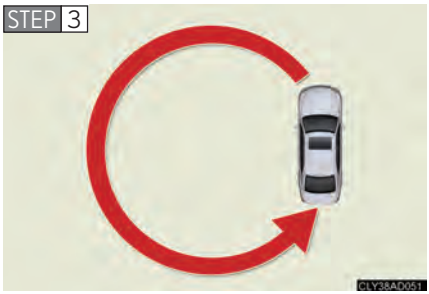
STEP 2



Press and hold "AUTO" for 12 seconds.

"C" appears on the compass display.

STEP 3



Drive the vehicle at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less in a circle until a direction is displayed.

If there is not enough space to drive in a circle, drive around the block until the direction is displayed.

■ Conditions unfavorable to correct operation

The compass may not show the correct direction in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped immediately after turning.
- The vehicle is on an inclined surface.
- The vehicle is in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields (underground car park/parking lot, under a steel tower, between buildings, roof car park/parking lot, near an intersection, near a large vehicle, etc.).
- The vehicle has become magnetized.
  (There is a magnet or metal object near the inside rear view mirror.)
- The battery has been disconnected.
- A door is open.

■ If "C" appears on the display

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle where it is safe to drive in a circle.

STEP 2 Drive the vehicle at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less in a circle until a direction is displayed.

If there is not enough space to drive in a circle, drive around the block until the direction is displayed.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **While driving the vehicle**

Do not adjust the display. Be sure to adjust the display only when the vehicle is stopped.

■ **When doing the circling calibration**

Be sure to secure a wide space, and watch out for people and vehicles in the neighborhood. Do not violate any local traffic rules while performing circling calibration.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To avoid the compass malfunctions**

Do not place magnets or any metal objects near the inside rear view mirror. Doing this may cause a malfunction of the compass sensor.

■ **To ensure normal operation of the compass**

- Do not perform circling calibration of the compass in a place where the earth's magnetic field is subject to interference by artificial magnetic fields.
- During calibration, do not operate electric systems (moon roof, power windows, etc.) as they may interfere with the calibration.

Safety Connect*

Safety Connect is a subscription-based telematics service that uses Global Positioning System (GPS) data and embedded cellular technology to provide safety and security features to subscribers. Safety Connect is supported by Lexus' designated response center, which operates 24 hours per day, 7 days per week.

Safety Connect service is available by subscription on select, telematics hardware-equipped vehicles.

By using the Safety Connect service, you are agreeing to be bound by the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and its Terms and Conditions, as in effect and amended from time to time, a current copy of which is available at Lexus.com. All use of the Safety Connect service is subject to such then-applicable Terms and Conditions.

System components



1 Microphone
2 LED light indicators
3 "SOS" button

*: If equipped

■ **Services**

Subscribers have the following Safety Connect services available:

- Automatic Collision Notification*
  Helps drivers receive necessary response from emergency service providers. (→P. 625)

  *: U.S. Patent No. 7,508,298 B2
- Stolen Vehicle Location
  Helps drivers in the event of vehicle theft. (→P. 626)
- Emergency Assistance Button (SOS)
  Connects drivers to response-center support. (→P. 626)
- Enhanced Roadside Assistance
  Provides drivers various on-road assistance. (→P. 626)

■ **Subscription**

After you have signed the Telematics Subscription Service Agreement and are enrolled, you can begin receiving services.

A variety of subscription terms is available for purchase. Contact your Lexus dealer, call 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) or push the "SOS" button in your vehicle for further subscription details.

■ **Safety Connect Services Information**

- Phone calls using the vehicles Bluetooth® technology will not be possible during Safety Connect.
- Safety Connect is available beginning Fall 2009 on select Lexus models. Contact with the Safety Connect response center is dependent upon the telematics device being in operative condition, cellular connection availability, and GPS satellite signal reception, which can limit the ability to reach the response center or receive emergency service support. Enrollment and Telematics Subscription Service Agreement required. A variety of subscription terms is available; charges vary by subscription term selected.
- Automatic Collision Notification, Emergency Assistance and Stolen Vehicle Location will function in the United States, including Hawaii and Alaska, and in Canada, and Enhanced Roadside Assistance will function in the United States (except Hawaii) and in Canada. No Safety Connect services will function outside of the United States in countries other than Canada.
- Safety Connect services are not subject to section 255 of the Telecommunications Act and the device is not TTY compatible.

■ **Languages**

The Safety Connect response center will offer support in multiple languages. The Safety Connect system will offer voice prompts in English and Spanish. Please indicate your language of choice when enrolling.

■ **When contacting the response center**

You may be unable to contact the response center if the network is busy.

Safety Connect LED light Indicators

When the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the red indicator light comes on for 2 seconds then turns off. Afterward, the green indicator light comes on, indicating that the service is active.
The following indicator light patterns indicate specific system usage conditions:

- Green indicator light on = Active service
- Green indicator light flashing = Safety Connect call in process
- Red indicator light (except at vehicle start-up) = System malfunction (contact your Lexus dealer)
- No indicator light (off) = Safety Connect service not active

Safety Connect services

Automatic Collision Notification

In case of either airbag deployment or severe rear-end collision, the system is designed to automatically call the response center. The responding agent receives the vehicle's location and attempts to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the level of emergency. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency, contacts the nearest emergency services provider to describe the situation, and requests that assistance be sent to the location.

Stolen Vehicle Location

If your vehicle is stolen, Safety Connect can work with local authorities to assist them in locating and recovering the vehicle. After filing a police report, call the Safety Connect response center at 1-800-25-LEXUS (1-800-255-3987) and follow the prompts for Safety Connect to initiate this service.

In addition to assisting law enforcement with recovery of a stolen vehicle, Safety-Connect-equipped vehicle location data may, under certain circumstances, be shared with third parties to locate your vehicle. Further information is available at Lexus.com.

Emergency Assistance Button ("SOS")

In the event of an emergency on the road, push the "SOS" button to reach the Safety Connect response center. The answering agent will determine your vehicle's location, assess the emergency, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the response-center agent that you are not experiencing an emergency.

Enhanced Roadside Assistance

Enhanced Roadside Assistance adds GPS data to the already included warranty-based Lexus roadside service.

Subscribers can press the "SOS" button to reach a Safety Connect response-center agent, who can help with a wide range of needs, such as: towing, flat tire, fuel delivery, etc. For a description of the Enhanced Roadside Assistance services and their limitations, please see the Safety Connect Terms and Conditions, which are available at Lexus.com.

Safety information for Safety Connect

Important! Read this information before using Safety Connect.

Exposure to radio frequency signals

The Safety Connect system installed in your vehicle is a low-power radio transmitter and receiver. It receives and also sends out radio frequency (RF) signals.

In August 1996, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) adopted RF exposure guidelines with safety levels for mobile wireless phones. Those guidelines are consistent with the safety standards previously set by the following U.S. and international standards bodies.

- ANSI (American National Standards Institute) C95.1 [1992]
- NCRP (National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement) Report 86 [1986]
- ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection) [1996]

Those standards were based on comprehensive and periodic evaluations of the relevant scientific literature. Over 120 scientists, engineers, and physicians from universities, and government health agencies and industries reviewed the available body of research to develop the ANSI Standard (C95.1).

The design of Safety Connect complies with the FCC guidelines in addition to those standards.

■ **License**

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501
5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239
5,267,261 5,544,196 5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
5,710,784 5,778,338

■ **Certification for Lexus Enform with Safety Connect**

FCC ID: O9EGTM1

FCC ID: O6Y-CDMRF101

NOTE:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Maintenance and care 4

4-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 630

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 633

4-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 636

General maintenance 638

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs 641

4-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 642

Hood 645

Positioning a floor jack 646

Engine compartment 648

Tires 664

Tire inflation pressure 672

Wheels 676

Air conditioning filter 678

Electronic key battery 681

Checking and replacing fuses 683

Headlight aim 688

Light bulbs 690

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ **Automatic car washes**

- Fold the mirrors back before washing the vehicle.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

■ **High pressure car washes**

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

■ **Aluminum wheels**

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners. Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■ **Bumpers and side moldings**

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **When cleaning the windshield**



Set the wiper switch to off.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.

- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ **Caution about the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers**

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipes and diffusers until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers can cause burns.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)**

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If you see coal tar or tree sap on the paint surface
  - If you see dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings on the paint
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled in dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ **Cleaning the exterior lights**

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax on the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ **When using an automatic car wash**

Set the wiper switch to off position.
If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

  Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not apply water. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

CAUTION

Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.

  Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.

- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P. 123)

  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or severe injury.

Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Cleaning detergents

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, or bleach
  - Seats: Acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, or alcohol
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces.

- Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or that contain wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components under the floor of the vehicle, and may also cause the body to rust.

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. It is the owner's responsibility to perform regular checks. Lexus recommends the following maintenance.

General maintenance

General maintenance should be performed on a daily basis. This can be done by yourself or by a Lexus dealer.

Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For details about maintenance items and schedules, refer to the "Warranty and Service Guide/Owner's Manual Supplement/Scheduled Maintenance".

Do-it-yourself maintenance

You can perform some maintenance procedures yourself.
Please be aware that do-it-yourself maintenance may affect warranty coverage.

The use of Lexus Repair Manuals is recommended.

For details about warranty coverage, see the separate "Owner's Guide", "Warranty and Service Guide", "Owner's Manual Supplement" or "Warranty Booklet".

Repair and replacement

It is recommended that genuine Lexus parts be used for repair to ensure performance of each system. If non-Lexus parts are used in replacement or if a repair shop other than a Lexus dealer performs repairs, confirm the warranty coverage.

■ **Allow inspection and repairs to be performed by a Lexus dealer**

- Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists and are kept up to date with the latest service information. They are well informed about the operations of all systems on your vehicle.
- Keep a copy of the repair order. It proves that the maintenance that has been performed is under warranty coverage. If any problem should arise while your vehicle is under warranty, your Lexus dealer will promptly take care of it.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **If your vehicle is not properly maintained**

It could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible serious injury or death.

■ **Warning in handling of battery**

- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and a wide variety of automobile components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and other reproductive harm. Work in a well ventilated area.
- Oils, fuels and fluids contained in vehicles as well as waste produced by component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Avoid exposure and wash any affected area immediately.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 660)

Listed below are the general maintenance items that should be performed at the intervals specified in the "Warranty and Service Guide" or "Owner's Manual Supplement". It is recommended that any problem you notice should be brought to the attention of your Lexus dealer or qualified service shop for advice.

Engine compartment

Items	Check points
Battery	Maintenance-free? (→P. 660)
Brake fluid	At the correct level? (→P. 658)
Engine coolant	At the correct level? (→P. 656)
Engine oil	At the correct level? (→P. 652)
Exhaust system	No fumes or strange sounds?
Radiator/condenser/hoses	Not blocked with foreign matter? (→P. 658)
Washer fluid	At the correct level? (→P. 663)

Vehicle interior

Items	Check points
Accelerator pedal	• Moves smoothly (without uneven pedal effort or catching)?
Automatic transmission "Park" mechanism	• Can the vehicle be held securely on an incline with the shift lever in P?
Brake pedal	• Moves smoothly? • Does it have appropriate clearance and correct amount of free play?
Brakes	• Not pull to one side when applied? • Loss of brake effectiveness? • Spongy feeling brake pedal? • Pedal almost touches floor?
Head restraints	• Move smoothly and lock securely?
Indicators/buzzers	• Function properly?
Lights	• Do all the lights come on? • Headlights aimed correctly? (→P. 688)
Parking brake	• Moves smoothly? • Can hold the vehicle securely on an incline?
Seat belts	• Does the seat belt system operate smoothly? • Are the belts undamaged?
Seats	• Do the seat controls operate properly?

Items	Check points
Steering wheel	• Moves smoothly? • Has correct free play? • No strange noises?

Vehicle exterior

Items	Check points
Door/trunk	• Operate smoothly?
Engine hood	• The lock system works properly?
Fluid leaks	• Is there any leakage after parking?
Tire	• Inflation pressure is correct? • Tire surfaces not worn or damaged? • Tires rotated according to the maintenance schedule? • Wheel nuts are not loose?

⚠ CAUTION

■ If the engine is running

Turn the engine off and ensure that there is adequate ventilation before performing maintenance checks.

Emission inspection and maintenance (I/M) programs

Some states have vehicle emission inspection programs which include OBD (On Board Diagnostics) checks. The OBD system monitors the operation of the emission control system.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on

The OBD system determines that a problem exists somewhere in the emission control system. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test and may need to be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer to service the vehicle.

Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test:

- When the battery is disconnected or discharged

  Readiness codes that are set during ordinary driving are erased. Also, depending on your driving habits, the readiness codes may not be completely set.

- When the fuel tank cap is loose

  The malfunction indicator lamp comes on as a temporary malfunction and your vehicle may not pass the I/M test.

When the malfunction indicator lamp goes off after several driving trips

The error code in the OBD system will not be cleared unless the vehicle is driven 40 or more times.

If your vehicle does not pass the I/M test

Contact your Lexus dealer to prepare the vehicle for re-testing.

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Items		Parts and tools
Battery condition	(→P. 660)	• Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Brake fluid level	(→P. 658)	• FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)
Engine coolant level	(→P. 656)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. For the U.S.A.: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. For Canada: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is pre-mixed with 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding engine coolant)

Items		Parts and tools
Engine oil level	(→P. 652)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses	(→P. 683)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Headlight aim	(→P. 688)	• Phillips-head screwdriver
Light bulbs	(→P. 690)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original • Phillips-head screwdriver • Flathead screwdriver • Wrench
Radiator and condenser	(→P. 658)	—
Tire inflation pressure	(→P. 672)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid	(→P. 663)	• Water washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel

⚠ CAUTION

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions:

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from the moving fans and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper or rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the battery. Fuel and battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.

■ When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille

Be sure the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is OFF.
With the "ENGINE START STOP" switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 658)

■ Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in the eyes.

⚠ NOTICE

■ If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air. Also a backfire could cause a fire in the engine compartment.

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

STEP 1



Pull the hood release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.

STEP 2



Lift the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Pre-driving check

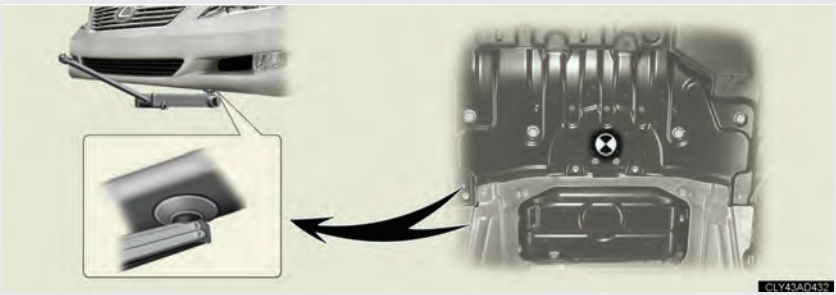
Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Positioning a floor jack

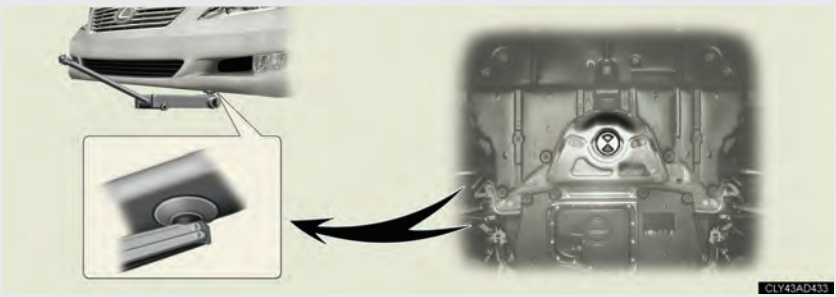
When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

Front

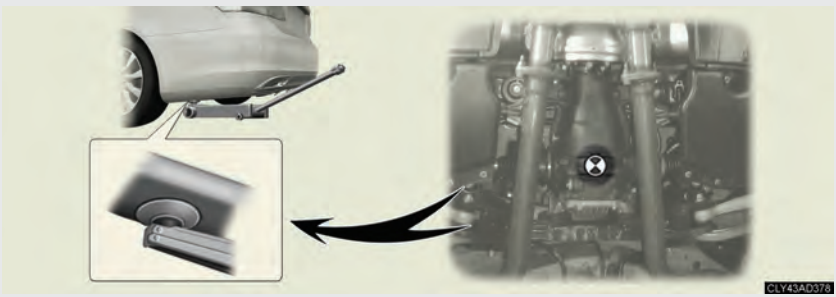
▶ 2WD models



▶ AWD models



Rear



⚠ CAUTION

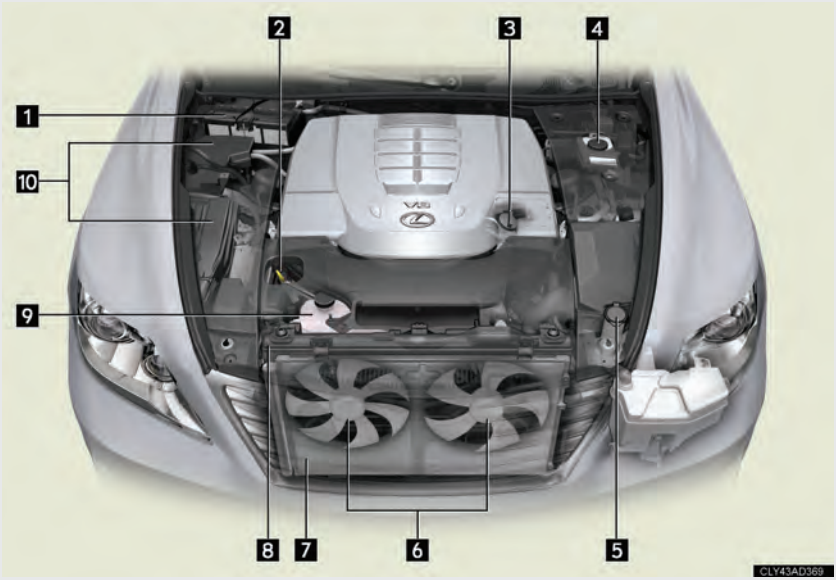
When raising your vehicle

Make sure to observe the following to reduce the possibility of death or serious injury:



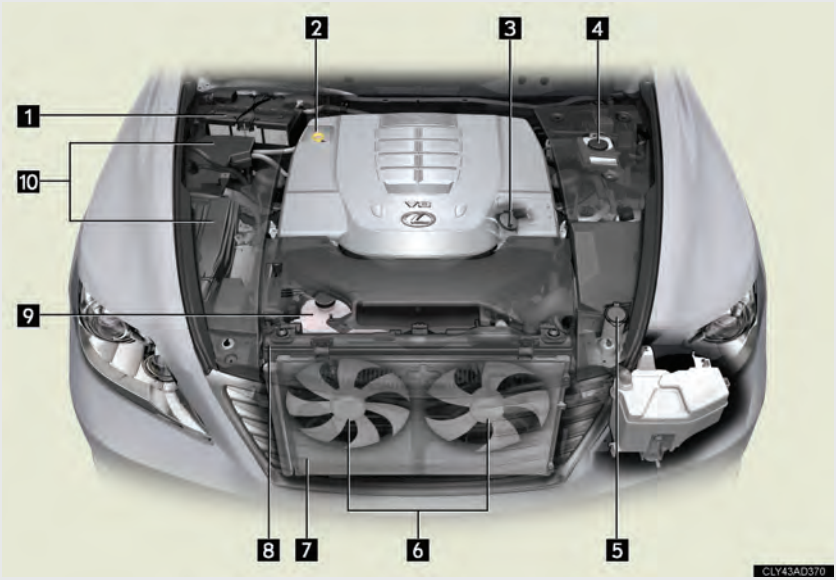
- Lift up the vehicle using a floor jack such as the one shown in the illustration.
- When using a floor jack, follow the instructions of the manual provided with the jack.
- Do not use the jack that was supplied with your vehicle.
- Do not put any part of your body or get underneath the vehicle supported only by the floor jack.
- Always use floor jack and/or automotive jack stands on a solid, flat, level surface.
- Do not start the engine while the vehicle is supported by the floor jack.
- Stop the vehicle on level firm ground, firmly set the parking brake and put the shift lever in "P".
- Make sure to set the floor jack properly at the jack point.
  Raising the vehicle with an improperly positioned floor jack will damage the vehicle and may cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in the vehicle.
- When raising the vehicle, do not place any objects on top of or underneath the floor jack.
- With electronically modulated air suspension:
  Be sure to turn off the height control and stop the engine. Otherwise, the vehicle height may change in the automatic leveling function. (→P. 244)

▶ 2WD models



1 Battery (→P. 660)
2 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 652)
3 Engine oil filler cap (→P. 652)
4 Brake fluid reservoir (→P. 658)
5 Washer fluid tank (→P. 663)
6 Electric cooling fans
7 Condenser (→P. 658)
8 Radiator (→P. 658)
9 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 656)
10 Fuse boxes (→P. 683)

▶ AWD models

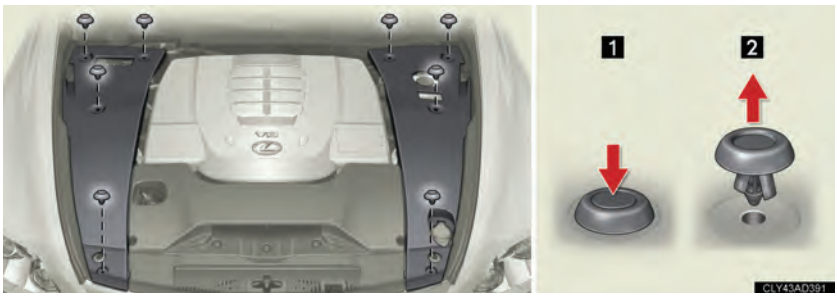


1 Battery (→P. 660)
2 Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 652)
3 Engine oil filler cap (→P. 652)
4 Brake fluid reservoir (→P. 658)
5 Washer fluid tank (→P. 663)
6 Electric cooling fans
7 Condenser (→P. 658)
8 Radiator (→P. 658)
9 Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 656)
10 Fuse boxes (→P. 683)

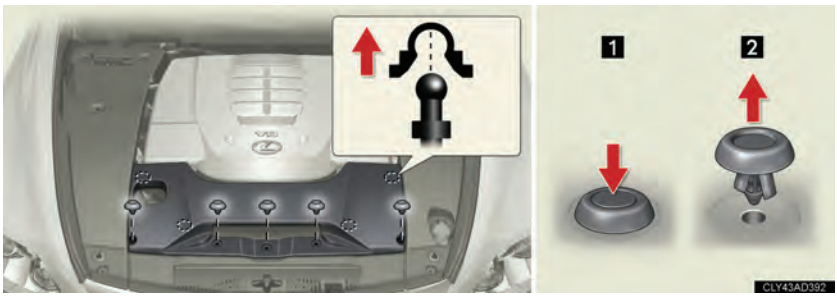
Engine compartment cover

Removing the engine compartment covers

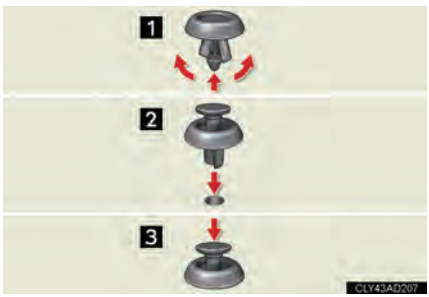
▶ Outside



▶ Front



Installing the clips

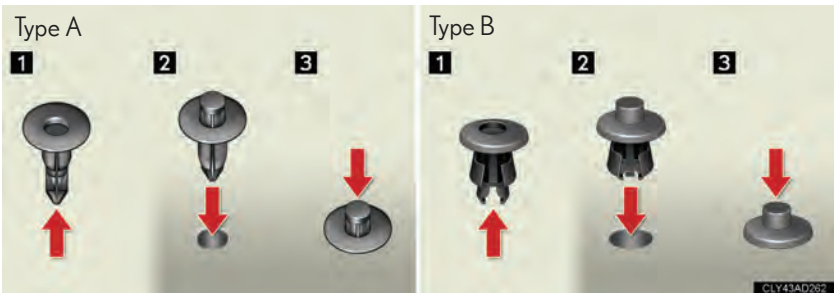


Battery cover

Removing the battery cover



Installing the clips



NOTICE

When installing the battery cover

Securely install the cover over the battery. Failure to do so may cause water to enter the engine compartment when it rains or the vehicle is washed, resulting in a malfunction.

Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

Checking the engine oil

STEP 1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After turning off the engine, wait more than five minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

STEP 2 Hold a rag under the end and pull the dipstick out.

▶ 2WD models



▶ AWD models

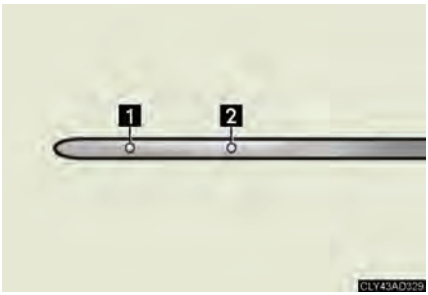


STEP 3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

STEP 4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

STEP 5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

STEP 6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.



1 Low
2 Full

Adding engine oil





If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

Engine oil selection	→P. 756
Oil quantity (Low → Full)	1.6 qt. (1.5 L, 1.3 Imp. qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

STEP 1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

STEP 2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

STEP 3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ **Engine oil consumption**

- The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the oil viscosity, the quality of the oil and the way the vehicle is driven.
- More oil is consumed under driving conditions such as high speeds, frequent acceleration and deceleration.
- A new engine consumes more oil.
- When judging the amount of oil consumption, keep in mind that the oil may have become diluted, making it difficult to judge the true level accurately.
- Oil consumption: Max. 1.1 qt./600 miles, 0.9 Imp. qt./600 miles (1.0 L per 1000 km)
- If your vehicle consumes more than 1.1 qt. (1.0 L, 0.9 Imp. qt.) every 600 miles (1000 km), contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **After changing the engine oil (U.S.A.)**

The oil change system should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

STEP 1 Switch the display to the trip meter "A" when the engine is running. (→P. 186)

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 3 While pressing the trip meter reset button, set the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode (but do not start the engine because otherwise the reset mode will be cancelled). Press and hold the button until the multi-information display indicates that the reset is complete.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Used engine oil**

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation or skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent serious engine damage**

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ **When replacing the engine oil**

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "FULL" and "LOW" lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.





1 Reservoir cap
2 "FULL"
3 "LOW"

If the level is on or below the "LOW" line, add coolant up to the "FULL" line. (→P. 745)

If the coolant level drops within a short time after replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, coolant reservoir cap, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling systems.

Coolant selection

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

U.S.A.: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Enabled: -31°F [-35°C])

Canada: "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 55% coolant and 45% deionized water. (Enabled: -44°F [-42°C])

For more details about engine coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

CAUTION

When the engine is hot

Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing burns or other injuries.

NOTICE

When adding engine coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent damage to parts or paint.

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser, and clear any foreign objects.
If either of the above parts are extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser, as they may be hot and you may be burned.

Brake fluid

Checking fluid level



The brake fluid level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" lines on the tank.

Adding fluid

Make sure to check the fluid type and prepare the necessary items.

Fluid type	FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1703 brake fluid
Items	Clean funnel

Brake fluid can absorb moisture from the air

Excess moisture in the fluid can cause a dangerous loss of braking efficiency. Use only newly opened brake fluid.

CAUTION

When filling the reservoir

Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces.
If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.

If you still experience discomfort, see a doctor.

NOTICE

If the fluid level is low or high

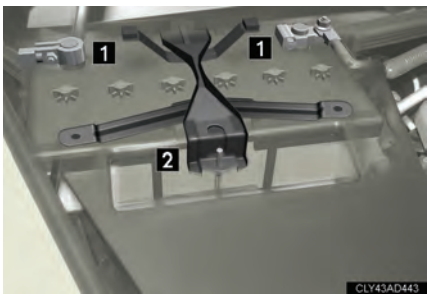
It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

Battery

Check the battery as follows.

Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.



1 Terminals
2 Hold-down clamp

■ **Before recharging**

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

⚠ CAUTION

■ **Chemicals in the battery**

A battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ **Where to safely charge the battery**

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

■ **How to recharge the battery**

Only perform a slow charge (5 A or less). The battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When recharging the battery

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

■ When replacing the battery

Replace the battery with a battery of the same size.
Installing a battery of a different size will prevent the cover from being properly installed over the battery. This may cause water to enter the engine compartment when it rains or the vehicle is washed, resulting in a malfunction.
For more information about replacing the battery, contact your Lexus dealer.

Washer fluid



If any washer does not work or the warning message appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

CAUTION

When refilling the washer fluid

Do not refill the washer fluid when the engine is hot or running, as the washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

NOTICE

Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

Diluting washer fluid

Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the washer fluid tank.

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

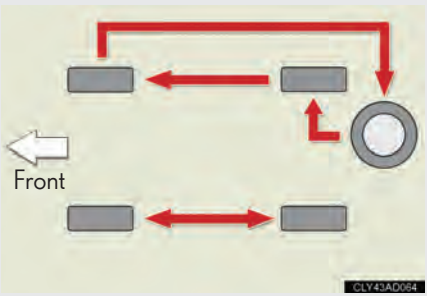


1 New tread
2 Treadwear indicator
3 Worn tread

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by the "TWI" or "Δ" marks, etc., molded on the sidewall of each tire.

Check spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.

Tire rotation



Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out at the same interval as tire inspection.

The tire pressure warning system

Your Lexus is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 716, 723)

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P. 666)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:

- When rotating the tires on vehicles differing with front and rear tire inflation pressures.
- When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed.
- When changing the tire size.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire pressure is set as the pressure benchmark.

How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

STEP 1 Park the vehicle in safe place and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

While the vehicle is moving, initialization is not performed.

STEP 2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 761)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

STEP 3 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 4



Push and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times and a message appears on the multi-information display.

The switch is under the driver's side instrument panel, facing the floor above the accelerator pedal.

STEP 5 Wait a few minutes for the multi-information display to show the tire inflation pressures (5 tires), and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code of tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. Have the ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

■ **When to replace your vehicle's tires**

Tires should be replaced if:

- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric or bulges indicating internal damage.
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage.

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

■ **Replacing tires and wheels**

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute to indicate a system malfunction.

■ **Tire life**

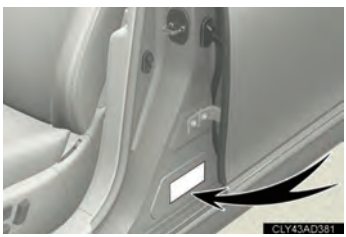
Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if they have seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ **If the tread wears down below 0.16 in. (4 mm) on snow tires**

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

■ **Maximum load of tire**

Check that the maximum load of the replacement tire is greater than 1/2 of the Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR) of either the front axle or the rear axle, whichever is greater.



For the GAWR, see the Certification Label. For the maximum load of the tire, see the load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure mentioned on the sidewall of the tire.
(→P. 767)

■ **Tire types**

1 Summer tires

Summer tires are high-speed performance tires best suited to highway driving under dry conditions. Since summer tires do not have the same traction performance as snow tires, summer tires are inadequate for driving on snow-covered or icy roads. For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, the use of snow tires is recommended. When installing snow tires, be sure to replace all four tires.

2 All season tires

All season tires are designed to provide better traction in snow and to be adequate for driving in most winter conditions, as well as for use year round. All season tires, however, do not have adequate traction performance compared with snow tires in heavy or loose snow. Also, all season tires fall short in acceleration and handling performance compared with summer tires in highway driving.

3 Snow tires

For driving on snow-covered roads or icy roads, we recommend using snow tires. If you need snow tires, select tires of the same size, construction and load capacity as the originally installed tires. Since your vehicle has radial tires as original equipment, make sure your snow tires also have radial construction. Do not install studded tires without first checking local regulations for possible restriction. Snow tires should be installed on all wheels. (→P. 313)

■ **Initializing the tire pressure warning system**

Initialize the tire pressure warning system with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

■ **If you push the tire pressure warning reset switch accidentally**

If initialization is performed, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level and initialize the tire pressure warning system again.

■ **When the initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed**

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings has not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times and the setting message does not appear on the multi-information display.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for about 20 minutes.

■ **Routine tire inflation pressure checks**

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ **Tire pressure warning system certification**

TPMS Transmitter FCC ID: PAXPMV107J

TPMS Receiver FCC ID: HYQ13BCX

▶ For vehicles sold in the U.S.A.

NOTE:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

▶ For vehicles sold in Canada

NOTE:
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train, as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and winter tires.

■ Using tires of a different size

Do not use tires of a different size from those equipped when the vehicle was new, as the front tire steering angle setting is designed for the original tire size. It is dangerous to use an incorrect wheel and tire combination as this may result in reduced vehicle stability.

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not push the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

NOTICE

Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 665)

Driving on rough roads

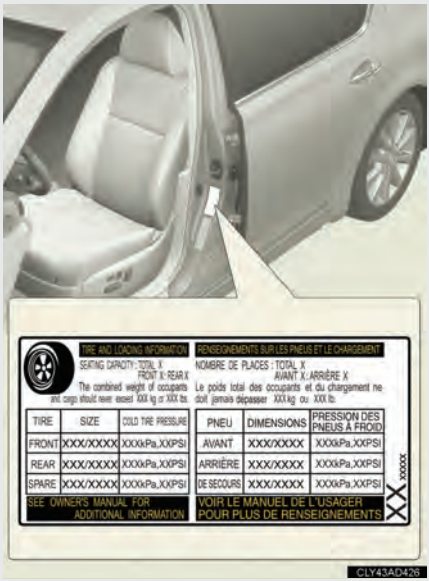
Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes.
These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

If tire inflation pressures become low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

Tire inflation pressure

The recommended cold tire inflation pressure and tire size is displayed on the tire and loading information label. (→P. 761)



Inspection and adjustment procedure



1 Tire valve
2 Tire pressure gauge

STEP 1 Remove the tire valve cap.

STEP 2 Press the tip of the tire pressure gauge onto the tire valve.

STEP 3 Read the pressure using the graduations of the gauge.

STEP 4 If the tire inflation pressure is not within the recommended levels, adjust inflate the tire.
If you add too much air, press the center of the valve to lower.

STEP 5 After completing the tire inflation pressure measurement and adjustment, apply soapy water to the valve and check for leakage.

STEP 6 Reinstall the tire valve cap.

Tire inflation pressure check interval

You should check tire inflation pressure every two weeks, or at least once a month. Do not forget to check the spare.

Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel efficiency
- Reduced driving comfort and tire life
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent refilling, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours and has not been driven for more than 1 mile or 1.5 km, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  The appearance of the tire can be misleading. In addition, tire inflation pressures that are even just a few pounds off can degrade ride and handling.
- Do not bleed or reduce tire inflation pressure after driving. It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving.
- Never exceed the vehicle capacity weight.
  Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident causing death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Poor sealing of the tire bead
- Wheel deformation and/or tire separation
- A greater possibility of tire damage from road hazards

⚠ NOTICE

■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve caps.
Without the valve caps, dirt or moisture could get into the valve and cause air leakage, which could result in an accident. If the caps have been lost, replace them as soon as possible.

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width, and inset*.
Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as "offset".

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1000 miles (1600 km).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

When replacing wheels

The wheels of your Lexus are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advanced warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 665)

⚠ CAUTION

■ When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing serious injury or death.

NOTICE

■ Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only Genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

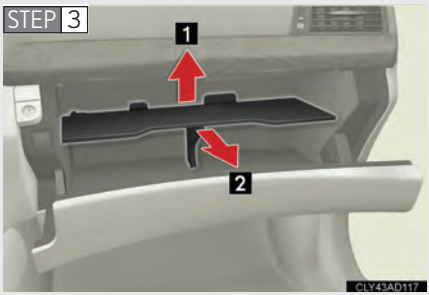
Front air conditioning filter

STEP 1 Set the air conditioning system to recirculated mode. (→P. 339, 353)

The air conditioning filter case cannot be removed with the system in the outside air mode.

STEP 2 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 3



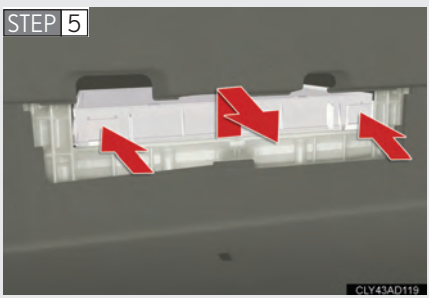
Open the glove box. Lift and remove the partition.

STEP 4



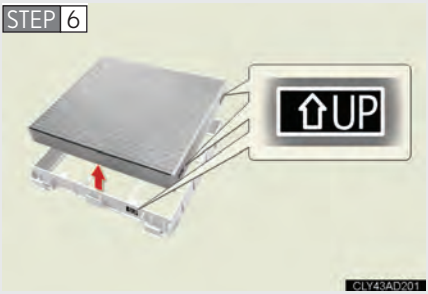
Remove the filter cover.

STEP 5



Remove the filter case.

STEP 6



Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The "↑UP" marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.

STEP 7 Reset the air conditioning filter maintenance data. (→P. 680)

Rear air conditioning filter (if equipped)

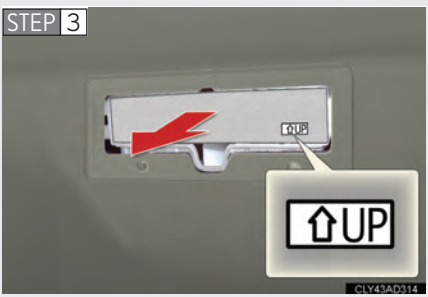
STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 2



Open the trunk lid. Remove the filter cover.

STEP 3



Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The "↑UP" marks shown on the filter should be pointing up.

■ **Changing interval for the front air conditioning filter**

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter when a message is appeared on the multi-information display. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required.

■ **If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically**

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

■ **After changing the air conditioning filter**

The air conditioning filter maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode.

STEP 2 Press and hold  (on the air conditioning panel) for 4 seconds or more.

A buzzer will sound to indicate that the maintenance data has been successfully reset.

■ **Rear air conditioning filter (if equipped)**

If it is necessary to clean or replace the filter, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Climate control seat filter (if equipped)**

Filters are installed in the seats. When it is necessary to clean or replace the filters, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When using the air conditioning system**

Make sure that a filter is always installed.

Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is discharged.

You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small Phillips-head screwdriver
- Lithium battery (CR1632)

Replacing the battery

STEP 1



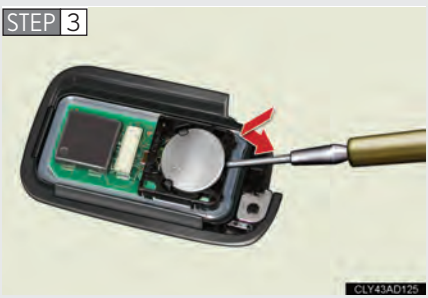
Take out the mechanical key.

STEP 2



Remove the cover.

STEP 3



Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.

■ **If the electronic key battery is discharged**

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range is reduced.

■ **Use a CR1632 lithium battery**

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, jewelers, or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

■ **When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)**

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

CAUTION

■ **Removed battery and other parts**

Keep away from children. These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **For normal operation after replacing the battery**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other components inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses

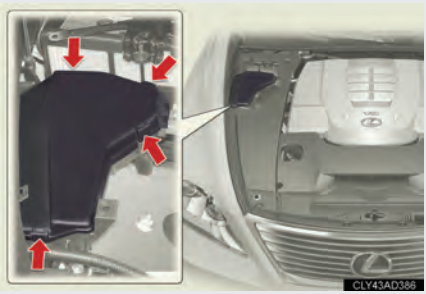
If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

STEP 1 Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 2 Remove the engine compartment cover. (→P. 650)

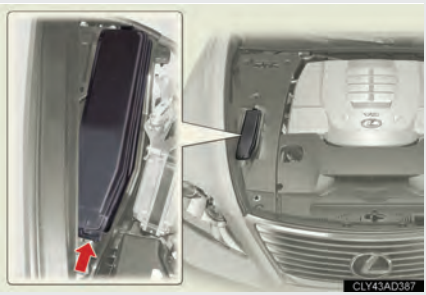
STEP 3 Open the fuse box cover.

▶ Engine compartment (type A fuse box)



Push the tabs in and lift the lid off.

▶ Engine compartment (type B fuse box)



Push the tab in and lift the lid off.

▶ Driver's side instrument panel



Remove the lid.

▶ Passenger's side instrument panel



Remove the lid.

▶ Trunk



Remove the lid.

STEP 4

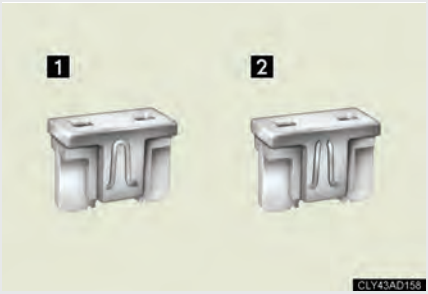


Take out the pullout tool.

Only type A fuse can be removed using the pullout tool.

STEP 5 Check if the fuse has blown.

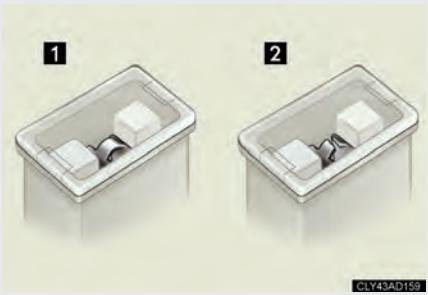
▶ Type A



1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

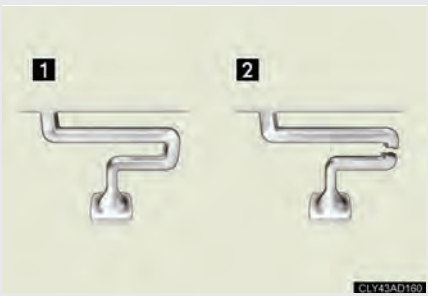
▶ Type B



1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

Replace it with one of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

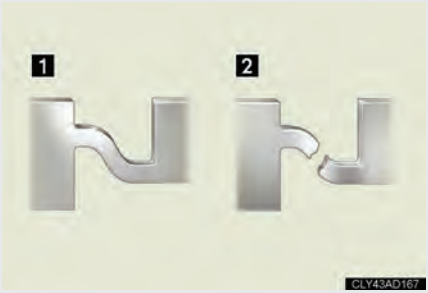
▶ Type C



1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

▶ Type D



1 Normal fuse
2 Blown fuse

Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **After a fuse is replaced**

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 690)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If there is an overload in the circuit**

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

CAUTION

To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may cause damage, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
  This can cause extensive damage or even fire.
- Do not modify fuses or the fuse box.

NOTICE

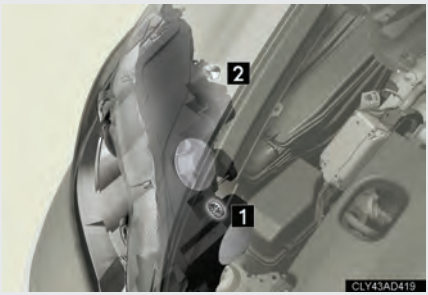
Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

Removing the engine compartment cover

→P. 650

Vertical movement adjusting bolts



1 Adjustment bolt A
2 Adjustment bolt B

Before checking the headlight aim

STEP 1 Make sure the vehicle has a full tank of gas and the area around the headlight is not deformed.

STEP 2 Park the vehicle on level ground.

STEP 3 Sit in the driver's seat.

STEP 4 Bounce the vehicle several times.

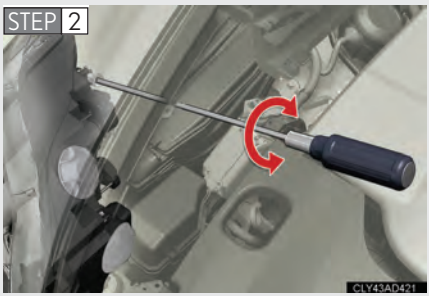
Adjusting the headlight aim

STEP 1



Turn bolt A in either direction using a Phillips-head screwdriver.

Remember the turning direction and the number of turns in mind.



Turn bolt B the same number of turns and in the same direction as step 1 using a Phillips-head screwdriver.

If the error is over the value specified above, take the vehicle to your Lexus dealer to adjust the headlight aim

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. If necessary bulb replacement seems difficult to perform, contact your Lexus dealer.
For more information about replacing other light bulbs, contact your Lexus dealer.

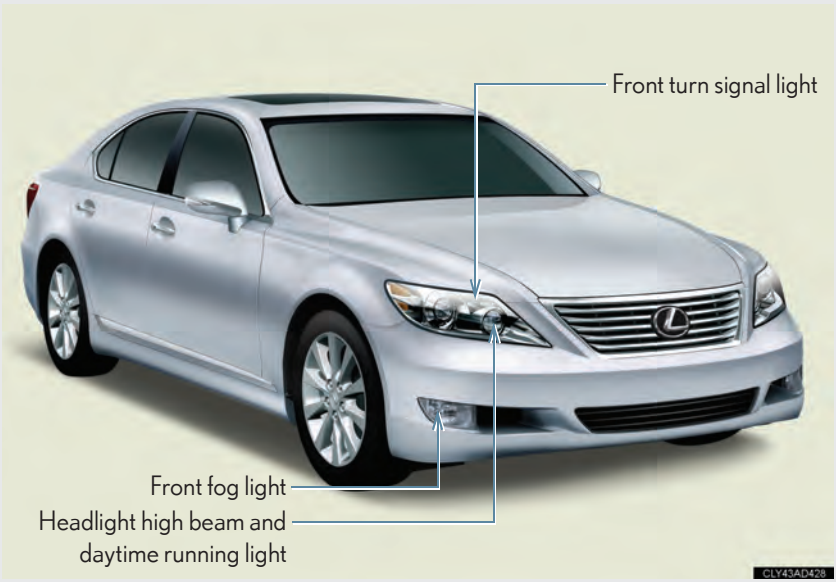
Preparing for light bulb replacement

Check the wattage of the light bulb being replaced. (→P. 763)

Remove the engine compartment cover

→P. 650

Front bulb locations



Rear bulb locations



Replacing light bulbs

Headlight high beams

STEP 1 Before replacing the bulbs:

▶ Left side



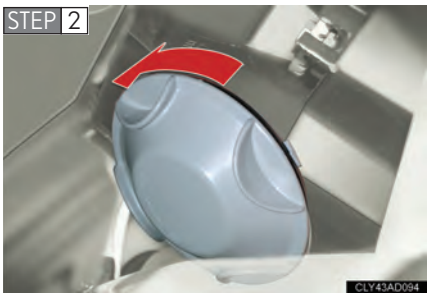
Remove the securing bolt and move the washer fluid filler opening.

▶ Right side



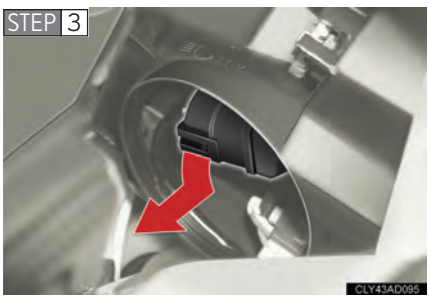
Remove the securing bolts and nut, and move the fuse block.

STEP 2



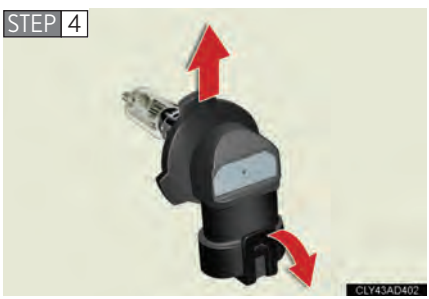
Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.

STEP 3



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 4



Unplug the connector while pulling the lock release.

Front fog lights

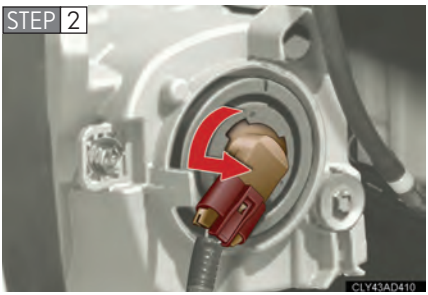
STEP 1



To allow enough working clearance, turn the steering wheel to the opposite side of the bulb to be replaced.

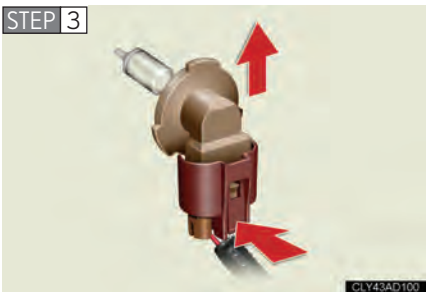
Remove the fender liner bolt and clips, and then remove the fender liner.

STEP 2

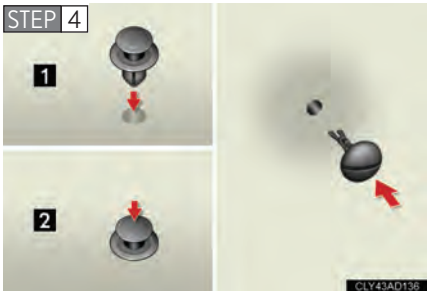


Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 3



Unplug the connector while depressing the lock release.



Install the bolt and clips.

Front turn signal lights

STEP 1 Before replacing the bulbs:

▶ Left side



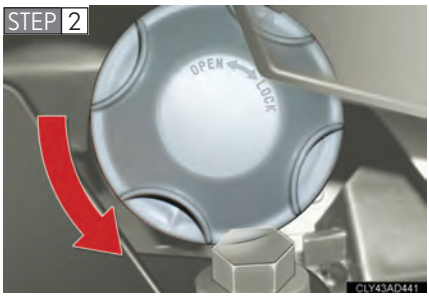
Remove the securing bolt and move the washer fluid filler opening.

▶ Right side



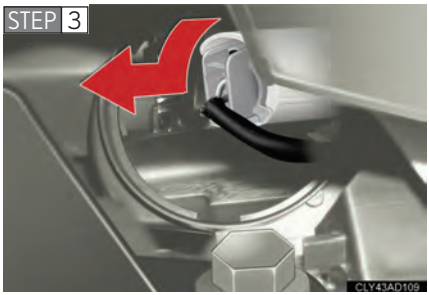
Remove the securing bolts and nut, and move the fuse block.

STEP 2



Turn the cover counterclockwise and remove it.

STEP 3



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 4



Remove the light bulb.

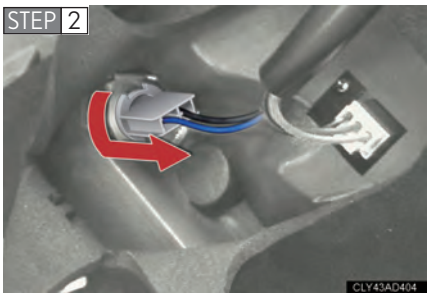
Back-up lights

STEP 1



Open the trunk lid and remove the cover.

STEP 2



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

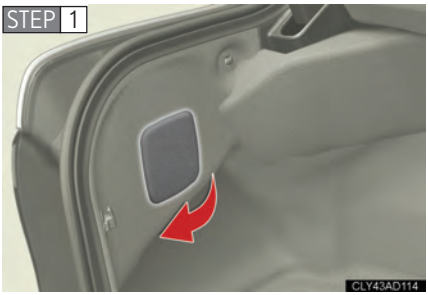
STEP 3



Remove the light bulb.

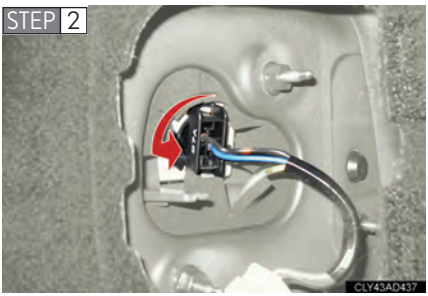
Rear turn signal lights

STEP 1



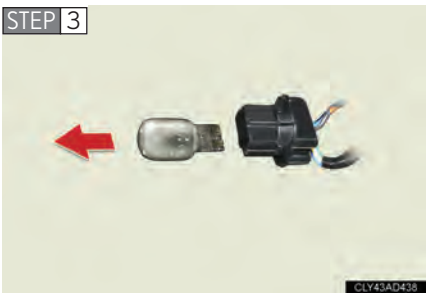
Open the trunk lid and remove the cover.

STEP 2



Turn the bulb base counterclockwise.

STEP 3



Remove the light bulb.

Lights other than the above

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

- Headlight low beams or low/high beams (discharge bulb)
- Parking lights
- Side turn signal lights
- Side marker lights
- Stop lights
- Tail lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights

Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations. Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.

- Large drops of water are built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

Discharge headlights

If voltage to the discharge bulbs is insufficient, the bulbs may not come on, or may go out temporarily. The discharge bulbs will come on when normal power is restored.

LED light bulbs

The headlight low beams, parking lights, side turn signal lights, side marker lights, stop lights, tail lights, high mounted stoplight and license plate lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the lights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the lights.
  The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. Hold the bulb by the plastic or metal portion.
  If the bulb is scratched or dropped it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failing to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.

■ Discharge headlights

- Contact your Lexus dealer before replacing discharge headlights (including light bulbs).
- Do not touch the high-intensity discharge headlight's high voltage socket when the headlights are turned on.
  An extremely high voltage of 20000 V will be discharged and could result in serious injury or death by electric shock.
- Do not attempt to take apart or repair the low beam discharge headlight bulbs, connectors, power supply circuits, or related components.
  Doing so could result in electric shock and serious injury or death.

■ To prevent damage or fire

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

When trouble arises 5

5-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers..... 702
If your vehicle needs to be towed..... 703
If you think something is wrong 709
Fuel pump shut off system 710
Event data recorder 711

5-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds... 713
If a warning message is displayed..... 723
If you have a flat tire..... 726
If the engine will not start 734
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"..... 736
If the parking brake cannot be released..... 737
If the electronic key does not operate properly..... 739
If the vehicle battery is discharged..... 742
If your vehicle overheats 745
If the vehicle becomes stuck..... 748
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency..... 749

Emergency flashers

Use the emergency flashers if the vehicle malfunctions or is involved in an accident.



Press the switch to flash all the turn signal lights. To turn them off, press the switch once again.

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the emergency flashers on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or a commercial towing service, using a lift-type truck or a flatbed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.
2WD models: If towing from the rear, the vehicle's front wheels and axles must be in good condition. (→P. 707)
If the vehicle is damaged, use a towing dolly or flatbed truck.

Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer before towing.

- The engine is running, but the vehicle will not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available, in an emergency your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a cable or chain secured to the emergency towing eyelet(s). This should only be attempted on hard, surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.



Towing eyelet

■ Before emergency towing

- Release the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to "N".
- Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY (engine off) or IGNITION ON mode (engine running).

⚠ CAUTION

■ Caution while towing

- Use extreme caution when towing the vehicle.
  Avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which place excessive stress on the emergency towing eyelets and the cables or chains. Always be cautious of the surroundings and other vehicles while towing.
- If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

⚠ NOTICE

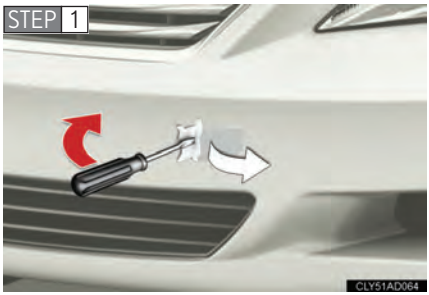
■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission (2WD models)

Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground.
This may cause serious damage to the transmission.

■ To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission and the transfer (AWD models)

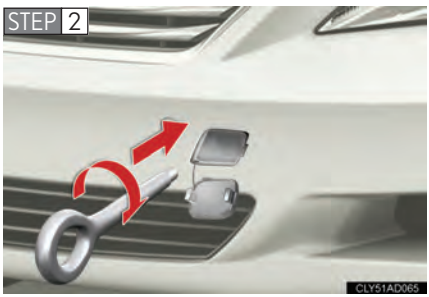
Never tow this vehicle with any of the wheels in contact with the ground.
This may cause serious damage to the transmission and the transfer.

Installing towing eyelets

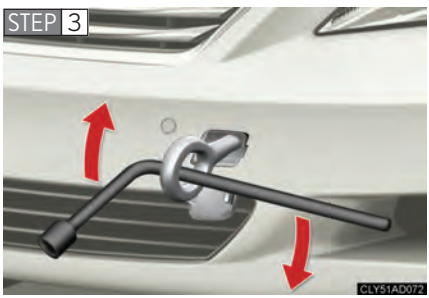


Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body, as shown in the illustration.



Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench.

Location of the emergency towing eyelet

→P. 726

CAUTION

Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle

Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing. This may lead to accidents that cause serious injury or even death.

Towing with a sling-type truck



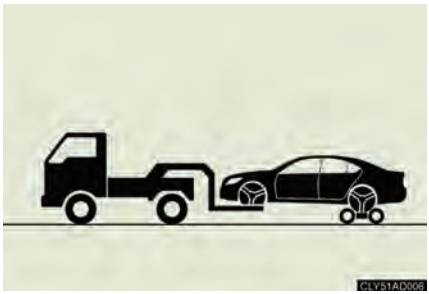
NOTICE

To prevent body damage

Do not tow with a sling type truck, either from the front or rear.

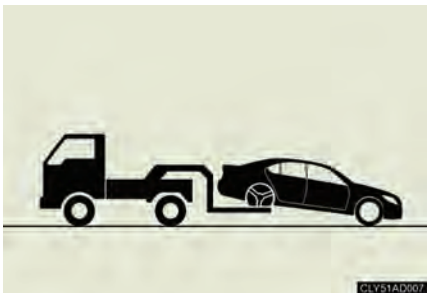
Towing with a wheel lift-type truck

▶ From the front



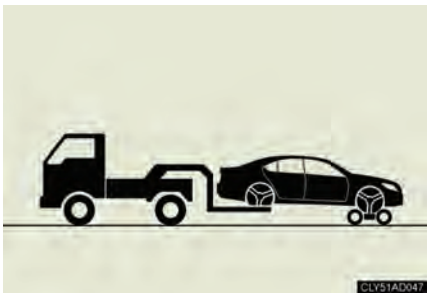
Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

▶ From the rear (2WD models)



Switch to ACCESSORY mode so that the steering wheel is unlocked.

▶ From the rear (AWD models)



Use a towing dolly under the front wheel.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission (2WD models)**

Never tow this vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground.

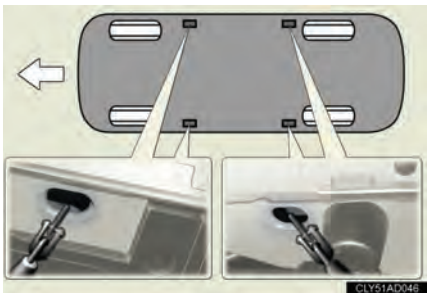
■ **To prevent causing serious damage to the transmission and the transfer (AWD models)**

Never tow this vehicle with any of the wheels in contact with the ground.

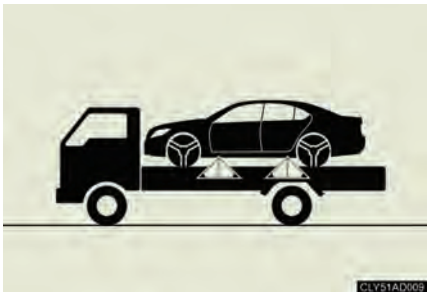
■ **To prevent damaging the vehicle**

- Do not tow the vehicle with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

Using a flat bed truck



If your Lexus is transported by a flat bed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle.
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running rough
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops supplying fuel to the engine.

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

STEP 1 Switch to ACCESSORY mode or OFF.

STEP 2 Restart the engine.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Before starting the engine**

Inspect the ground under the vehicle.
If you find that fuel has leaked on to the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

Event data recorder

Your vehicle has computers that monitor and control certain aspects of your vehicle. These computers assist in driving and maintaining optimal vehicle performance.

Besides storing data useful for troubleshooting, there is an event data recorder (EDR) that records data in a crash or a near car crash event.

In a crash or a near car crash event

The SRS airbag sensor assembly contains the EDR. In a crash or a near car crash event, this device may record some or all of the following information:

- Engine speed
- Whether the brake pedal was applied or not
- Vehicle speed
- To what extent the accelerator pedal was depressed
- Position of the transmission shift lever
- Whether the driver and front passenger wore seat belts or not
- Driver's seat position
- SRS airbag deployment data
- SRS airbag system diagnostic data
- Front passenger's occupant classification

The information above is intended to be used for the purpose of improving vehicle safety performance. Unlike general data recorders, the EDR does not record sound data such as conversation between passengers.

Disclosure of the data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the leasing company for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- Officially requested by the police or other authorities
- Used as a defense for Lexus in a law suit
- Ordered by a court law

However, if necessary Lexus will:

- Use the data for research on Lexus vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing details of the vehicle owner, and only when it is deemed necessary
- Disclose summarized data cleared of vehicle identification information to a non-Lexus organization for research purposes

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights turn on or flash. If a light turns on or flashes, but then turns off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system.

Stop the vehicle immediately. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

The following warning indicates a possible problem in the brake system. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	**Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)*** • Low brake fluid • Malfunction in the electronically controlled brake system

*: **Parking brake engaged warning buzzer:**

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven at a speed of approximately 3mph (5 km/h) or more.

Stop the vehicle immediately.

The following warning indicates the possibility of damage to the vehicle that may lead to an accident. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	**Charging system warning light** Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Failing to investigate the cause of the following warnings may lead to the system operating abnormally and possibly cause an accident. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Warning light	Warning light/Details
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	**Malfunction indicator lamp** Indicates a malfunction in: • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; or • The electronic automatic transmission control system
	**SRS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; • The seat belt pretensioner system; or • The active head restraints system
 (U.S.A.)  (Canada)	**ABS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The ABS; or • The brake assist system
	**Brake system warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The electronically controlled brake system; or • The electric parking brake
	**Electric power steering system warning light** Indicates a malfunction in the EPS system
 (Flashes)	**Pre-collision system warning light (if equipped)** Indicates a malfunction in the pre-collision system (The warning light may go off after the correction procedure is performed. This indicates that the system has returned to normal.)

Warning light	Warning light/Details
	**Slip indicator** Indicates a malfunction in: • The VSC system; • The TRAC system; or • The hill-start assist control system
 (Flashes)	**Cruise control indicator light** Indicates a malfunction in the cruise control system
 (Flashes)	**"AFS OFF" indicator light** Indicates a malfunction in the adaptive front lighting system
 (Flashes)	**Automatic High Beam indicator light (if equipped)** Indicates a malfunction in the automatic high beam system.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving

First check the following:

- Is the fuel tank empty?
  If it is, fill the fuel tank immediately.
- Is the fuel tank cap loose?
  If it is, tighten it securely.

The lamp will go off after taking several driving trips.
If the light does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Electric power steering system warning light

When the battery is low or when the voltage drops temporarily, the electric power steering system warning light may come on.

⚠ CAUTION

■ When the electric power steering system warning light comes on

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy.
If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, firmly hold and operate it using more force than usual.

Follow the correction procedures.

After taking the specified steps to correct the suspected problem, check that the warning light turns off.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	**Open door warning light (warning buzzer)*1** Indicates that a door or the trunk is not fully closed.	Check that all doors and the trunk are closed.
 In the fuel gauge	**Low fuel level warning light** Remaining fuel (Approximately 3.4 gal. [13L, 2.8 Imp. gal.] or less)	Refuel the vehicle.
	**Driver's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2** Warns the driver to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.
	**Front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2** Warns the front passenger to fasten his/her seat belt.	Fasten the seat belt.

Warning light	Warning light/Details	Correction procedure
	**Tire pressure warning light**	
	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as • Natural causes (→P. 718) • Flat tire (→P. 726)	Adjust the tire inflation pressure (including the spare tire) to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.
	When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system (→P. 719)	Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.
	**Master warning light** A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on or flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction.	→P. 723

*1: **Open door warning buzzer:**

The open door warning buzzer sounds to alert one or more of the doors is not fully closed (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 3 mph [5 km/h]).

*2: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt buzzer:

The driver's and front passenger's seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds intermittently for 10 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of 12 mph (20 km/h). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 20 more seconds.

■ Front passenger detection sensor and passenger seat belt reminder

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash, even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level. Pushing the tire pressure warning reset switch does not turn off the tire pressure warning light.

■ The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes

The tire pressure warning light may turn on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ When a tire is replaced with a spare tire

The spare tire is also equipped with the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. The tire pressure warning light will turn on if the tire inflation pressure of the spare tire is low. If a tire goes flat, even though the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the tire pressure warning light does not turn off. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the proper tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will turn off after a few minutes.

■ **If the tire pressure warning system is inoperative**

The tire pressure warning system will be disabled in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- If the tire inflation pressure is 73 psi (500 kPa, 5.1 kgf/cm^2 or bar) or higher.

The tire pressure warning system may be disabled in the following conditions:

(When the condition becomes normal, the system will work properly.)

- If electronic devices or facilities using similar radio wave frequencies are nearby.
- If a radio set at similar frequencies is in use in the vehicle.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, in particular around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used. (Even if you use Lexus wheels, the tire pressure warning system may not work properly with some types of tires.)
- If tire chains are used.
- If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception.
- If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the trunk.

■ **If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute**

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Customization**

The vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer can be disabled.
(Customizable features →P. 778)

⚠ CAUTION

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If the tire is flat, change to the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

CAUTION

Maintenance of the tires

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label (tire and load information label). (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label [tire and load information label], you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS-tire pressure warning system) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light) illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light).

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale (tire pressure warning light). When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS (tire pressure warning system) to continue to function properly.

NOTICE

Precaution when installing a different tire

When a tire of a different specification or maker is installed, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, or shows messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.



1 Master warning light

The master warning light comes on or flashes when a message is being shown on the multi-information display.

2 Multi-information display

If any of the warning messages is shown again after its correction procedure has been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	—	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed
—	Comes on or flashes	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when the system shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning
Flashes	—	Sounds	Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on	—	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance
Flashes	—	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

■ **System warning lights**

The master warning light does not come on or flash in the following cases. Instead, a separate system warning light will come on or flash along with the message shown on the multi-information display.

- Malfunction of the AFS (Adaptive Front-lighting System)
  The "AFS OFF" indicator light flashes. (→P. 199)
- Malfunction of the brake system
  The brake system warning light (red indicator) comes on. (→P. 713)
- Malfunction of the electronically controlled brake system or electric parking brake
  The brake system warning light (yellow indicator) comes on. (→P. 714)
- Malfunction of the ABS
  The ABS warning light comes on. (→P. 714)
- Malfunction of the charging system
  The charging system warning light comes on. (→P. 713)
- High engine coolant temperature
  The needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone. (→P. 186)

■ **When "Electrical equipment operation is limited" is shown**

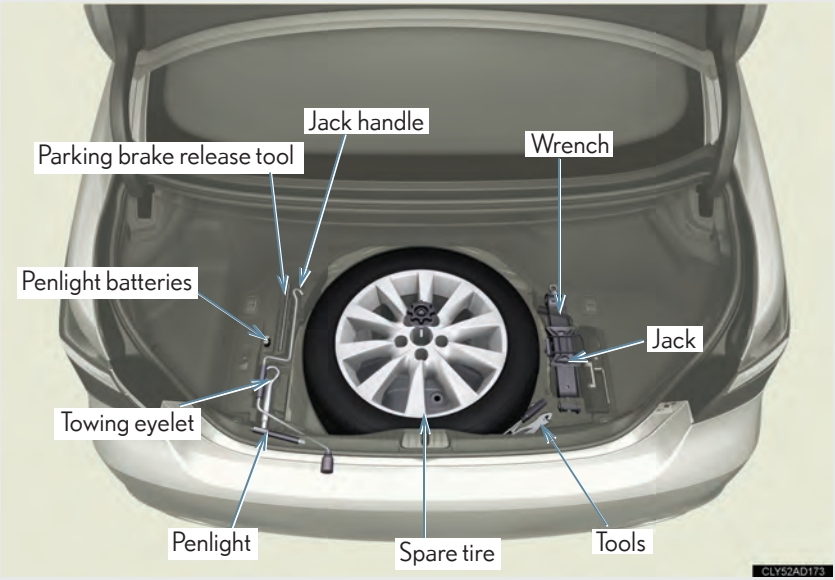
This message indicates that the battery is low. When the message is shown, operation of electrical equipment that uses a large amount of electric power, such as the air conditioning system, may be limited temporarily. This does not indicate a malfunction. Operation of electrical equipment will be restored after the battery is charged.

Remove the flat tire and replace it with the spare provided.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to "P".
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers.

Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



Penlight

The vehicle is equipped with a penlight, located inside the trunk. The penlight is provided in case it is necessary to perform an unexpected service operation at night, such as installation of the spare tire.

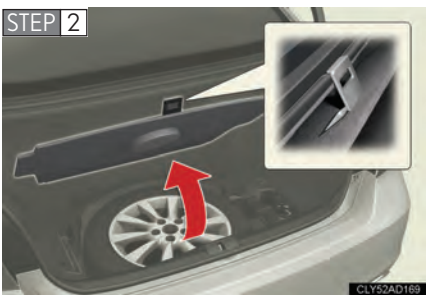


1 Turn the top portion to remove it.
2 Insert batteries.
3 Install the top portion.
4 On/off

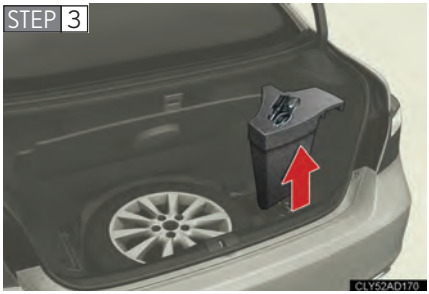
Taking out the jack and spare tire



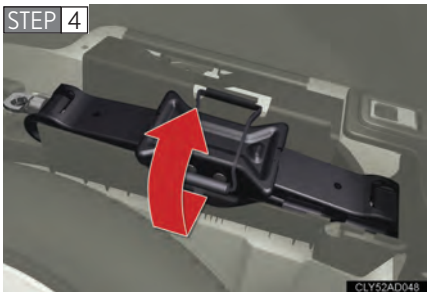
Lift up the hook of the panel on the trunk floor.



Secure the panel using the hook provided.



Remove the tool tray.



Remove the jack after removing the hook.



Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

If the center fastener cannot be turned by hand, use the wrench that is stored in the trunk. (To secure the tire, tighten the center fastener by hand. Do not use the wrench or other tools.)

Replacing a flat tire

STEP 1



Chock the tires.

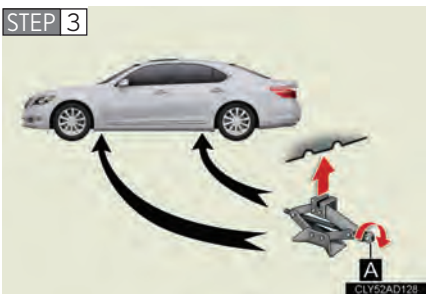
Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

STEP 2



Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

STEP 3



Turn the tire jack portion “A” by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

STEP 4



Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.

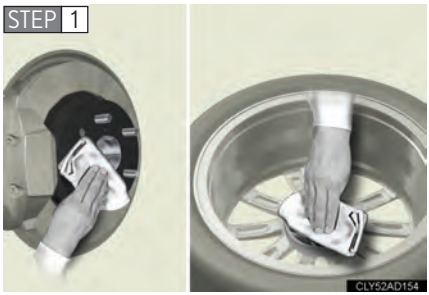
STEP 5



Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

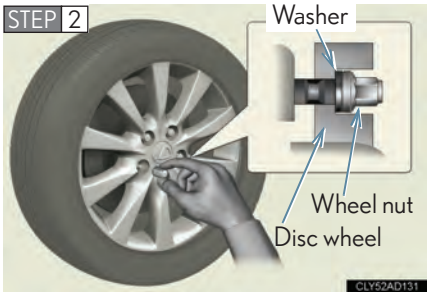
When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

Installing the spare tire



Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, and the tire may come off the vehicle.

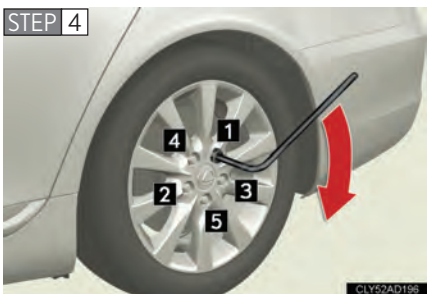


Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

Turn the lug nuts until the washers come into contact with the wheel.



Lower the vehicle.



Firmly tighten each nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
103.3 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m)

STEP 5 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

■ After completing the tire change

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P. 665)

⚠ CAUTION

■ Using the tire jack

Improper use of the tire jack may lead to death or serious injuries due to the vehicle suddenly falling off the jack.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Always check that the tire jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is in it.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- With electronically modulated air suspension: Be sure to turn off the height control and stop the engine.

Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

CAUTION

Replacing a flat tire

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of death or serious injury:

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103.3 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
  Failure to follow these precautions could cause the nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, which could lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

When installing the wheel nuts

Be sure to install the wheel nuts with the tapered end facing inward. (→P. 677)

NOTICE

Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire.

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

When closing the trunk

Do not leave the luggage mat hook hooked on the edge of the trunk.
The luggage mat may get damaged.

When replacing the tires

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 665)

If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P. 163), consider each of the following points.

The engine will not start, even when the starter motor operates normally.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine once more following correct starting procedures. (→P. 163)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P. 114)

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 742)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

The starter motor does not turn over.

The following may be the cause of the problem:

- The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as an open circuit or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P. 735)

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P. 742)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is functioning normally:

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to "P".

STEP 3 Set the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to ACCESSORY mode.

STEP 4 Press and hold the "ENGINE START STOP" switch about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

If the shift lever cannot be shifted from “P”

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system (a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever). Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

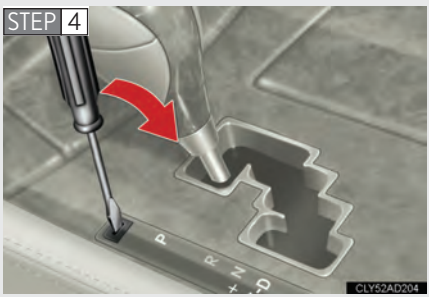
The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted:

STEP 1 Set the parking brake.

STEP 2 Turn the “ENGINE START STOP” switch to ACCESSORY mode.

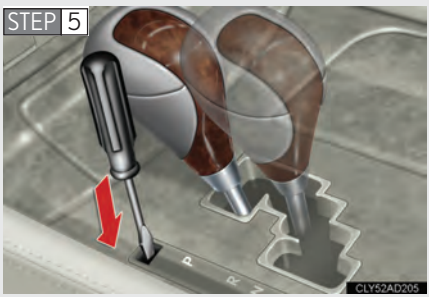
STEP 3 Depress the brake pedal.

STEP 4



Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent.

STEP 5



Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

If the parking brake cannot be released

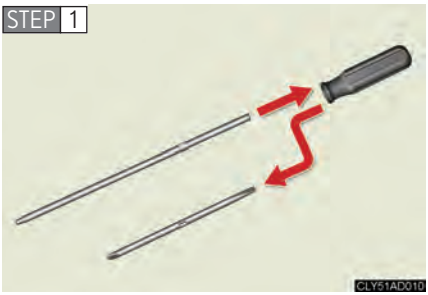
In the event that the battery is discharged or switch operation does not release the parking brake, the parking brake can be released manually using the procedure below. This procedure should be performed only if necessary, such as in an emergency.
If the switch cannot be operated even when the battery is normal, the parking brake system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

Before releasing the parking brake manually

- Shift the shift lever to "P".
- Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.
- Check that the parking brake indicator is off.
- Chock the tires.

Releasing the parking brake manually

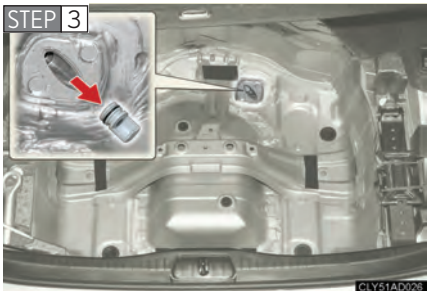
STEP 1



Take out the parking brake release tool and the screwdriver from the trunk. (→P. 726)

Install the parking brake release tool into the screwdriver handle.

STEP 2 Take out the spare tire. (→P. 726)



Remove the plug.



Insert the tool and press it down firmly while turning it counter-clockwise until it stops.

Manual operation of the parking brake

The parking brake cannot be set manually.

CAUTION

When releasing the parking brake manually

- Shift the shift lever to "P", turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and chock the tires.
  Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move, resulting in an accident.
- Turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF and check that the parking brake indicator is off.
  Failure to do so may cause the system to operate and turn the parking brake release tool that is inserted, resulting in an injury.

If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 41) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors and trunk can be opened or the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

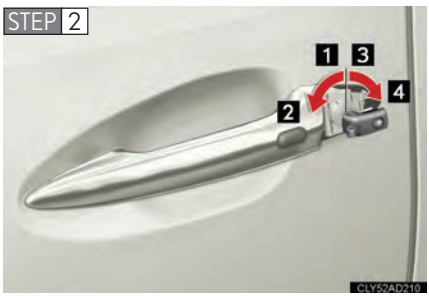
Locking and unlocking the doors, unlocking the trunk and key linked functions

Use the mechanical key built in to the electronic keys to operate the doors. (→P. 33)

▶ Doors



Remove the cover on the driver's door handle.



1 Locks all the doors

2 Closes the windows (turn and hold)

The moon roof will also open.

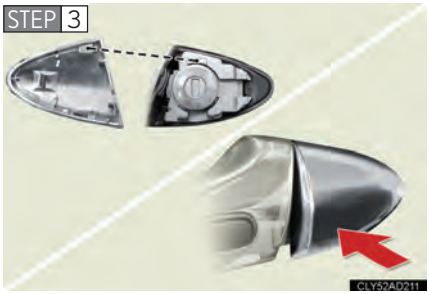
3 Unlocks the door

Turning the key rearward unlocks the driver's door. Turning the key once again unlocks the other doors.

4 Opens the windows (turn and hold)

The moon roof will also open.

STEP 3



After the operation is completed, reinstall the cover.

Hook the upper claw of the cover onto the upper catch on the vehicle side, and then push on the lower side of the cover.

Make sure that the lower claw of the cover is securely fastened to the lower catch on the vehicle side. If the cover is not securely attached, it may fall off while driving.

▶ Trunk



Turn the mechanical key clockwise to open.

Changing "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes and starting the engine

STEP 1 Shift the shift lever to "P" and apply the brakes.

STEP 2



Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the "ENGINE START STOP" switch.

If any of the doors is opened or closed after the key was touched to the switch to start the vehicle, an alarm will sound to indicate that the start function cannot detect the key.



STEP 3 To change "ENGINE START STOP" switch modes: Within 5 seconds of the buzzer sounding, release the brake pedal and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch. Modes can be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 164)

To start the engine: Press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch within 10 seconds [after the buzzer sounds], keeping the brake pedal depressed.

In the event that the engine still cannot be started, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Stopping the engine**

Shift the shift lever to "P" and press the "ENGINE START STOP" switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ **Replacing the key battery**

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted.
(→P. 681)

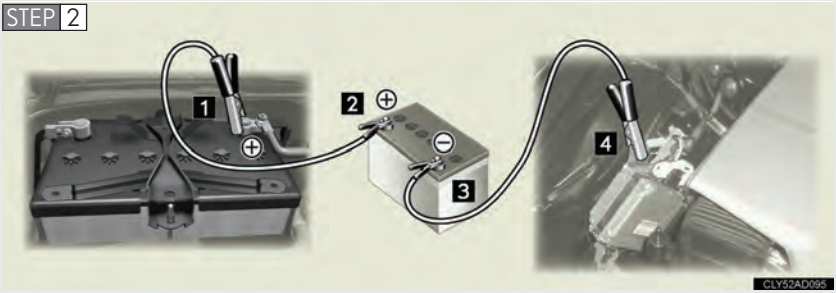
If the vehicle battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.
You can call your Lexus dealer or qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your Lexus following the steps below.

STEP 1 Remove the engine compartment covers and battery cover. (→P. 650)

STEP 2



Connect the jumper cables.

1 Positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle
2 Positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle
3 Negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle
4 Connect the jumper cable to ground on your vehicle as shown in the illustration.

STEP 3 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

STEP 4 Open and close any of the doors with the "ENGINE START STOP" switch OFF.

STEP 5 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and turn the "ENGINE START STOP" switch to IGNITION ON mode, then start the engine.

STEP 6 Once the engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order in which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Starting the engine when the battery is discharged**

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is turned off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ **If the battery is discharged**

The information stored in the computer will be deleted.
If the battery is discharged, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ CAUTION

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure the jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any part other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the jumper cables to come into contact with the "+" and "-" terminals.
- Do not allow open flame or use matches, cigarette lighters or smoke near the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
  Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

Be careful that the jumper cables do not become tangled in the cooling fan or belt when connecting or disconnecting the cables.

If your vehicle overheats

If your engine overheats:

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system.

STEP 2 Check to see if steam is coming out from the engine area.

If you see steam:

Stop the engine. Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.

If you do not see steam:

Leave the engine running and carefully lift the hood.

STEP 3 Remove the engine compartment cover. (→P. 650)

STEP 4 Check if the cooling fan is operating.

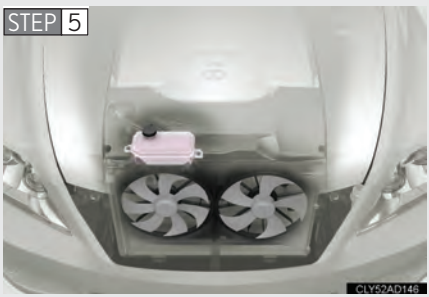
If the fans are operating:

Wait until the temperature of the engine (shown on the instrument cluster) begins to fall and then stop the engine.

If the fans are not operating:

Stop the engine immediately and call your local Lexus dealer.

STEP 5



After the engine has cooled down, check the engine coolant level and inspect the cooling system for leaks.

STEP 6



Add engine coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if engine coolant is unavailable. (→P. 757)

Have the vehicle inspected at your nearest Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Overheating

The following symptoms may occur when your vehicle is overheating:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone or a loss of power is experienced.
- Steam is coming from the engine area.

⚠ CAUTION

■ To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injury such as burns.
- Keep hands and clothing away from the fan and other belts while the engine is running.
- Do not loosen the coolant reservoir cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injury, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

Wait until the engine has cooled down before adding engine coolant.
When adding coolant, do so slowly. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow:

STEP 1 Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and put the shift lever in "P".

STEP 2 Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the stuck tire.

STEP 3 Place wood, stones or some other material to help provide traction under the tires.

STEP 4 Restart the engine.

STEP 5 Shift the shift lever to the "D" or "R" position and carefully apply the accelerator to free the vehicle.

Turn off TRAC/VSC if these functions are hampering your attempts to free the vehicle. (→ P. 293)

⚠ CAUTION

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to rock the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or persons. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the wheels and do not rev the engine.
- If the vehicle remains stuck after trying these procedures, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

STEP 1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

STEP 2 Shift the shift lever to "N".

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to "N"

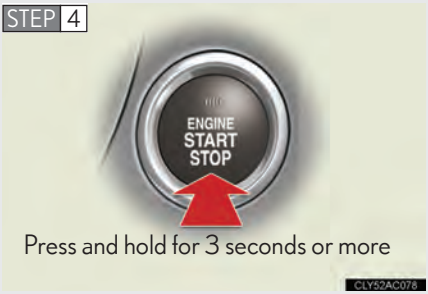
STEP 3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

STEP 4 Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to "N"

STEP 3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

STEP 4



Stop the engine by pressing and holding the "ENGINE START STOP" switch for 3 consecutive seconds or more.

STEP 5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

⚠ CAUTION

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

Vehicle specifications 6

6-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 752

Fuel information 764

Tire information 767

6-2. Customization

Customizable features 778

Dimensions and weights

Overall length		LS460	199.2 in. (5060 mm)
		LS460L	203.9 in. (5180 mm)
Overall width			73.8 in. (1875 mm)
Overall height *1		2WD models	58.1 in. (1475 mm)*2 57.7 in. (1465 mm)*3
		AWD models	58.3 in. (1480 mm)*2 58.1 in. (1475 mm)*3
Wheelbase		LS460	116.9 in. (2970 mm)
		LS460L	121.7 in. (3090 mm)
Tread	Front	2WD models	63.6 in. (1615 mm)*4 63.4 in. (1610 mm)*5
		AWD models	63.6 in. (1615 mm)
	Rear	2WD models	63.8 in. (1620 mm)*4 63.6 in. (1615 mm)*5
		AWD models	63.6 in. (1615 mm)
Vehicle capacity weight (Occupants + luggage)			825 lb. (375 kg)*6 675 lb. (305 kg)*7

*1: Unladen vehicles
*2: Vehicles without electronically modulated air suspension
*3: Vehicles with electronically modulated air suspension
*4: Vehicles with 18-inch tires
*5: Vehicles with 19-inch tires
*6: 5-seat models
*7: 4-seat models

Vehicle identification

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.



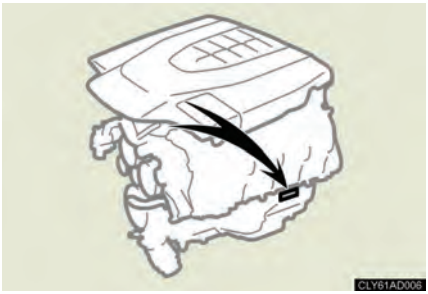
This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel and in the engine compartment.



This number is also on the Certification Label.

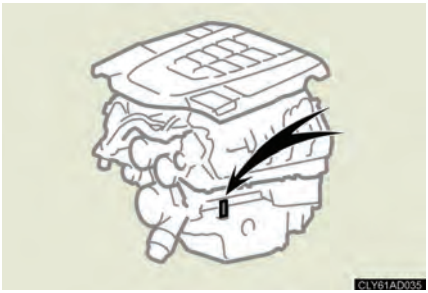
Engine number

▶ 2WD models



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

▶ AWD models



The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.

Engine

Model	1UR-FSE
Type	8-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	3.70 × 3.27 in. (94.0 × 83.0 mm)
Displacement	281.2 cu.in. (4608 cm^3)
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only
Octane rating	91 (Research octane number 96) or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	22.1 gal. (84 L, 18.4 Imp. gal.)

Lubrication system

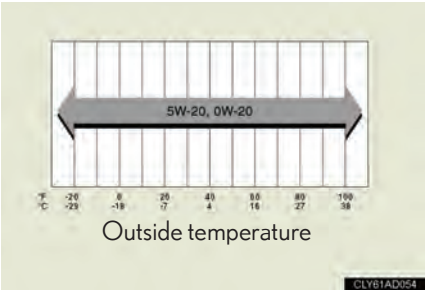
Oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)	
with filter	
2WD models	9.1 qt. (8.6 L, 7.6 Imp. qt.)
AWD models	9.5 qt. (9.0 L, 7.9 Imp. qt.)
without filter	8.9 qt. (8.4 L, 7.4 Imp. qt.)

Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity: SAE 5W-20 or 0W-20



SAE 5W-20 or 0W-20 engine oil may be used. However, SAE 0W-20 is the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

The 0W portion of the oil viscosity rating indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.

The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the oil viscosity when the oil is at its operating temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container label:

The ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification Mark is added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



Cooling system

Capacity	2WD models	11.6 qt. (11.0 L, 9.7 Imp. qt.)
	AWD models	11.7 qt. (11.1 L, 9.8 Imp. qt.)
Coolant type		Use either of the following. • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

Ignition system

Spark plug	
Make	DENSO FK20HBR11
Gap	0.043 in. (1.1 mm)

NOTICE

Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust spark plug gap.

Electrical system

Battery	
Open voltage* at 68°F (20°C):	12.6 — 12.8 V Fully charged 12.2 — 12.4 V Half charged 11.8 — 12.0 V Discharged (*: Voltage checked 20 minutes after the engine and all the lights are turned off)
Charging rates	5A max.

Transfer (AWD models)

Oil capacity	0.74 qt. (0.70 L, 0.62 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Transfer gear oil LL 80 (preferred), Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LX 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with Toyota genuine gear oil at the factory. Use Lexus approved Toyota genuine gear oil or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Front differential (AWD models)

Oil capacity	0.79 qt. (0.75 L, 0.66 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Rear differential

▶ 2WD models

Oil capacity	1.42 qt. (1.35 L, 1.19 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

▶ AWD models

Oil capacity	1.42 qt. (1.35 L, 1.19 Imp. qt.)
Oil type and viscosity*	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LX 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

*: Your Lexus vehicle is filled with "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" at the factory. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil" or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Automatic Transmission

Fluid capacity*	2WD models	10.9 qt. (10.3 L, 9.1 Imp. qt.)
	AWD models	11.3 qt. (10.7 L, 9.4 Imp. qt.)
Fluid type		Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity. If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

Automatic transmission fluid type

Using automatic transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the automatic transmission of your vehicle.

Brakes

Pedal clearance*	3.7 in. (95.0 mm) Min.
Pedal free play	0.04 — 0.08 in. (1.0 — 2.0 mm)
Brake pad wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Parking brake lining wear limit	0.04 in. (1.0 mm)
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3

*: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 50 lbf (200 N, 20 kgf).

Steering

Free play	Less than 1.2 in. (30 mm)

Tires and wheels

▶ 18-inch tires (type A)

Tire size	235/50R18 97W
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions Front: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Spare: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Driving at high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 8 psi (50 kPa, 0.5 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the front tires, 11 psi (70 kPa, 0.7 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2J
Wheel nut torque	103.3 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m)

▶ 18-inch tires (type B)

Tire size	P235/50R18 97V
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions Front: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Spare: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Driving at high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 5 psi (30 kPa, 0.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the front tires, 11 psi (70 kPa, 0.7 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2J
Wheel nut torque	103.3 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m)

▶ 19-inch tires (type A)

Tire size	245/45R19 98Y
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions Front: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Spare: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Driving at high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 9 psi (60 kPa, 0.6 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the front tires, 11 psi (70 kPa, 0.7 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	19 × 8J
Wheel nut torque	103.3 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m)

▶ 19-inch tires (type B)

Tire size	P245/45R19 98V
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Driving under normal conditions Front: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Rear: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Spare: 33 psi (230 kPa, 2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar) Driving at high speeds above 100 mph (160 km/h) (in countries where such speeds are permitted by law) Add 8 psi (50 kPa, 0.5 kgf/cm^2 or bar) to the front tires and rear tires. Never exceed the maximum cold tire inflation pressure indicated on the tire sidewall.
Wheel size	19 × 8J
Wheel nut torque	103.3 ft•lbf (140 N•m, 14.3 kgf•m)

Light bulbs

	Light Bulbs	Bulb No.	W	Type
Exterior	Headlights			
	High beam	9005	60	A
	Low or low/high beam	—	35	B
	Front turn signal lights	—	21	D
	Front fog lights	9006	51	E
	Trunk lid light	194	3.8	F
	Trunk light	—	3.8	C
	Rear turn signal lights	7440	21	C
	Back-up lights	921	16	C
	Outer foot lights	—	5	C
Interior	Vanity lights			
	Front	—	8	C
	Rear	—	3	F
	Interior lights			
	Front	—	8	C
	Rear	—	8	F
	Rear personal lights (with rear seat entertainment system)	—	10	G
	Door courtesy lights	—	5	C

A: HB3 halogen bulbs
B: D4S discharge bulbs
C: Wedge base bulbs (clear)
D: Wedge base bulbs (amber)
E: HB4 halogen bulbs
F: Double end bulbs
G: Single end bulbs

Fuel information

Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.
Premium unleaded gasoline with an octane rating of 91 (Research Octane Number 96) or higher required for optimum engine performance. If 91 octane cannot be obtained, you may use unleaded gasoline with an octane rating as low as 87 (Research Octane Number 91). Use of unleaded gasoline with an octane rating lower than 91 may result in engine knocking and significantly reduced performance. Persistent knocking can lead to engine damage and should be corrected by refueling with higher octane unleaded gasoline.

At minimum, the gasoline you use should meet the specifications of ASTM D4814 in the U.S.A. and CGSB3.5-M93 in Canada.

■ **Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline**

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your Lexus has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

■ **If your engine knocks**

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

■ **Gasoline quality**

In very few cases, driveability problems may be caused by the brand of gasoline you are using. If driveability problems persist, try changing the brand of gasoline. If this does not correct the problem, consult your Lexus dealer.

■ **Gasoline quality standards**

- Automotive manufacturers in the US, Europe and Japan have developed a specification for fuel quality called World-Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) that is expected to be applied worldwide.
- The WWFC consists of four categories that are based on required emission levels. In the US, category 4 has been adopted.
- The WWFC improves air quality by lowering emissions in vehicle fleets, and customer satisfaction through better performance.

■ **Lexus recommends the use of gasoline containing detergent additives**

- Lexus recommends the use of gasoline that contains detergent additives to avoid build-up of engine deposits.
- All gasoline sold in the US contains detergent additives to clean and/or keep clean intake systems.

■ **Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline**

Cleaner burning gasoline, including reformulated gasoline that contains oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE (Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether) is available in many areas.

Lexus recommends the use of cleaner burning gasoline and appropriately blended reformulated gasoline. These types of gasoline provide excellent vehicle performance, reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

■ **Lexus does not recommend blended gasoline**

- Lexus allows the use of oxygenate blended gasoline where the oxygenate content is up to 10% ethanol or 15% MTBE.
- If you use gasohol in your Lexus, be sure that it has an octane rating no lower than 87.
- Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline containing methanol.

■ **Lexus does not recommend gasoline containing MMT**

Some gasoline contains octane enhancing additive called MMT (Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl).

Lexus DOES NOT recommend the use of gasoline that contains MMT. If fuel containing MMT is used, your emission control system may be adversely affected.

The malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster may come on. If this happens, contact your Lexus dealer for service.

NOTICE

■ **Notice on fuel quality**

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
  Leaded gasoline can cause damage to your vehicle's three-way catalytic converters causing the emission control system to malfunction.
- Do not use gasohol other than that stated here.
  Other gasohol may cause fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems.
- Using unleaded gasoline with an octane number or rating lower than that stated here will cause persistent heavy knocking.
  At worst, this will lead to engine damage.

■ **Fuel-related poor driveability**

If after using a different type of fuel, poor driveability is encountered (poor hot starting, vaporization, engine knocking, etc.), discontinue the use of that type of fuel.

■ **When refueling with gasohol**

Take care not to spill gasohol. It can damage your vehicle's paint.

Typical tire symbols



1 Tire size (→P. 769)

2 DOT and Tire Identification Number (TIN) (→P. 768)

3 Location of treadwear indicators (→P. 664)

4 Tire ply composition and materials

Plies are layers of rubber-coated parallel cords. Cords are the strands which form the plies in a tire.

5 Radial tires or bias-ply tires

A radial tire has "RADIAL" on the sidewall. A tire not marked "RADIAL" is a bias-ply tire.

6 TUBELESS or TUBE TYPE

A tubeless tire does not have a tube and air is directly filled in the tire. A tube type tire has a tube inside the tire and the tube maintains the air pressure.

7 Load limit at maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 667)

8 Maximum cold tire inflation pressure (→P. 761)

This means the pressure to which a tire may be inflated.

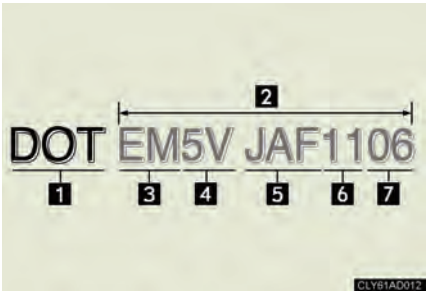
9 Uniform tire quality grading

For details, see "Uniform tire quality grading" that follows.

10 Summer tire or all season tire (→P. 668)

An all season tire has “M+S” on the sidewall. A tire not marked “M+S” is a summer tire.

Typical DOT and tire identification number (TIN)

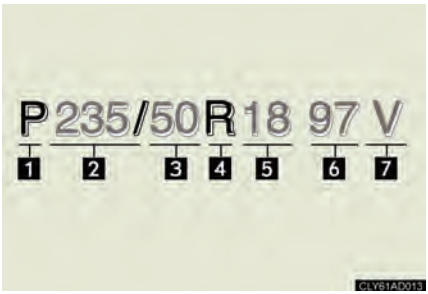


1 DOT symbol*
2 Tire Identification Number (TIN)
3 Tire manufacturer's identification mark
4 Tire size code
5 Manufacturer's optional tire type code (3 or 4 letters)
6 Manufacturing week
7 Manufacturing year

*: The DOT symbol certifies that the tire conforms to applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

Tire size

Typical tire size information



The illustration indicates typical tire size.

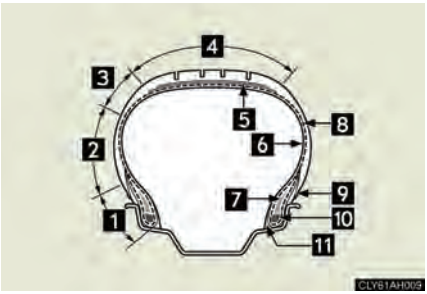
1. Tire use
   (P = Passenger car,
   T = Temporary use)
2. Section width (millimeters)
3. Aspect ratio
   (tire height to section width)
4. Tire construction code
   (R = Radial, D = Diagonal)
5. Wheel diameter (inches)
6. Load index (2 digits or 3 digits)
7. Speed symbol
   (alphabet with one letter)

Tire dimensions



1. Section width
2. Tire height
3. Wheel diameter

Tire section names



1 Bead
2 Sidewall
3 Shoulder
4 Tread
5 Belt
6 Inner liner
7 Reinforcing rubber
8 Carcass
9 Rim lines
10 Bead wires
11 Chafer

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

This information has been prepared in accordance with regulations issued by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration of the U.S. Department of Transportation.
It provides the purchasers and/or prospective purchasers of Lexus vehicles with information on uniform tire quality grading.

Your Lexus dealer will help answer any questions you may have as you read this information.

DOT quality grades

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades. Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

For example: Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1 - 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C, and they represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete.

A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on braking (straight ahead) traction tests and does not include cornering (turning) traction.

Temperature A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grades for this tire are established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded.
Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Glossary of tire terminology

Tire related term	Meaning
Cold tire inflation pressure	Tire pressure when the vehicle has been parked for three hours or more, or has not been driven more than 1 mile or 1.5 km under that condition
Maximum inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflated pressure to which a tire may be inflated, shown on the sidewall of the tire
Recommended inflation pressure	Cold tire inflation pressure recommended by a manufacturer
Accessory weight	The combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not)
Curb weight	The weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment, including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, and if so equipped, air conditioning and additional weight optional engine
Maximum loaded vehicle weight	The sum of: (a) Curb weight (b) Accessory weight (c) Vehicle capacity weight (d) Production options weight
Normal occupant weight	150 lb. (68 kg) times the number of occupants specified in the second column of Table 1* that follows

Tire related term	Meaning
Occupant distribution	Distribution of occupants in a vehicle as specified in the third column of Table 1* below
Production options weight	The combined weight of installed regular production options weighing over 5 lb. (2.3 kg) in excess of the standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim
Rim	A metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated
Rim diameter (Wheel diameter)	Nominal diameter of the bead seat
Rim size designation	Rim diameter and width
Rim type designation	The industry manufacturer's designation for a rim by style or code
Rim width	Nominal distance between rim flanges
Vehicle capacity weight (Total load capacity)	The rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lb. (68 kg) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity
Vehicle maximum load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight, and dividing by two
Vehicle normal load on the tire	The load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with Table 1* below), and dividing by two
Weather side	The surface area of the rim not covered by the inflated tire

Tire related term	Meaning
Bead	The part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim
Bead separation	A breakdown of the bond between components in the bead
Bias ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at alternate angles substantially less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Carcass	The tire structure, except tread and sidewall rubber which, when inflated, bears the load
Chunking	The breaking away of pieces of the tread or sidewall
Cord	The strands forming the plies in the tire
Cord separation	The parting of cords from adjacent rubber compounds
Cracking	Any parting within the tread, sidewall, or innerliner of the tire extending to cord material
CT	A pneumatic tire with an inverted flange tire and rim system in which the rim is designed with rim flanges pointed radially inward and the tire is designed to fit on the underside of the rim in a manner that encloses the rim flanges inside the air cavity of the tire
Extra load tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Groove	The space between two adjacent tread ribs
Innerliner	The layer(s) forming the inside surface of a tubeless tire that contains the inflating medium within the tire
Innerliner separation	The parting of the innerliner from cord material in the carcass

Tire related term	Meaning
Intended outboard sidewall	(a) The sidewall that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering, or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same molding on the other sidewall of the tire, or (b) The outward facing sidewall of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle
Light truck (LT) tire	A tire designated by its manufacturer as primarily intended for use on lightweight trucks or multipurpose passenger vehicles
Load rating	The maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure
Maximum load rating	The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire
Maximum permissible inflation pressure	The maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated
Measuring rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for physical dimension requirements
Open splice	Any parting at any junction of tread, sidewall, or innerliner that extends to cord material
Outer diameter	The overall diameter of an inflated new tire
Overall width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs
Passenger car tire	A tire intended for use on passenger cars, multipurpose passenger vehicles, and trucks, that have a gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) of 10,000 lb. or less.
Ply	A layer of rubber-coated parallel cords

Tire related term	Meaning
Ply separation	A parting of rubber compound between adjacent plies
Pneumatic tire	A mechanical device made of rubber, chemicals, fabric and steel or other materials, that, when mounted on an automotive wheel, provides the traction and contains the gas or fluid that sustains the load
Radial ply tire	A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread
Reinforced tire	A tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire
Section width	The linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, excluding elevations due to labeling, decoration, or protective bands
Sidewall	That portion of a tire between the tread and bead
Sidewall separation	The parting of the rubber compound from the cord material in the sidewall
Snow tire	A tire that attains a traction index equal to or greater than 110, compared to the ASTM E-1136 Standard Reference Test Tire, when using the snow traction test as described in ASTM F-1805-00, Standard Test Method for Single Wheel Driving Traction in a Straight Line on Snow-and Ice-Covered Surfaces, and which is marked with an Alpine Symbol () on at least one sidewall
Test rim	The rim on which a tire is fitted for testing, and may be any rim listed as appropriate for use with that tire

Tire related term	Meaning
Tread	That portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road
Tread rib	A tread section running circumferentially around a tire
Tread separation	Pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass
Treadwear indicators (TWI)	The projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread
Wheel-holding fixture	The fixture used to hold the wheel and tire assembly securely during testing

*: Table 1 — Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, Number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, Number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front
5 through 10	3	2 in front, 1 in second seat
11 through 15	5	2 in front, 1 in second seat, 1 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat
16 through 20	7	2 in front, 2 in second seat, 2 in third seat, 1 in fourth seat

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. Programming these preferences requires specialized equipment and may be performed by an authorized Lexus dealership.

It is also possible to customize certain vehicle features yourself using the navigation screen.

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Settings that can be customized at a dealer

The following table includes some settings that can be customized using the navigation system display. (→P. 784)

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 36)	Smart access system with push-button start	On	Off
	Door unlock function	Driver's door	All the doors
			Each door
			Same side doors
Wireless remote control (→P. 50)	Wireless remote control	On	Off
	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Wireless remote control (→P. 50)	Time elapsed before automatic lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	60 seconds	Off
			30 seconds
			120 seconds
	Operational signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off
	Trunk unlocking operation	Push and hold	Push twice
			One short push
	Alarm (panic mode)	On	Off
Smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control (→P. 36, 50)	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off
	Open door warning buzzer	On	Off
Door lock (→P. 53, 739)	Speed-detecting automatic door lock function	Off	On
	Opening driver's door unlocks all doors.	Off	On
	Shifting gears to "P" unlocks all doors.	On	Off

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Door lock (→P. 53, 739)	Shifting gears to position other than "P" locks all doors.	On	Off
	Unlocking using a mechanical key	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step
Trunk (→P. 58)	Power trunk opener and closer function	On	Off
Power easy access system (→P. 81)	Driver's seat movement when exiting the vehicle	Full	Off
			Partial
	Steering wheel auto away and return function	On	Off
Power windows (→P. 104)	One-touch close operation using the power window switches on the front passenger door and each rear door	On	Off

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Power windows (→P. 104)	One-touch front passenger window or rear window close operation using the power window switch on the driver's door	On	Off
	Mechanical key linked operation	Open and close	Off
			Open only
			Close only
	Wireless remote control linked operation	Off	On
	Linked entry function	On	Off
Moon roof (→P. 107)	Mechanical key linked operation	Open and close	Off
			Open only
			Close only
	Linked operation of components when mechanical key is used	Slide only	Tilt only
	Wireless remote control linked operation	Off	On
	Linked operation of components when wireless remote control is used	Slide only	Tilt only
	Linked entry function	On	Off

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Turn signal lever (→P. 179)	Times of flashing of the lane change signal flashers	3	Off
			5
			7
			9
			11
Automatic light control system (→P. 198)	Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2
	Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed	30 seconds	0 second
			60 seconds
			90 seconds
	Automatic high beam system	On	Off
Air conditioning system (→P. 336, 346)	Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation	Auto	Manual
	A/C Auto switch operation	Auto	Manual
	Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity	Standard	-3 to 3
	Air conditioning control of Eco drive mode	On	Off
Lights (→P. 198)	Daytime running light system (U.S.A. only)	On	Off

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Intuitive parking assist (→P. 228)	Buzzer volume	Level 3	Level 1 to 5
	Distance at which the front and back sensors detect an obstacle	Level 1	Level 2
Illumination (→P. 562)	Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off
			7.5 seconds
			30 seconds
	Time elapsed before the exterior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off
			7.5 seconds
			30 seconds
	Sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for dimming the meter lights etc.	Standard	-2 to 2
	Sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for brightening the meter lights etc.	Standard	-2 to 2
	Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off
	Operation after the "ENGINE START STOP" switch is turned OFF	On	Off
	Footwell lighting	On	Off
	Shift lever lighting	On	Off

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Seat belt reminder (→P. 716)	Vehicle speed linked seat belt reminder buzzer	On	Off

Settings that can be customized using the navigation system display

You can customize the following settings using the navigation system display.

(For further information on customizing settings using the navigation system display, refer to the Navigation System Owner's Manual.)

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Smart access system with push-button start (→P. 36)	Smart access system with push-button start	On	Off
	Door unlock function	Driver's door	All the doors
			Each door
			Same side doors

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Wireless remote control (→P. 50)	Unlocking operation	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step
	Time elapsed before automatic lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	60 seconds	Off
			30 seconds
			120 seconds
Smart access system with push-button start and wireless remote control (→P. 36, 50)	Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Door lock (→P. 53, 739)	Speed-detecting automatic door lock function	Off	On
	Opening driver's door unlocks all doors.	Off	On
	Shifting gears to "P" unlocks all doors.	On	Off
	Shifting gears to position other than "P" locks all doors.	On	Off
	Unlocking using a mechanical key	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two steps	All doors unlocked in one step
Power easy access system (→P. 81)	Driver's seat movement when exiting the vehicle	Full	Off
			Partial
Turn signal lever (→P. 179)	Times of flashing of the lane change signal flashers	3	Off
			5
			7
			9
			11

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Automatic light control system (→P. 198)	Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2
	Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off after doors are closed	30 seconds	0 second
			60 seconds
			90 seconds
Air conditioning system (→P. 336, 346)	Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation	Auto	Manual
	A/C Auto switch operation	Auto	Manual
	Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity	Standard	-3 to 3
Lights (→P. 198)	Daytime running light system (U.S.A. only)	On	Off

Item	Function	Default setting	Customized setting
Illumination (→P. 562)	Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off
			7.5 seconds
			30 seconds
	Time elapsed before the exterior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off
			7.5 seconds
			30 seconds
	Sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for dimming the meter lights etc.	Standard	-2 to 2
	Sensitivity of the ambient light sensor used for brightening the meter lights etc.	Standard	-2 to 2

Multi-information display (→P. 193)

Country	Available languages
U.S.A.	English and Spanish
Canada	English, French, German, Spanish and Italian

For owners 7

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners..... 790
Seat belt instructions for Canadian owners (in French)..... 791
SRS airbag instructions for Canadian owners (in French)..... 793

Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc. (Toll-free: 1-800-25-LEXUS).

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Lexus Division of Toyota Motor Sales, U.S.A., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave, S.E., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

The following is a French explanation of seat belt instructions extracted from the seat belt section in this manual.

See the seat belt section for more detailed seat belt instructions in English.

Utilisation correcte des ceintures de sécurité



- Déroulez la sangle diagonale de telle sorte qu'elle passe bien sur l'épaule, sans pour autant être en contact avec votre cou ou glisser de votre épaule.
- Placez la sangle abdominale le plus bas possible sur les hanches.
- Réglez la position du dossier de siège. Asseyez-vous le dos le plus droit possible et calez-vous bien dans le siège.
- Ne vrillez pas la ceinture de sécurité.

Guide de confort de ceinture de sécurité (sièges arrière extérieurs)



Si la sangle diagonale est proche du cou de la personne, faites coulisser le guide de confort de ceinture de sécurité vers l'avant.

Entretien et soin

Ceintures de sécurité

Nettoyez avec un chiffon ou une éponge humectée d'eau savonneuse tiède. Profitez de l'occasion pour vérifier régulièrement que les ceintures ne sont pas effilochées, entaillées, ou ne paraissent pas exagérément usées.

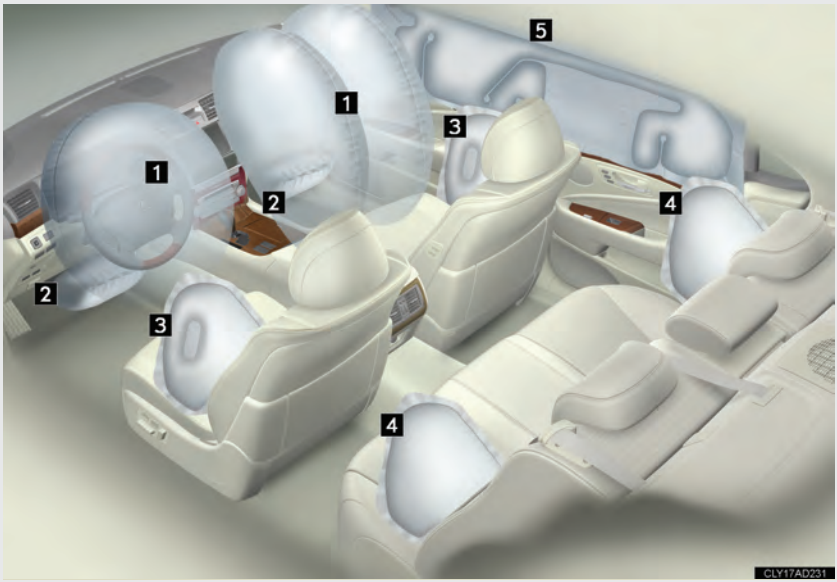
⚠ ATTENTION

Détérioration et usure des ceintures de sécurité

Inspectez les ceintures de sécurité périodiquement. Contrôlez qu'elles ne sont pas entaillées, effilochées, et que leurs ancrages ne sont pas desserrés. N'utilisez pas une ceinture de sécurité défectueuse avant qu'elle ne soit remplacée. Une ceinture de sécurité défectueuse n'apporte aucune garantie de protection de l'occupant en cas d'accident.

The following is a French explanation of SRS airbag instructions extracted from the SRS airbag section in this manual.

See the SRS airbag section for more detailed SRS airbag instructions in English.



▶ Sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS frontaux

1 Sac de sécurité gonflable conducteur/sac de sécurité gonflable passager avant SRS
Participent à la protection de la tête et du thorax du conducteur et du passager avant contre les chocs avec les éléments de l'habitacle

2 Sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS de genoux
Participent à la protection du conducteur et du passager avant

▶ Sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS latéraux et rideau

3 Sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS latéraux avant
Participent à la protection du haut du corps des occupants aux places avant

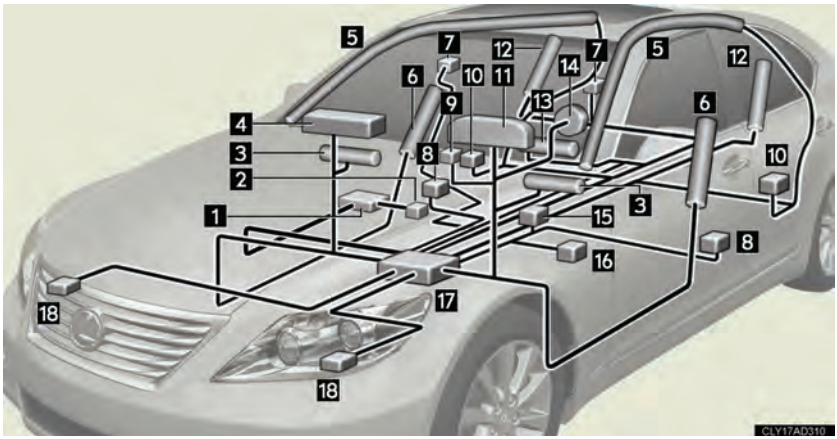
4 Sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS latéraux arrière (sièges à réglage électrique)
Participent à la protection du haut du corps des occupants aux places extérieures arrière

5 Sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS rideau
Participent principalement à la protection de la tête des occupants assis aux places extérieures



6 Sac de sécurité gonflable SRS d'assise de siège (avec siège de relaxation)
Participe à retenir le passager assis dans le siège de relaxation

Composition du système de sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS



1 Système de détection de l'occupant du siège passager avant (ECU et capteurs)
2 Contacteur de boucle de ceinture de sécurité passager avant
3 Sacs de sécurité gonflables de genoux
4 Sac de sécurité gonflable passager avant
5 Sacs de sécurité gonflables rideau
6 Sacs de sécurité gonflables latéraux avant
7 Appuis-têtes actifs
8 Capteurs de sacs de sécurité gonflables latéraux et rideau
9 Témoin indicateur "AIR BAG ON" et "AIR BAG OFF"
10 Capteurs de sacs de sécurité gonflables rideau
11 Voyant SRS
12 Sacs de sécurité gonflables latéraux arrière
13 Sac de sécurité gonflable d'assise de siège
14 Sac de sécurité gonflable conducteur
15 Contacteur de boucle de ceinture de sécurité conducteur
16 Capteur de position du siège conducteur
17 Boîtier électronique de sacs de sécurité gonflables
18 Capteurs de sacs de sécurité gonflables frontaux

Votre véhicule est équipé de SACS DE SÉCURITÉ GONFLABLES INTELLIGENTS (ADVANCED AIRBAGS) conçus selon les normes de sécurité américaines applicables aux véhicules à moteur (FMVSS208). Le système de sacs de sécurité gonflables régule la puissance de déploiement des sacs de sécurité gonflables conducteur et passager avant. Le système de sac de sécurité gonflable conducteur comprend le capteur de position du siège conducteur, etc. Le système de sac de sécurité gonflable passager avant comprend le capteur de classification des occupants du siège passager avant, etc.

Les principaux éléments du système de sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS sont illustrés ci-dessus. Le système des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS est commandé par un boîtier électronique. Ce boîtier intègre un capteur de sécurité et un capteur de sac de sécurité gonflable.

Lorsque la violence du choc frontal ou latéral l'exige, le système de sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS déclenche les dispositifs pyrotechniques de gonflage (générateurs de gaz). Le déploiement rapide des sacs de sécurité gonflables est obtenu au moyen d'une réaction chimique dans les dispositifs pyrotechniques, qui produit un gaz inoffensif permettant d'amortir le mouvement des occupants.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions avec les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS

Respectez les précautions suivantes concernant les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS.
À défaut, des blessures graves, voire mortelles, pourraient s'ensuivre.

- Le conducteur et tous les passagers à bord du véhicule doivent porter leur ceinture de sécurité correctement.
  Les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS sont des dispositifs de protection complémentaires aux ceintures de sécurité.
- Le sac de sécurité gonflable SRS conducteur se déploie avec une violence considérable, qui peut être très dangereuse voire mortelle si le conducteur se trouve très près du sac de sécurité gonflable. La National Highway Traffic Safety Administration ("NHTSA") conseille:

  La zone à risque du sac de sécurité gonflable conducteur se situant dans les premiers 2 à 3 in. (50 à 75 mm) de déploiement, vous disposez d'une confortable marge de sécurité en vous plaçant à 10 in. (250 mm) de votre sac de sécurité gonflable conducteur. Cette distance est à mesurer entre le moyeu du volant de direction et le sternum. Si vous êtes actuellement assis à moins de 10 in. (250 mm), vous pouvez changer votre position de conduite de différentes façons:

  - Reculez votre siège au maximum tout en atteignant confortablement les pédales.
  - Inclinez légèrement le dossier du siège.
    Bien que les véhicules puissent être différents les uns des autres, la plupart des conducteurs peuvent s'asseoir à une distance de 10 in. (250 mm), même avec le siège conducteur complètement avancé, simplement en inclinant un peu le dossier de siège. Si vous avez des difficultés à voir la route après avoir incliné votre siège, utilisez un coussin ferme et antidérapant pour vous rehausser ou, si votre véhicule est équipé du réglage en hauteur du siège, remontez-le.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions avec les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS

- Si votre volant de direction est réglable, inclinez-le vers le bas. Cela a pour effet d'orienter le sac de sécurité gonflable en direction de votre poitrine plutôt que de votre tête et de votre cou.

Réglez votre siège selon ces recommandations de la NHTSA, tout en conservant le contrôle des pédales, du volant de direction et la vue des commandes du tableau de bord.



- Si vous attachez une rallonge de ceinture de sécurité à la boucle du siège conducteur, mais pas à la ceinture de sécurité proprement dite, le système de sac de sécurité gonflable SRS conducteur pense que vous avez attaché votre ceinture de sécurité, alors qu'en fait c'est faux. Dans ce cas, il se peut que le sac de sécurité gonflable conducteur ne se déploie pas correctement en cas d'accident, et vous risquez d'être tué ou grièvement blessé. Veillez donc à porter la ceinture de sécurité avec la rallonge de ceinture de sécurité.

- Le sac de sécurité gonflable SRS du passager avant se déploie également avec une violence considérable, qui peut être très dangereuse voire mortelle si le passager se trouve très près du sac de sécurité gonflable. Éloignez le siège passager au maximum du sac de sécurité gonflable, et réglez le dossier de siège de sorte à être assis bien droit dans le siège.

- Les nourrissons et les enfants qui ne sont pas correctement assis et/ou protégés peuvent être grièvement blessés ou tués par le déploiement d'un sac de sécurité gonflable. Installez dans un siège de sécurité enfant les enfants trop jeunes pour pouvoir utiliser la ceinture de sécurité. Lexus recommande vivement d'installer tous les nourrissons et enfants aux places arrière du véhicule et de prévoir pour eux des systèmes de retenue adaptés. C'est à l'arrière que les nourrissons et les enfants sont les mieux protégés.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions avec les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS

- N'installez jamais un siège de sécurité enfant type dos à la route sur le siège passager avant, même si le témoin "AIR BAG OFF" est allumé. En cas d'accident, le déploiement du sac de sécurité gonflable passager avant est si rapide et violent que l'enfant risquerait d'être blessé grièvement, voire mortellement, si le siège de sécurité enfant type dos à la route est installé sur le siège passager avant.



- Ne vous asseyez pas sur le bord du siège et ne vous appuyez pas contre la planche de bord.



- Ne laissez pas un enfant rester debout devant le sac de sécurité gonflable SRS passager avant ou bien s'asseoir sur les genoux du passager avant.
- Ne conduisez pas le véhicule avec quelque chose sur les genoux, et n'autorisez pas non plus le passager à voyager avec quelque chose sur les genoux.



- Ne vous appuyez pas contre la porte, contre le rail latéral de toit ou contre les montants avant, latéraux et arrière.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions avec les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS



● Interdisez à quiconque de s'agenouiller sur les sièges passagers en appui contre la porte ou de sortir la tête ou les mains à l'extérieur du véhicule.



● Ne fixez ni ne posez aucun objet sur la planche de bord, la garniture centrale du moyeu de volant de direction ou la partie inférieure du tableau de bord.
Au déploiement des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS conducteur, passager avant et genoux, tout objet risque de se transformer en projectile.



● Ne fixez aucun objet sur les portes, la vitre de pare-brise, les vitres latérales, les montants avant et arrière, le rail latéral de toit et la poignée de maintien.

● Ne suspendez aux crochets à vêtements aucun cintre nu ni aucun objet dur. En cas de déploiement du sac de sécurité gonflable SRS rideau, ces objets peuvent se transformer en projectiles capables de vous blesser grièvement, voire de vous tuer.

● Si le cache en vinyle recouvre la partie où le sac de sécurité gonflable SRS de genoux se déploie, veillez à l'enlever.

● N'utilisez pour les sièges aucun accessoire venant recouvrir les zones de déploiement des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS latéraux et du sac de sécurité gonflable SRS d'assise de siège, car il risquerait de gêner le déploiement des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Précautions avec les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS

- Évitez de faire subir des chocs ou des pressions excessives aux parties renfermant les composants des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS, illustrées P. 789. En effet, cela pourrait entraîner un fonctionnement anormal des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS.
- Ne touchez aucun composant du système immédiatement après le déclenchement (déploiement) des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS, car ils sont alors encore très chauds.
- Si vous avez des difficultés à respirer après le déploiement des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS, ouvrez une porte ou une vitre pour faire entrer de l'air frais, ou bien descendez du véhicule si cela ne présente pas de danger. Essuyez tout résidu dès que possible afin d'éviter d'éventuelles irritations de la peau.
- Si les parties renfermant les sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS, telles que la garniture du moyeu de volant et la garniture de montant avant, apparaissent abîmées ou craquelées, faites-les remplacer par votre concessionnaire Lexus.
- Ne rien poser sur le siège du passager avant, comme un coussin par exemple. Le poids du passager s'en trouve réparti sur toute la surface de l'assise, ce qui empêche le capteur de détecter correctement le poids. En conséquence, le sac de sécurité gonflable SRS passager avant risque de ne pas se déployer en cas de choc.

⚠ ATTENTION

■ Modification et mise au rebut des éléments du système de sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS

Consultez impérativement votre concessionnaire Lexus si vous avez besoin d'intervenir sur votre véhicule ou de procéder à l'une des modifications suivantes. Le sac de sécurité gonflable SRS risque de ne pas fonctionner correctement ou de se déclencher (déployer) accidentellement, ce qui pourrait risquer de vous tuer ou blesser grièvement.

- Installation, dépose, démontage et réparations des sacs de sécurité gonflables SRS
- Réparations, modifications, démontage ou remplacement du volant, du combiné d'instruments, de la planche de bord, des sièges ou de leur garnissage, des montants avant, latéraux et arrière ou des rails latéraux de toit
- Réparation ou modification des ailes avant, du bouclier avant, ou des flancs de l'habitacle
- Installation d'un chasse-neige, d'un treuil, etc. sur la calandre (pare-buffle, pare-kangourou, etc.)
- Modification des suspensions du véhicule
- Installation d'appareils électroniques, tels qu'un radioémetteur/récepteur ou d'un lecteur CD
- Aménagements apportés au véhicule pour une personne atteinte d'un handicap physique.

Index

Abbreviation list 804

Alphabetical index..... 806

What to do if... 817

For details of equipment related to the navigation system, such as the audio system and clock, refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual".

Abbreviation/Acronym list

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
2WD	2 Wheel Drive
A/C	Air Conditioning
ABS	Anti-lock Brake System
AFS	Adaptive Front-lighting System
AI-SHIFT	Artificial Intelligence Shift control
ALR	Automatic Locking Retractor
APGS	Advanced Parking Guidance System
AWD	All Wheel Drive
CRS	Child Restraint System
DISP	Display
ECO	Economy/Ecology
ECT	Electronic Controlled Transmission
ECU	Electronic Control Unit
EDR	Event Data Recorder
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
EPS	Electric Power Steering
GAWR	Gross Axle Weight Ratings
GPS	Global Positioning System
I/M	Emission Inspection and Maintenance
INFO	Information
LATCH	Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LKA	Lane-Keeping Assist
MMT	Methylcyclopentadienyl Manganese Tricarbonyl
M + S	Mud and Snow

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
MTBE	Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether
OBD	On Board Diagnostics
PCS	Pre-Collision System
PWR	Power
RF	Radio Frequency
SRS	Supplemental Restraint System
TIN	Tire Identification Number
TPMS	Tire Pressure Warning System
TRAC	Traction Control
VDIM	Vehicle Dynamics Integrated Management
VGRS	Variable Gear Ratio Steering
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number
VSC	Vehicle Stability Control

Alphabetical index

A

A/C
- Air conditioning filter 678
- Front air conditioning system 336, 346
- Rear air conditioning system 361

ABS 291

ACCESSORY mode 164

Adaptive front-lighting system 199

Advanced parking guidance system 250

AFS 199

Air conditioning filter 678

Air conditioning system
- Air conditioning filter 678
- Front air conditioning system 336, 346
- Rear air conditioning system 361

Airbags
- Airbag operating conditions 125
- Airbag precautions for your child 129
- Airbag warning light 714
- Curtain shield airbag operating conditions 126
- Curtain shield airbag precautions 129
- Front passenger occupant classification system 134
- General airbag precautions 129
- Locations of airbags 121
- Modification and disposal of airbags 133
- Proper driving posture 119, 129
- Side airbag operating conditions 126
- Side airbag precautions 129
- SRS airbags 121

Alarm 116

Antenna 378

Anti-lock brake system 291

Armrest 597

Ashtrays 585

Audio input 393, 468

Audio system
- Antenna 378
- Audio input 393, 468
- Audio visual input 509
- AUX port 393, 468
- A/V input port 509
- CD player/changer 379, 412
- DVD player 409, 488, 489
- iPod player 456
- MP3/WMA disc 385
- Optimal use 391, 466
- Portable music player 393, 468
- Radio 375, 400
- Rear seat audio system 469
- Rear seat entertainment system 478
- Steering wheel audio switch 394
- USB memory 456

Audio visual input 509

Automatic air conditioning system
- Air conditioning filter 678
- Front air conditioning system 336, 346
- Rear air conditioning system 361

Automatic headlight leveling system 200

Automatic high beam 201
Automatic light control system 198
Automatic transmission
Automatic transmission 167, 172
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P" 736
M mode 176
S mode 169
AUX port 393, 468
Auxiliary box
Auxiliary box 578
Non smokers box 573
A/V input port 509

B
Back-up lights
Replacing light bulbs 690
Wattage 763
Battery
Checking 660
If the vehicle has a discharged battery 742
Preparing and checking before winter 313
Bluetooth® audio 444
Bluetooth® phone 513
Brake
Brake hold 183
Fluid 658
Parking brake 180
Brake assist 291
Brake hold 183
Break-in tips 155

C
Care
Exterior 630
Interior 633
Seat belts 634
Cargo capacity 308
Cargo hooks 610
CD changer 379, 412
CD player 379, 412
Chains 313
Child restraint system
Booster seats, definition 139
Booster seats, installation 147
Convertible seats, definition 139
Convertible seats, installation 147
Front passenger occupant classification system 134
Infant seats, definition 139
Infant seats, installation 147
Installing CRS with LATCH system 145
Installing CRS with seat belts 147
Installing CRS with top tether straps 150
Child safety
Airbag precautions 129
Battery precautions 661, 744
Child restraint system 139
Child-protectors 54
Heated steering wheel precautions 592
How your child should wear the seat belt 95
Installing child restraints 144
Moon roof precautions 110

Power window lock switch..... 104
Power window precautions..... 106
Removed electronic key battery precautions..... 682
Seat belt comfort guide..... 93
Seat belt extender precautions..... 97
Seat belt precautions..... 96
Seat heater precautions..... 596
Trunk precautions..... 61
Child-protectors..... 54
Cigarette lighter..... 586
Cleaning
Exterior..... 630
Interior..... 633
Seat belts..... 634
Climate control seat..... 593
Climate control seat filter..... 680
Clock..... 582
Coat hooks..... 608
Coin holder..... 569
Compass..... 618
Condenser..... 658
Console box..... 572
Cool box..... 574
Cooling system
Engine overheating..... 745
Cornering assist sensors..... 228
Cruise control
Cruise control..... 211
Dynamic radar cruise control..... 215
Cup holders..... 570
Curtain shield airbags..... 121
Customizable features..... 778

D

Daytime running light system..... 199
Defogger
Rear window..... 369
Side mirrors..... 369
Dimensions..... 752
Dinghy towing..... 318
Display
Dynamic radar cruise control..... 215
Multi-information display..... 193
Touch screen..... 322
Trip information..... 193
Warning message..... 723
Do-it-yourself maintenance..... 642
Door courtesy lights
Door courtesy lights..... 562
Wattage..... 763
Door pockets..... 569
Doors
Door windows..... 104
Door lock..... 36, 50, 53
Side mirrors..... 102
Driver's seat belt reminder light..... 716
Driving
Break-in tips..... 155
Correct posture..... 119
Procedures..... 154
Winter driving tips..... 313
Driving position memory..... 81
DVD player..... 409, 488, 489

E

Eco drive mode....168, 174
Electric power steering....291
Electronic key
If the electronic key does not operate properly....739
Electronically modulated air suspension....244
Emergency flashers
Switch....702
Emergency, in case of
If a warning buzzer sounds....713
If a warning light turns on....713
If a warning message is displayed....723
If the electronic key does not operate properly....739
If the engine will not start....734
If the parking brake cannot be released....737
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"....736
If the vehicle has a discharged battery....742
If you have a flat tire....726
If you lose your keys....35
If you think something is wrong....709
If your vehicle becomes stuck....748
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....749
If your vehicle needs to be towed....703
If your vehicle overheats....745
Engine
Accessory mode....164
Compartment....648
Engine switch....163
Hood....645
How to start the engine....163
Identification number....753
If the engine will not start....734
Ignition switch....163
Overheating....745
Engine compartment cover....650
Engine coolant
Capacity....757
Checking....656
Preparing and checking before winter....313
Engine coolant temperature gauge....186
Engine immobilizer system....114
Engine oil
Capacity....756
Checking....652
Preparing and checking before winter....313
Engine oil maintenance data....655
Engine switch....163
EPS....291
Event data recorder....711

F
First-aid kit storage belt 611
Floor mat 609
Fluid
Brake 658
Washer 663
Fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 690
Switch 206
Wattage 763
Footwell lighting 562
Front fog lights
Replacing light bulbs 690
Switch 206
Wattage 763
Front passenger occupant classification system 134
Front passenger's seat belt reminder light 716
Front seats
Adjustment 65
Driving position memory 81
Power easy access system 84
Seat position memory 81
Front turn signal lights
Wattage 763
Fuel
Capacity 755
Fuel gauge 186
Fuel pump shut off system 710
Information 764
Refueling 111
Type 755
Fuel door 111
Fuel filler door 111
Fuel pump shut off system 710
Fuses 683

G
Garage door opener 612
Gauges 186
Glove box 568

H
Hands-free system (for cellular phone) 513
Hazard lights
Switch 702
Head restraints
Active head restraint 68
Adjustment 89
Headlight aim 688
Headlight cleaner 210
Headlights
Automatic high beam 201
Discharge headlight precautions 699
Replacing light bulbs 690
Switch 198
Wattage 763
Heaters
Seat heaters 593
Side mirrors 369
Steering wheel 591
Height control
Electronically modulated air suspension 244
Hill-start assist control 291
Hood 645
Hooks
Cargo 610
Coat 608
Shopping bag 610
Horn 185

I

I/M test 641
Identification
Engine 753
Vehicle 753
Ignition switch 163
Illuminated entry system 562
Indicator lights 189
Inside rear view mirror 100
Interior lights
Switch 563
Wattage 763

J

Jack
Positioning a floor jack 646
Vehicle-equipped jack 726
Jack handle 726

K

Keyless entry 50
Keys
Electronic key 32
Engine switch 163
If the electronic key does not operate properly 739
If you lose your keys 35
Ignition switch 163
Key number 32
Keyless entry 50
Keys 32
Mechanical key 33
Wireless remote control key 50

L

Lane-keeping assist 237
Lexus enform*
Light bulbs
Replacing 690
Wattage 763
Lights
Door courtesy lights 562
Emergency flasher switch 702
Fog light switch 206
Hazard light switch 702
Headlight switch 198
Interior light switch 563
Outer foot lights 562
Overhead courtesy light 562
Personal light switch 564
Replacing light bulbs 690
Shift lever lighting 562
Turn signal lever 179
Vanity lights 581
Wattage 763
LKA 237
Load capacity 311

*: Refer to the "Navigation System Owner's Manual"

M
Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance 642
General maintenance 638
Maintenance data 752
Maintenance requirements 636
Meter
Instrument panel light control 187
Meters 186
Micro dust and pollen filter 340, 355
Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror 100
Side mirror heaters 369
Side mirrors 102
Vanity mirrors 581
Moon roof 107
MP3 disc 385, 412, 492
Multi-information display 193

N
Noise from under vehicle 28

O
Odometer 186
Oil
Engine oil 652
Opener
Fuel filler door 111
Hood 645
Trunk 58
Outer foot lights
Outer foot lights 562
Wattage 763
Outside rear view mirrors
Adjusting and folding 102
Mirror position memory 81
Outside temperature display 194, 584
Overhead console 578
Overhead courtesy lights
Overhead courtesy lights 562
Wattage 763
Overheating, Engine 745

P
Paddle shift switches 175, 176
Parking assist sensors 228
Parking brake 180
Parking lights
Switch 198
Wattage 763
PCS 297
Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator 76
Penlight 727
Personal lights
Switch 564
Power easy access system 84
Power outlet 588
Power windows 104
Pre-collision system 297

R
Radar cruise control 215
Radiator 658
Radio 375, 400
Radio data system 377
RDS 377
Rear seat
Adjustment 71
Seat position memory 87
Rear seat entertainment system 478
Rear seat relaxation system 77
Rear sunshade 600
Rear turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 690
Wattage 763
Rear view mirror
Compass 618
Rear view monitor system 246
Rear window defogger 369
Replacing
Electronic key battery 681
Fuses 683
Light bulbs 690
Tires 726
Reporting safety defects for U.S. owners 790
Retractable table 598

S
Safety connect 622
Seat belts
Adjusting the seat belt 93
Automatic locking retractor 94
Child restraint system installation 144
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belts 634
Emergency locking retractor 94
How to wear your seat belt 92
How your child should wear the seat belt 95
Pregnant women, proper seat belt use 94
Reminder light 716
Seat belt extenders 95
Seat belt pretensioners 93
Seat cushion airbag 121
Seat heaters 593
Seat position memory 81, 87
Seating capacity 311
Seats
Adjustment 65, 71
Adjustment precautions 69, 79
Child seats/child restraint system installation 144
Cleaning 633

Climate control....593
Climate control seat....593
Driver's seat position memory....81
Front passenger's seat position memory....81
Head restraint....89
Pelvic support seat with seat vibrator....76
Power easy access system....84
Properly sitting in the seat....119
Rear seat position memory....87
Rear seat relaxation system....77
Seat heaters....593
Seat position memory....81, 87
Service reminder indicators....189
Shift lever
Automatic transmission....167, 172
If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"....736
Shift lever lighting....562
Shift lock system....736
Shopping bag hooks....610
Side airbags....121
Side marker lights
Switch....198
Side mirror
Adjusting and folding....102
Mirror position memory....81
Smart access system with push-button start
Entry function....36
Starting the engine....163
"SOS" button....622
Spare tire
Inflation pressure....672
Storage location....726
Spark plug....758
Specifications....752
Speedometer....186
Steering wheel
Adjustment....99
Audio switches....394
Heated steering wheel....591
Lock release....165
Power easy access system....84
Steering wheel position memory....81
Storage feature....566
Stuck vehicle
If your vehicle becomes stuck....748
Sun visors....580
Sunshades
Rear....600
Rear door....603
Roof....108

Switch
APGS pre-support switch 252
Automatic high beam 201
"ECO MODE" switch 168, 174
ECT switch 168, 174
Emergency flasher switch 702
Engine switch 163
Fog light switch 206
Hazard light switch 702
Heated steering wheel switch 591
Ignition switch 163
Light switches 198
Paddle shift switches 175, 176
Parking brake switch 180
Power door lock switch 53
Power trunk opener and closer 58
Power window switch 104
Window lock switch 104
Wiper and washer switch 207

T

Tachometer 186
Tail lights
Switch 198
Theft deterrent system
Alarm 116
Engine immobilizer system 114
Tire inflation pressure 672
Tire information
Glossary 772
Size 769
Tire identification number 768
Uniform tire quality grading 770
Tires
Chains 313
Checking 664
If you have a flat tire 726
Inflation pressure 672
Information 767
Replacing 726
Rotating tires 664
Size 761
Snow tires 313
Spare tire 726
Tire pressure warning system 664, 716
Tools 726
Total load capacity 311
Touch screen 322
Towing
Dinghy towing 318
Emergency towing 703
Trailer towing 317
TRAC 291
Traction control 291
Trip meter 186
Trunk
Closer 58
Extending a space 606
Opener 58
Trunk light
Wattage 763
Turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 690
Switch 179
Wattage 763

V
Vanity lights
Vanity lights 581
Wattage 763
Vanity mirrors 581
Variable gear ratio steering 291
VDIM 291
Vehicle dynamics integrated management 291
Vehicle identification number 753
Vehicle stability control 291
VGRS 291
VSC 291

W
Warning buzzers
Master warning 716
Open door 716
Seat belt reminder 716
Warning lights
Anti-lock brake system 714
Brake assist system 714
Brake system 713, 714
Charging system 713
Electric power steering 714
Electronic engine control system 714
Low fuel level 716
Malfunction indicator lamp 714
Master warning 716
Open door 716
Pre-collision system 714
Pretensioners 714
Seat belt reminder 716
Slip indicator 714
SRS airbags 714
Tire pressure 716
Warning messages 723
Washer
Checking 663
Preparing and checking before winter 313
Switch 207
Washing and waxing 630
Weight
Cargo capacity 308
Load limits 311
Weight 752
Wheels 676
Window lock switch 104
Windows
Power windows 104
Rear window defogger 369
Washer 207
Windshield wiper de-icer 371
Windshield wipers 207
Wireless remote control key
Replacing the battery 681
Wireless remote control 50
WMA disc 385, 412, 492

What to do if...

 A tire punctures	P. 726	If you have a flat tire
 The engine does not start	P. 734	If the engine will not start
	P. 114	Engine immobilizer system
	P. 742	If the battery is discharged
 The shift lever cannot be moved out	P. 736	If the shift lever cannot be shifted from "P"
 The engine coolant temperature gauge enters the red zone	P. 745	If your vehicle overheats
 Steam can be seen coming from under the hood		
 The key is lost	P. 35	If you lose your keys
 The battery runs out	P. 742	If the battery is discharged
 The doors cannot be locked	P. 53	Doors
 The horn begins to sound	P. 116	Alarm
 The vehicle is stuck in mud or sand	P. 748	If the vehicle becomes stuck

A warning light or indicator light comes on

P. 713

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...



■Warning lights

BRAKE or

Brake system warning light P. 713

ABS or

"ABS" warning light P. 714

Brake system warning light P. 714

Low fuel level warning light P. 716

SRS warning light P. 714

Open door warning light P. 716

CHECK or

Malfunction indicator lamp P. 714

Driver's seat belt reminder light P. 716

PASSENGER

Front passenger's seat belt reminder light P. 716

Master warning light P. 716

Electric power steering system warning light P. 714

Slip indicator P. 714

Tire pressure warning light P. 716



Charging system warning light P. 713



Cruise control indicator* P. 714



Automatic High Beam indicator light* P. 714



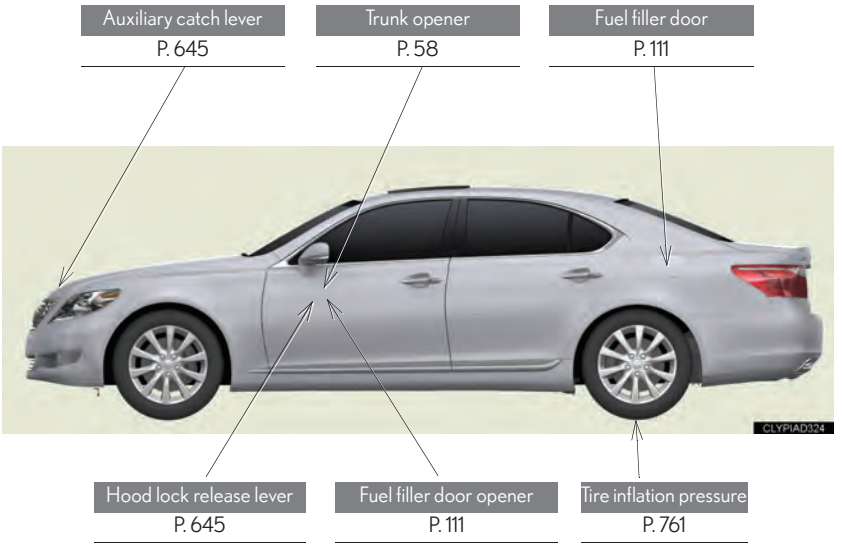
Pre-collision system warning light* P. 714



"AFS OFF" indicator* P. 714

*: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

GAS STATION INFORMATION



Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	22.1 gal. (84 L, 18.4 Imp. gal.)	
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only	P. 112, 755
Cold tire inflation pressure		P. 761
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)		qt. (L, Imp. qt.)
	With filter	
	2WD models	9.1 (8.6, 7.6)
	AWD models	9.5 (9.0, 7.9)
	Without filter	8.9 (8.4, 7.4)
Engine oil type	Toyota Genuine Motor Oil or equivalent Oil grade: ILSAC multigrade engine oil Recommended oil viscosity: SAE-5W-20 or -0W-20	P. 756



Owner's Manual:
Publication No. OM50B80U
Part No. 01999-50B80
Printed in Japan 03-1103-02 I
LS 460 / LS 460 L（北米U）